International Telecommunication Union

Radio Regulations

3

Resolutions and Recommendations

Edition of 2008

International Telecommunication Union

International Telecommunication Union

Radio Regulations

3

Resolutions and Recommendations

Edition of 2008

International Telecommunication Union

Note by the Secretariat

This revision of the Radio Regulations, complementing the Constitution and the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union, incorporates the decisions of the World Radiocommunication Conferences of 1995 (WRC-95), 1997 (WRC-97), 2000 (WRC-2000), 2003 (WRC-03) and 2007 (WRC-07). The majority of the provisions of these Regulations shall enter into force as from 1 January 2009; the remaining provisions shall apply as from the special dates of application indicated in Article **59** of the revised Radio Regulations.

In preparing the Radio Regulations, Edition of 2008, the Secretariat corrected the typographical errors that were drawn to the attention of WRC-07 and which were approved by WRC-07.

This edition uses the same numbering scheme as the 2001 edition of the Radio Regulations, notably:

With respect to *Article numbers*, this edition follows the standard sequential numbering. The Article numbers are not followed by any abbreviation (such as "(WRC-97)", "(WRC-2000)", "(WRC-03)" or "(WRC-07)"). Consequently, any reference to an Article, in any of the provisions of these Radio Regulations (e.g. in No. **13.1** of Article **13**), in the texts of the Appendices as contained in Volume 2 of this edition (e.g. in § 1 of Appendix **2**), in the texts of the Resolutions included in Volume 3 of this edition (e.g. in Resolution **1 (Rev.WRC-97)**), and in the texts of the Recommendations included in Volume 3 of this edition (e.g. in Recommendation **8**), is considered as a reference to the text of the concerned Article which appears in this edition, unless otherwise specified.

With respect to *provision numbers in Articles*, this edition continues to use composite numbers indicating the number of the Article and the provision number within that Article (e.g. No. 9.2B means provision No. 2B of Article **9**). The abbreviation "(WRC-07)", "(WRC-03)", "(WRC-2000)" or "(WRC-97)" at the end of such a provision means that the relevant provision was modified or added by WRC-07, by WRC-03, by WRC-2000 or by WRC-97, as applicable. The absence of an abbreviation at the end of the provision means that the provision is identical with the provision of the simplified Radio Regulations as approved by WRC-95, and whose complete text was contained in Document 2 of WRC-97.

With respect to *Appendix numbers*, this edition follows the standard sequential numbering, with the addition of the appropriate abbreviation after the Appendix number (such as "(WRC-97)", "(WRC-2000)", "(WRC-03)" or "(WRC-07)"), where applicable. As a rule, any reference to an Appendix, in any of the provisions of these Radio Regulations, in the texts of the Appendices as contained in Volume 2 of this edition, in the texts of the Resolutions and of the Recommendations included in Volume 3 of this edition, is presented in the standard manner (e.g. "Appendix **30 (Rev.WRC-07)**") if not explicitly described in the text (e.g. Appendix **4** as modified by WRC-07). In the texts of Appendices that were partially modified by WRC-07, the provisions that were modified by WRC-07 are indicated with the abbreviation "(WRC-07)" at the end of the concerned text. If an Appendix is referenced without any abbreviation after the Appendix number, in the texts of this edition (e.g., in No. **13.1**), or without other description, such reference is considered as a reference to the text of the concerned Appendix which appears in this edition.

Within the text of the Radio Regulations, the symbol, ↑, has been used to represent quantities associated with an uplink. Similarly, the symbol, ↓, has been used to represent quantities associated with a downlink.

Abbreviations have generally been used for the names of world administrative radio conferences and world radiocommunication conferences. These abbreviations are shown below.

Abbreviation	Conference
WARC Mar	World Administrative Radio Conference to Deal with Matters Relating to the Maritime Mobile Service (Geneva, 1967)
WARC-71	World Administrative Radio Conference for Space Telecommunications (Geneva, 1971)
WMARC-74	World Maritime Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1974)
WARC SAT-77	World Broadcasting-Satellite Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1977)
WARC-Aer2	World Administrative Radio Conference on the Aeronautical Mobile (R) Service (Geneva, 1978)
WARC-79	World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979)
WARC Mob-83	World Administrative Radio Conference for the Mobile Services (Geneva, 1983)
WARC HFBC-84	World Administrative Radio Conference for the Planning of the HF Bands Allocated to the Broadcasting Service (Geneva, 1984)
WARC Orb-85	World Administrative Radio Conference on the Use of the Geostationary-Satellite Orbit and the Planning of Space Services Utilising It (First Session – Geneva, 1985)
WARC HFBC-87	World Administrative Radio Conference for the Planning of the HF Bands Allocated to the Broadcasting Service (Geneva, 1987)
WARC Mob-87	World Administrative Radio Conference for the Mobile Services (Geneva, 1987)
WARC Orb-88	World Administrative Radio Conference on the Use of the Geostationary-Satellite Orbit and the Planning of Space Services Utilising It (Second Session – Geneva, 1988)
WARC-92	World Administrative Radio Conference for Dealing with Frequency Allocations in Certain Parts of the Spectrum (Malaga-Torremolinos, 1992)
WRC-95	World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1995)
WRC-97	World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997)
WRC-2000	World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000)
WRC-03	World Radiocommunication Conference, (Geneva, 2003)
WRC-07	World Radiocommunication Conference, (Geneva, 2007)
WRC-11	World Radiocommunication Conference, 2011
WRC-15	World Radiocommunication Conference, 2015[1]

[1] The date of this conference has not been finalized.

VOLUME 3

Resolutions – Recommendations

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

RESOLUTIONS

RESOLUTION 1 (Rev.WRC-97) Notification of frequency assignments 3

RESOLUTION 2 (Rev.WRC-03) Equitable use, by all countries, with equal rights, of the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits and of frequency bands for space radiocommunication services 5

RESOLUTION 4 (Rev.WRC-03) Period of validity of frequency assignments to space stations using the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits 7

RESOLUTION 5 (Rev.WRC-03) Technical cooperation with the developing countries in the study of propagation in tropical and similar areas . 11

RESOLUTION 7 (Rev.WRC-03) Development of national radio frequency management 13

RESOLUTION 10 (Rev.WRC-2000) Use of two-way wireless telecommunications by the International Red Cross and Red Crescent Movement 15

RESOLUTION 13 (Rev.WRC-97) Formation of call signs and allocation of new international series 17

RESOLUTION 15 (Rev.WRC-03) International cooperation and technical assistance in the field of space radiocommunications 19

RESOLUTION 18 (Rev.WRC-07) Relating to the procedure for identifying and announcing the position of ships and aircraft of States not parties to an armed conflict 21

RESOLUTION 20 (Rev.WRC-03) Technical cooperation with developing countries in the field of aeronautical telecommunications 23

RESOLUTION 25 (Rev.WRC-03) Operation of global satellite systems for personal communications 25

RESOLUTION 26 (Rev.WRC-07) Footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations in Article **5** of the Radio Regulations 27

Page

RESOLUTION 27 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of incorporation by reference in the Radio Regulations 31

ANNEX 1 Principles of incorporation by reference 32

ANNEX 2 Application of incorporation by reference..... 33

ANNEX 3 Procedures applicable by WRC for approving the incorporation by reference of ITU-R Recommendations or parts thereof..... 34

RESOLUTION 28 (Rev.WRC-03) Revision of references to the text of ITU-R Recommendations incorporated by reference in the Radio Regulations 35

RESOLUTION 33 (Rev.WRC-03) Bringing into use of space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service, prior to the entry into force of agreements and associated plans for the broadcasting-satellite service 37

RESOLUTION 34 (Rev.WRC-03) Establishment of the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 in the 12.5-12.75 GHz frequency band and sharing with space and terrestrial services in Regions 1, 2 and 3 ... 43

RESOLUTION 42 (Rev.WRC-03) Use of interim systems in Region 2 in the broadcasting-satellite and fixed-satellite (feeder-link) services in Region 2 for the bands covered by Appendices **30** and **30A**..... 45

ANNEX 46

RESOLUTION 49 (Rev.WRC-07) Administrative due diligence applicable to some satellite radiocommunication services 51

ANNEX 1 53

ANNEX 2 55

RESOLUTION 51 (Rev.WRC-2000) Transitional arrangements relating to the advance publication and coordination of satellite networks..... 57

RESOLUTION 55 (Rev.WRC-07) Electronic submission of notice forms for satellite networks, earth stations and radio astronomy stations..... 59

RESOLUTION 58 (WRC-2000) Transitional measures for coordination between certain specific geostationary fixed-satellite service receive earth stations and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service transmit space stations in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz, and 19.7-20.2 GHz where epfd↓ limits apply 61

ANNEX 1 Appendix **4** characteristics to be provided for specific receive GSO FSS earth stations 63

RESOLUTION 63 (Rev.WRC-07) Protection of radiocommunication services against interference caused by radiation from industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) equipment 65

RESOLUTION 72 (Rev.WRC-07) World and regional preparations for world radiocommunication conferences 67

Page

RESOLUTION 73 (Rev.WRC-2000) Measures to solve the incompatibility between the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 1 and the fixed-satellite service in Region 3 in the frequency band 12.2-12.5 GHz 69

RESOLUTION 74 (Rev.WRC-03) Process to keep the technical bases of Appendix **7** current 71

RESOLUTION 75 (WRC-2000) Development of the technical basis for determining the coordination area for coordination of a receiving earth station in the space research service (deep space) with transmitting stations of high-density systems in the fixed service in the 31.8-32.3 GHz and 37-38 GHz bands 73

RESOLUTION 76 (WRC-2000) Protection of geostationary fixed-satellite service and geostationary broadcasting-satellite service networks from the maximum aggregate equivalent power flux-density produced by multiple non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems in frequency bands where equivalent power flux-density limits have been adopted 75

ANNEX 1 78

RESOLUTION 80 (Rev.WRC-07) Due diligence in applying the principles embodied in the Constitution 83

ANNEX 1 RRB Report to WRC-2000 84

ANNEX 2 RRB Report to WRC-03 85

RESOLUTION 81 (WRC-2000) Evaluation of the administrative due diligence procedure for satellite networks 87

RESOLUTION 85 (WRC-03) Application of Article **22** of the Radio Regulations to the protection of geostationary fixed-satellite service and broadcasting-satellite service networks from non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems 89

RESOLUTION 86 (Rev.WRC-07) Implementation of Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference 91

RESOLUTION 95 (Rev.WRC-07) General review of the Resolutions and Recommendations of world administrative radio conferences and world radiocommunication conferences 93

RESOLUTION 97 (WRC-07) Provisional application of certain provisions of the Radio Regulations as revised by WRC-07 and abrogation of certain Resolutions and Recommendations 95

RESOLUTION 111 (Orb-88) Planning of the fixed-satellite service in the bands 18.1-18.3 GHz, 18.3-20.2 GHz and 27-30 GHz 97

Page

RESOLUTION 114 (Rev.WRC-03) Studies on compatibility between new systems of the aeronautical radionavigation service and the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) (limited to feeder links of the non-geostationary mobile-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service) in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz 99

RESOLUTION 122 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz by high altitude platform stations in the fixed service and by other services 101

RESOLUTION 124 (Rev.WRC-2000) Protection of the fixed service in the frequency band 8 025-8 400 MHz sharing with geostationary-satellite systems of the Earth exploration-satellite service (space-to-Earth) 105

RESOLUTION 125 (WRC-97) Frequency sharing in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz between the mobile-satellite service and the radio astronomy service 107

RESOLUTION 136 (Rev.WRC-03) Frequency sharing in the range 37.5-50.2 GHz between geostationary fixed-satellite service networks and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems 109

RESOLUTION 140 (WRC-03) Measures and studies associated with the equivalent power flux-density (epfd) limits in the band 19.7-20.2 GHz 111

RESOLUTION 142 (WRC-03) Transitional arrangements relating to use of the frequency band 11.7-12.2 GHz by geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service in Region 2 113

RESOLUTION 143 (Rev.WRC-07) Guidelines for the implementation of high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service in frequency bands identified for these applications 115

RESOLUTION 144 (Rev.WRC-07) Special requirements of geographically small or narrow countries operating earth stations in the fixed-satellite service in the band 13.75-14 GHz 119

RESOLUTION 145 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz by high altitude platform stations in the fixed service 121

RESOLUTION 147 (WRC-07) Power flux-density limits for certain systems in the fixed-satellite service using highly-inclined orbits having an apogee altitude greater than 18 000 km and an orbital inclination between 35° and 145° in the band 17.7-19.7 GHz 125

RESOLUTION 148 (WRC-07) Satellite systems formerly listed in Part B of the Plan of Appendix **30B** (WARC Orb-88) 127

RESOLUTION 149 (WRC-07) Implementation of the decisions of WRC-07 relating to Appendix **30B** to the Radio Regulations 129

RESOLUTION 205 (Rev.Mob-87) Protection of the band 406-406.1 MHz allocated to the mobile-satellite service 133

Page

RESOLUTION 207 (Rev.WRC-03) Measures to address unauthorized use of and interference to frequencies in the bands allocated to the maritime mobile service and to the aeronautical mobile (R) service 135

ANNEX Interference mitigation techniques..... 137

RESOLUTION 212 (Rev.WRC-07) Implementation of International Mobile Telecommunications in the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz 139

RESOLUTION 215 (Rev.WRC-97) Coordination process among mobile-satellite systems and efficient use of the allocations to the mobile-satellite service in the 1-3 GHz range 141

RESOLUTION 217 (WRC-97) Implementation of wind profiler radars 143

RESOLUTION 221 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of high altitude platform stations providing IMT in the bands 1 885-1 980 MHz, 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 170 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 1 885-1 980 MHz and 2 110-2 160 MHz in Region 2 145

ANNEX Characteristics of a HAPS operating as an IMT base station in the frequency bands given in Resolution **221 (Rev.WRC-07)** 148

RESOLUTION 222 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite service, and studies to ensure long-term spectrum availability for the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service 151

RESOLUTION 223 (Rev.WRC-07) Additional frequency bands identified for IMT . 155

RESOLUTION 224 (Rev.WRC-07) Frequency bands for the terrestrial component of International Mobile Telecommunications below 1 GHz 159

RESOLUTION 225 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of additional frequency bands for the satellite component of IMT..... 165

RESOLUTION 229 (WRC-03) Use of the bands 5 150-5 250 MHz, 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz by the mobile service for the implementation of wireless access systems including radio local area networks..... 167

RESOLUTION 231 (WRC-07) Additional allocations to the mobile-satellite service with particular focus on the bands between 4 GHz and 16 GHz..... 173

RESOLUTION 331 (Rev.WRC-07) Transition to the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) 175

RESOLUTION 339 (Rev.WRC-07) Coordination of NAVTEX services 179

RESOLUTION 342 (Rev.WRC-2000) New technologies to provide improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service..... 181

Page

RESOLUTION 343 (WRC-97) Maritime certification for personnel of ship stations and ship earth stations for which a radio installation is not compulsory 183

ANNEX Examination syllabus for radio operator's certificates appropriate to vessels using the frequencies and techniques of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System on a non-compulsory basis 184

RESOLUTION 344 (Rev.WRC-03) Management of the maritime mobile service identity numbering resource 187

RESOLUTION 345 (WRC-97) Operation of Global Maritime Distress and Safety System equipment on and assignment of maritime mobile service identities to non-compulsory fitted vessels 189

RESOLUTION 349 (WRC-97) Operational procedures for cancelling false distress alerts in the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System 191

ANNEX Cancelling of false distress alerts 192

RESOLUTION 351 (Rev.WRC-07) Review of the frequency and channel arrangements in the HF bands allocated to the maritime mobile service contained in Appendix **17** with a view to improving efficiency through the use of new digital technology by the maritime mobile service 195

RESOLUTION 352 (WRC-03) Use of the carrier frequencies 12 290 kHz and 16 420 kHz for safety-related calling to and from rescue coordination centres..... 197

RESOLUTION 354 (WRC-07) Distress and safety radiotelephony procedures for 2 182 kHz..... 199

ANNEX Distress and safety radiotelephony procedures for 2 182 kHz..... 200

RESOLUTION 355 (WRC-07) Content, formats and periocidity of the maritime related service publications 205

RESOLUTION 356 (WRC-07) ITU maritime service information registration..... 207

RESOLUTION 357 (WRC-07) Consideration of regulatory provisions and spectrum allocations for use by enhanced maritime safety systems for ships and ports 209

RESOLUTION 405 Relating to the use of frequencies of the aeronautical mobile (R) service..... 213

RESOLUTION 413 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of the band 108-117.975 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service..... 215

RESOLUTION 416 (WRC-07) Use of the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz by an aeronautical mobile telemetry application in the mobile service..... 219

Page

RESOLUTION 417 (WRC-07) Use of the band 960-1 164 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service 223

RESOLUTION 418 (WRC-07) Use of the band 5 091-5 250 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service for telemetry applications 227

ANNEX 1 229

RESOLUTION 419 (WRC-07) Considerations for use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service for certain aeronautical applications 231

RESOLUTION 420 (WRC-07) Consideration of the frequency bands between 5 000 and 5 030 MHz for aeronautical mobile (R) service surface applications at airports 233

RESOLUTION 421 (WRC-07) Consideration of appropriate regulatory provisions for the operation of unmanned aircraft systems..... 235

RESOLUTION 506 (Rev.WRC-97) Use by space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service operating in the 12 GHz frequency bands allocated to the broadcasting-satellite service of the geostationary-satellite orbit and no other 237

RESOLUTION 507 (Rev.WRC-03) Establishment of agreements and associated plans for the broadcasting-satellite service..... 239

RESOLUTION 517 (Rev.WRC-07) Introduction of digitally modulated emissions in the high-frequency bands between 3 200 kHz and 26 100 kHz allocated to the broadcasting service 241

RESOLUTION 525 (Rev.WRC-07) Introduction of high-definition television systems of the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3..... 243

ANNEX Interim procedures for the introduction of broadcasting-satellite service (HDTV) systems in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3..... 244

RESOLUTION 526 (WARC-92) Future adoption of procedures to ensure flexibility in the use of the frequency band allocated to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) for wide RF-band high-definition television (HDTV) and to the associated feeder links 247

RESOLUTION 528 (Rev.WRC-03) Introduction of the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) systems and complementary terrestrial broadcasting in the bands allocated to these services within the range 1-3 GHz..... 249

RESOLUTION 533 (Rev.WRC-2000) Implementation of the decisions of WRC-2000 relating to processing of proposed networks submitted under Articles 4, 6 and 7 of Appendices **30** and **30A** to the Radio Regulations..... 251

RESOLUTION 535 (Rev.WRC-03) Information needed for the application of Article **12** of the Radio Regulations 255

ANNEX 256

Page

RESOLUTION 536 (WRC-97) Operation of broadcasting satellites serving other countries..... 265

RESOLUTION 539 (Rev.WRC-03) Use of the band 2 605-2 655 MHz in certain Region 3 countries by non-geostationary satellite systems in the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) 267

RESOLUTION 543 (WRC-03) Provisional RF protection ratio values for analogue and digitally modulated emissions in the HF broadcasting service. 271

ANNEX 272

RESOLUTION 546 (WRC-03) Implementation of the decisions of WRC-03 relating to processing of networks under Appendices **30** and **30A** of the Radio Regulations..... 277

RESOLUTION 547 (Rev.WRC-07) Updating of the "Remarks" columns in the Tables of Article 9A of Appendix **30A** and Article 11 of Appendix **30** of the Radio Regulations..... 279

RESOLUTION 548 (WRC-03) Application of the grouping concept in Appendices **30** and **30A** in Regions 1 and 3 281

RESOLUTION 549 (WRC-07) Use of the frequency band 620-790 MHz for existing assignments to stations of the broacdasting-satellite service..... 285

RESOLUTION 550 (WRC-07) Information relating to the high-frequency broadcasting service..... 287

RESOLUTION 551 (WRC-07) Use of the band 21.4-22 GHz for broadcasting-satellite service and associated feeder-link bands in Regions 1 and 3 289

RESOLUTION 608 (WRC-03) Use of the frequency band 1 215-1 300 MHz by systems of the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-Earth) ... 291

RESOLUTION 609 (Rev.WRC-07) Protection of aeronautical radionavigation service systems from the equivalent power flux-density produced by radionavigation-satellite service networks and systems in the 1 164-1 215 MHz frequency band..... 293

ANNEX Criteria for application of Resolution **609 (Rev.WRC-07)**..... 296

RESOLUTION 610 (WRC-03) Coordination and bilateral resolution of technical compatibility issues for radionavigation-satellite service networks and systems in the bands 1 164-1 300 MHz, 1 559-1 610 MHz and 5 010-5 030 MHz..... 297

ANNEX Criteria for application of Resolution **610 (WRC-03)** . 299

RESOLUTION 611 (WRC-07) Use of portion of the VHF band by the radiolocation service..... 301

RESOLUTION 612 (WRC-07) Use of the radiolocation service between 3 and 50 MHz to support high-frequency oceanographic radar operations..... 303

Page

RESOLUTION 613 (WRC-07) Global primary allocation to the radiodetermination-satellite service in the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz (space-to-Earth) 305

RESOLUTION 614 (WRC-07) Use of the band 15.4-15.7 GHz by the radiolocation service 307

RESOLUTION 641 (Rev.HFBC-87) Use of the frequency band 7 000-7 100 kHz 309

RESOLUTION 642 Relating to the bringing into use of earth stations in the amateur-satellite service 311

RESOLUTION 644 (Rev.WRC-07) Radiocommunication resources for early warning, disaster mitigation and relief operations 313

RESOLUTION 646 (WRC-03) Public protection and disaster relief 317

RESOLUTION 647 (WRC-07) Spectrum management guidelines for emergency and disaster relief radiocommunication 325

RESOLUTION 671 (WRC-07) Recognition of systems in the meteorological aids service in the frequency range below 20 kHz 329

RESOLUTION 672 (WRC-07) Extension of the allocation to the meteorological-satellite service in the band 7 750-7 850 MHz 331

RESOLUTION 673 (WRC-07) Radiocommunications use for Earth observation applications 333

RESOLUTION 703 (Rev.WRC-07) Calculation methods and interference criteria recommended by ITU-R for sharing frequency bands between space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services or between space radiocommunication services 335

RESOLUTION 705 (Mob-87) Mutual protection of radio services operating in the band 70-130 kHz 337

RESOLUTION 716 (Rev.WRC-2000) Use of the frequency bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 by the fixed and mobile-satellite services and associated transition arrangements 339

RESOLUTION 729 (Rev.WRC-07) Use of frequency adaptive systems in the MF and HF bands 343

RESOLUTION 731 (WRC-2000) Consideration by a future competent world radiocommunication conference of issues dealing with sharing and adjacent-band compatibility between passive and active services above 71 GHz 345

RESOLUTION 732 (WRC-2000) Consideration by a future competent world radiocommunication conference of issues dealing with sharing between active services above 71 GHz 347

Page

RESOLUTION 734 (Rev.WRC-07) Studies for spectrum identification for gateway links for high-altitude platform stations in the range from 5 850 to 7 075 MHz 349

RESOLUTION 739 (Rev.WRC-07) Compatibility between the radio astronomy service and the active space services in certain adjacent and nearby frequency bands 351

ANNEX 1 Unwanted emission threshold levels 354

RESOLUTION 741 (WRC-03) Protection of the radio astronomy service in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz from unwanted emissions of the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-Earth) operating in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz 357

RESOLUTION 743 (WRC-03) Protection of single-dish radio astronomy stations in Region 2 in the 42.5-43.5 GHz band 359

RESOLUTION 744 (Rev.WRC-07) Sharing between the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and the fixed and mobile services in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz 363

RESOLUTION 748 (WRC-07) Compatibility between the aeronautical mobile (R) service and the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz 365

RESOLUTION 749 (WRC-07) Studies on the use of the band 790-862 MHz by mobile applications and by other services 367

RESOLUTION 750 (WRC-07) Compatibility between the Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) and relevant active services 369

RESOLUTION 751 (WRC-07) Use of the frequency band 10.6-10.68 GHz 373

ANNEX 1 Sharing criteria in the band 10.6-10.68 GHz 374

RESOLUTION 752 (WRC-07) Use of the frequency band 36-37 GHz 377

ANNEX 1 Sharing criteria in the band 36-37 GHz 379

RESOLUTION 753 (WRC-07) Use of the band 22.55-23.15 GHz by the space research service 381

RESOLUTION 754 (WRC-07) Consideration of modification of the aeronautical component of the mobile service allocation in the 37-38 GHz band for protection of other primary services in the band 383

RESOLUTION 804 (WRC-07) Principles for establishing agendas for world radiocommunication conferences 385

ANNEX 1 Principles for establishing agendas for WRCs 386

ANNEX 2 Template for the submission of proposals for agenda items 388

Page

RESOLUTION 805 (WRC-07) Agenda for the 2011 World Radiocommunication Conference 389

RESOLUTION 806 (WRC-07) Preliminary agenda for the 2015 World Radiocommunication Conference 395

RESOLUTION 900 (WRC-03) Review of the Rule of Procedure for No. **9.35** of the Radio Regulations 397

ANNEX Procedure to be used by the Radiocommunication Bureau for networks examined under the Rule of Procedure on No. **9.35** 398

RESOLUTION 901 (Rev.WRC-07) Determination of the orbital arc separation for which coordination would be required between two satellite networks operating in a space service not subject to a Plan 399

RESOLUTION 902 (WRC-03) Provisions relating to earth stations located on board vessels which operate in fixed-satellite service networks in the uplink bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz 401

ANNEX 1 Regulatory and operational provisions for ESVs transmitting in the 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz bands 402

ANNEX 2 Technical limitations applicable to ESVs transmitting in the bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz .. 404

RESOLUTION 903 (WRC-07) Transitional measures for certain broadcasting-satellite/fixed-satellite service systems in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz 407

ANNEX 1 408

RESOLUTION 904 (WRC-07) Transitional measures for coordination between the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and the space research (passive) service in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz for a specific case 409

RESOLUTION 905 (WRC-07) Date of entry into force of certain provisions of the Radio Regulations relating to the non-payment of cost-recovery fees 411

RESOLUTION 906 (WRC-07) Submission of notices for terrestrial services to the Radiocommunication Bureau 413

RESOLUTION 950 (Rev.WRC-07) Consideration of the use of the frequencies between 275 and 3 000 GHz 417

RESOLUTION 951 (Rev.WRC-07) Enhancing the international spectrum regulatory framework 419

ANNEX 1 Options for enhancing the international spectrum regulatory framework 421

ANNEX 2 Guidelines for implementing this Resolution 423

Page

RESOLUTION 953 (WRC-07) Protection of radiocommunication services from emissions by short-range radio devices 425

RESOLUTION 954 (WRC-07) Harmonization of spectrum for use by terrestrial electronic news gathering systems 427

RESOLUTION 955 (WRC-07) Consideration of procedures for free-space optical links 429

RESOLUTION 956 (WRC-07) Regulatory measures and their relevance to enable the introduction of software-defined radio and cognitive radio systems..... 431

RECOMMENDATIONS

RECOMMENDATION 7 (Rev.WRC-97) Adoption of standard forms for ship station and ship earth station licences and aircraft station and aircraft earth station licences 435

ANNEX 1 Principles for the formulation of standard ship and aircraft station licences 436

ANNEX 2 437

ANNEX 3 438

RECOMMENDATION 8 Relating to automatic identification of stations..... 439

RECOMMENDATION 9 Relating to the measures to be taken to prevent the operation of broadcasting stations on board ships or aircraft outside national territories 441

RECOMMENDATION 34 (WRC-95) Principles for the allocation of frequency bands..... 443

RECOMMENDATION 36 (WRC-97) Role of international monitoring in reducing apparent congestion in the use of orbit and spectrum resources 445

RECOMMENDATION 37 (WRC-03) Operational procedures for earth stations on board vessels (ESVs) use 447

ANNEX 1 Operational procedures for ESV use 447

RECOMMENDATION 63 Relating to the provision of formulae and examples for the calculation of necessary bandwidths 449

Page

RECOMMENDATION 71 Relating to the standardization of the technical and operational characteristics of radio equipment 451

RECOMMENDATION 75 (WRC-03) Study of the boundary between the out-of-band and spurious domains of primary radars using magnetrons..... 453

RECOMMENDATION 100 (Rev.WRC-03) Preferred frequency bands for systems using tropospheric scatter 455

RECOMMENDATION 104 (WRC-95) Development of power flux-density and equivalent isotropically radiated power limits to be met by feeder links of non-geostationary satellite networks in the mobile-satellite service for the protection of geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service in bands where No. **22.2** of the Radio Regulations applies 457

RECOMMENDATION 206 (WRC-07) Consideration on the possible use of integrated mobile-satellite service and ground component systems in some frequency bands identified for the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications..... 459

RECOMMENDATION 207 (WRC-07) Future IMT systems..... 463

RECOMMENDATION 316 (Rev.Mob-87) Use of ship earth stations within harbours and other waters under national jurisdiction..... 465

RECOMMENDATION 401 Relating to the efficient use of aeronautical mobile (R) worldwide frequencies..... 467

RECOMMENDATION 503 (Rev.WRC-2000) High-frequency broadcasting..... 469

RECOMMENDATION 506 Relating to the harmonics of the fundamental frequency of broadcasting-satellite stations 471

RECOMMENDATION 520 (WARC-92) Elimination of HF broadcasting on frequencies outside the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service 473

RECOMMENDATION 522 (WRC-97) Coordination of high-frequency broadcasting schedules in the bands allocated to the broadcasting service between 5 900 kHz and 26 100 kHz. 475

RECOMMENDATION 608 (Rev.WRC-07) Guidelines for consultation meetings established in Resolution **609 (Rev.WRC-07)**..... 477

ANNEX 1 List of RNSS system characteristics and format of the result of the aggregate epfd calculation to be provided to the Radiocommunication Bureau for publication for information 478

Page

RECOMMENDATION 622 (WRC-97) Use of the frequency bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz by the space research, space operation, Earth exploration-satellite, fixed and mobile services 481

RECOMMENDATION 707 Relating to the use of the frequency band 32-33 GHz shared between the inter-satellite service and the radionavigation service..... 483

RECOMMENDATION 724 (WRC-07) Use by civil aviation of frequency allocations on a primary basis to the fixed-satellite service..... 485

RESOLUTIONS

RESOLUTION 1 (Rev.WRC-97)

Notification of frequency assignments[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

referring to

– the Preamble of the Constitution,

– Article **42** of the Constitution (Special Arrangements),

– Article **6** of the Radio Regulations (Special agreements),

– Article **11** of the Radio Regulations (Notification and recording of frequency assignments),

– Article **12** of the Radio Regulations (Seasonal planning of the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service between 5 900 kHz and 26 100 kHz),

resolves

that, unless specifically stipulated otherwise by special arrangements communicated to the Union by administrations, any notification of a frequency assignment to a station shall be made by the administration of the country on whose territory the station is located.

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 2 (Rev.WRC-03)

Equitable use, by all countries, with equal rights, of the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits and of frequency bands for space radiocommunication services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

that all countries have equal rights in the use of both the radio frequencies allocated to various space radiocommunication services and the geostationary-satellite orbit and other satellite orbits for these services,

taking into account

that the radio frequency spectrum and the geostationary-satellite orbit and other satellite orbits are limited natural resources and should be most effectively and economically used,

resolves

1 that the registration with the Radiocommunication Bureau of frequency assignments for space radiocommunication services and their use do not provide any permanent priority for any individual country or groups of countries and do not create an obstacle to the establishment of space systems by other countries;

2 that, accordingly, a country or a group of countries having registered with the Bureau frequencies for their space radiocommunication services need to take all practicable measures to facilitate the use of new space systems by other countries or groups of countries, in particular those of developing countries and least developed countries, so desiring;

3 that *resolves* 1 and 2 of this Resolution shall be taken into account by the administrations and the Bureau.

RESOLUTION 4 (Rev.WRC-03)

Period of validity of frequency assignments to space stations using the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that rational and efficient use must be made of the frequency spectrum and the geostationary-satellite orbit and that account should be taken of the provisions of Resolution **2 (Rev.WRC-03)** relating to the use by all countries, with equal rights and equitable access to the frequency bands and the associated satellite orbits for space radiocommunication services;

b) that limiting the period of validity of frequency assignments to space stations using the geostationary-satellite orbit and other satellite orbits is a concept which would promote the attainment of these objectives;

c) that amortizing the considerable investments made in connection with the development of space radiocommunications is a heavy burden for all administrations and that these investments should be spread over a predetermined and realistic period;

d) that every effort should be made to encourage administrations in a position to do so to develop techniques designed to improve the utilization of the frequency spectrum and the geostationary-satellite orbit and other satellite orbits with a view to increasing the total radiocommunication facilities available to the world community;

e) that an experimental procedure to gain experience from application of the new concept of notifying the period of validity of an assignment in space radiocommunication was introduced by WARC-79 and has been used by the Radiocommunication Bureau and administrations since then but that it is not possible to impose on administrations a statutory period identical in all cases;

f) that administrations should be left to propose the period of validity themselves in the light of their operational service requirements and of the common interest, however the period of validity shall take into account, *inter alia*, the operational lifetime of the satellite systems, including space and earth stations, and the type of service provided,

---

[1] This Resolution does not apply to the frequency bands covered by the Allotment Plan contained in Appendix **30B**.

resolves

1 that, until this Resolution is reviewed by the next competent world radiocommunication conference, frequency assignments to space radiocommunication stations located on the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits, noting *considering e)* and *f)*, shall not be considered perpetual and shall be dealt with as follows:

1.1 a frequency assignment to a space station[2] shall be deemed definitively discontinued after the expiry of the period of operation shown on the assignment notice, reckoned from the date on which the assignment was brought into service. This period shall be limited to that for which the satellite network was designed. The Bureau shall then invite the notifying administration to take steps to cancel the assignment. If the Bureau receives no reply within three months following the expiry of the period of operation, it shall insert a symbol in the Remarks Column of the Master Register to indicate that the assignment is not in conformity with this Resolution;

1.2 if a notifying administration which wishes to extend the period of operation originally shown on the assignment notice of a frequency assignment of an existing space station[2] informs the Bureau accordingly more than three years before the expiry of the period in question and if all other basic characteristics of that assignment remain unchanged, the Bureau shall amend as requested the period of operation originally recorded in the Master Register and publish that information in a special section of the Bureau's International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC);

1.3 if, at least three years before the expiry of the period of operation recorded in the Master Register of a frequency assignment to an existing space station[2], an administration initiates the coordination procedure specified in No. **9.7** to bring into service a new space station using the same assigned frequency and the same orbital position but with different technical characteristics, and if the Bureau finds after the notification that the new assignment conforms with the provisions of No. **11.31** and does not increase, in relation to the preceding assignment, the probability of interference to the detriment of a frequency assignment recorded in the Master Register or involved in the coordination procedure, the new assignment shall be given a favourable finding and shall be entered in the Master Register;

1.4 a notifying administration which wishes to modify a basic characteristic of a frequency assignment of a space station[2] recorded in the Master Register shall initiate, in any case other than those covered by *resolves* 1.2 and 1.3, the appropriate modification procedure in accordance with the provisions of Nos. **11.43A** to **11.46**;

2 that, for the application of the provisions of *resolves* 1.1 above, the information concerning the period of validity of frequency assignments to space stations shall be notified in addition to that contained in Appendix **4**;

3 that the application of this Resolution shall not prejudge in any way the decisions of future radiocommunication conferences,

---

[2] The expression "space station" may apply to more than one satellite provided that only one satellite is in operation at any particular moment and that the stations installed on board successive satellites have identical basic characteristics.

invites ITU-R

to undertake studies with respect to the implementation of this Resolution,

invites the next competent world radiocommunication conference

to take cognizance of the results of ITU-R studies undertaken as a result of this Resolution and take action, as appropriate,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the Council.

RESOLUTION 5 (Rev.WRC-03)

Technical cooperation with the developing countries in the study of propagation in tropical and similar areas

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

having noted

that the assistance provided for the developing countries by the Union in the field of telecommunications in cooperation with other United Nations specialized agencies, such as the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP), augurs well for the future,

aware

a) of the fact that the developing countries, particularly those in tropical and similar areas, (including the area referred to as zone C in the Final Acts of the Regional Administrative Conference for the Planning of VHF/UHF Television Broadcasting in the African Broadcasting Area and Neighbouring Countries (Geneva, 1989), the Red Sea, East Mediterranean, etc.), require adequate knowledge of radiowave propagation in their territories in order to make rational and economical use of the radio-frequency spectrum;

b) of the importance of propagation in radiocommunications;

c) of the importance of the work of ITU-T and ITU-R Study Groups for the development of telecommunications in general and radiocommunications in particular,

considering

a) the need for the developing countries themselves to study telecommunications in general and propagation in particular in their territories, this being the best means of enabling them to acquire telecommunication techniques and to plan their systems effectively and in conformity with the special conditions in the tropical areas;

b) the scarcity of resources available in these countries,

resolves to instruct the Secretary-General

1 to offer the assistance of the Union to developing countries in the tropical areas which endeavour to carry out national propagation studies in order to improve and develop their radiocommunications;

2 to assist these countries, if necessary with the collaboration of international and regional organizations such as the Asia-Pacific Broadcasting Union (ABU), Arab States Broadcasting Union (ASBU), African Telecommunication Union (ATU) and the Union of National Radio and Television Organizations of Africa (URTNA)* which may be concerned, in carrying out national propagation measurement programmes, including collecting appropriate meteorological data, on the basis of ITU-R Recommendations and Questions in order to improve the use of the radio-frequency spectrum;

3 to arrange funds and resources for this purpose from the UNDP or other sources in order to enable the Union to provide the countries concerned with adequate and effective technical assistance for the purpose of this Resolution,

resolves to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to include this activity in the operational plan, within existing budgetary resources of the Sector,

invites administrations

to submit the results of these propagation measurements to ITU-R for consideration in its studies,

invites the Council

to follow the progress made in carrying out programmes of propagation measurements and the results achieved, and to take any action that it considers necessary.

* *Note by the Secretariat*: In 2006, this Union was transformed into a new Union, under the name "The African Union of Broadcasting (AUB)".

RESOLUTION 7 (Rev.WRC-03)

Development of national radio frequency management

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the Radio Regulations contain, *inter alia*, procedures for the coordination, notification and registration of frequencies which specify the rights and obligations of Member States;

b) that the application of the above-mentioned procedures necessitates an appropriate radio frequency management unit in each Member State;

c) that the existence of such a unit helps Member States to safeguard their rights and to discharge their obligations under the Radio Regulations;

d) that the application of the Radio Regulations through the agency of such units is in the interest of the international community as a whole,

noting

that such a unit requires an adequate number of suitably qualified staff,

noting further

that the administrations of many developing countries need to create or to strengthen such a unit, appropriate to their administrative structure, with responsibility for the application of the Radio Regulations at the national and international levels,

recommends

that the administrations of such countries take appropriate action,

resolves

1 that meetings shall be organized between representatives of the Radiocommunication Bureau and the personnel involved in frequency management matters from administrations of developing and developed countries;

2 that such meetings shall be aimed at designing standard structures suitable for administrations of developing countries and include discussions concerning the establishment and operation of radio frequency management units;

3 that such meetings should also identify the particular needs of developing countries in establishing such units, and the means required to meet those needs,

recommends

that developing countries when planning the use of funds, particularly those received from international sources, make provision for participation in these meetings as well as for the introduction and development of such units,

invites the Council

to take the necessary measures for the organization of such meetings,

instructs the Secretary-General

1 to circulate this Resolution to all Member States, drawing their attention to its importance;

2 to circulate the results of such meetings, particularly to the developing countries;

3 to inform the developing countries of the types of assistance the ITU can provide in setting up the desired structure,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to include this activity in the Operational Plan, within existing budgetary resources of the Sector,

draws the attention of the next Plenipotentiary Conference to

1 the particular problems identified in this Resolution;

2 the need for prompt and effective action to resolve them;

3 the need to take all practicable measures to ensure that resources are made available for this purpose.

RESOLUTION 10 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Use of two-way wireless telecommunications by the International Red Cross and Red Crescent Movement

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that the worldwide humanitarian operations carried out by the International Red Cross and Red Crescent Movement – composed of the International Committee of the Red Cross, the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies and national Red Cross and Red Crescent societies – are of great importance and often indispensable;

b) that in such circumstances normal communication facilities are frequently overloaded, damaged, completely interrupted or not available;

c) that it is necessary to facilitate by all possible measures the reliable intervention of these national and international organizations;

d) that rapid and independent contact is essential to the intervention of these organizations;

e) that for the efficient and safe conduct of their humanitarian operations, these organizations rely heavily on two-way wireless telecommunication facilities, and particularly on an extensive HF and VHF radio network,

resolves to urge administrations

1 to take account of the possible needs of the International Red Cross and Red Crescent Movement for two-way wireless telecommunication means when normal communication facilities are interrupted or not available;

2 to assign to these organizations the minimum number of necessary working frequencies in accordance with the Radio Regulations;

3 to take all practicable steps to protect such communications from harmful interference.

RESOLUTION 13 (Rev.WRC-97)

Formation of call signs and allocation of new international series

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

the increasing demand for call signs justified by the increased number of Member States and by the increased requirements of countries which are already Member States,

believing

that call signs already in use should, as far as possible, not be changed,

noting

a) that the former call-sign series formed of three letters, or a figure and two letters, having been exhausted, a new series has been introduced formed of a letter, a figure and a letter; but in no case may the figure be 0 or 1;

b) that the method referred to in *noting a)* is not applicable to series beginning with one of the following letters: B, F, G, I, K, M, N, R, W,

resolves

1 that the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall continue to urge administrations:

1.1 to make maximum use of the possibilities of the series at present allocated, in order to avoid, as far as possible, further requests;

1.2 to review the call-sign assignments they have already made from their present allocations, with a view to releasing any series and placing them at the disposal of the Union;

2 that the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall, upon request, furnish advice to administrations on the means of effecting the greatest economy, which should be the rule, in the use of a series of call signs;

3 that if, nevertheless, before the next competent world radiocommunication conference, it appears that all the possibilities of the present system of forming call signs will be exhausted, the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall:

3.1 explore the possibility of extending the present allocations of international call-sign series by lifting the limitation on use of the letter “Q” and the digits “0” and “1”;

3.2 issue a circular-letter:

3.2.1 explaining the position;

3.2.2 urging administrations to send in their proposals for possible solutions;

4 that, from the information thus submitted, the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall prepare a report, together with his comments and suggestions, for submission to the next competent world radiocommunication conference.

RESOLUTION 15 (Rev.WRC-03)

International cooperation and technical assistance in the field of space radiocommunications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that a large number of Member States are not in a position to take immediate advantage of satellite techniques for the development of their telecommunication services;

b) that such Member States would benefit immensely through the technical assistance programmes sponsored by the Union,

recognizing

a) that international satellite-communication systems are subject to the Convention and Regulations of the Union and that they permit participation of all countries including, in particular, the developing countries, in space communication systems;

b) that a number of problems need to be solved in order that the developing countries may participate effectively in international space communication systems and integrate these systems with their national telecommunication networks,

resolves to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to include this activity in the Operational Plan, within existing budgetary resources of the Sector,

invites the Council

1 to draw the attention of administrations to the means by which they may avail themselves of technical assistance in connection with the introduction of space communications;

2 to consider the most effective manner in which requests for such assistance by Member States may be formulated and presented in order to secure maximum financial and other assistance, including the allocation of the funds in the regular budget of ITU for implementing this Resolution, preferably within the budget of the Sector identified for the implementation of this Resolution;

3 to consider how best to make use of funds made available by the United Nations in accordance with its Resolution 1721 to give technical and other assistance to administrations of Member States to make effective use of space communications;

4 to consider in what way the work of the ITU-T, ITU-R and ITU-D and other organs of the Union may be utilized in the most effective way for the information and assistance of administrations of Member States in the development of space radiocommunications.

RESOLUTION 18 (Rev.WRC-07)

Relating to the procedure for identifying and announcing the position of ships and aircraft of States not parties to an armed conflict[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that ships and aircraft encounter considerable risk in the vicinity of an area of armed conflict;

b) that for the safety of life and property it is desirable for ships and aircraft of States not parties to an armed conflict to be able to identify themselves and announce their position in such circumstances;

c) that radiocommunication offers such ships and aircraft a rapid means of self-identification and providing location information prior to their entering areas of armed conflict and during their passage through the areas;

d) that it is considered desirable to provide a supplementary signal and procedure for use, in accordance with customary practice, in the area of armed conflict by ships and aircraft of States representing themselves as not parties to an armed conflict,

resolves

1 that the frequencies for urgency signal and messages specified in the Radio Regulations may be used by ships and aircraft of States not parties to an armed conflict for self-identification and establishing communications. The transmission will consist of the urgency or safety signals, as appropriate, described in Article **33** followed by the addition of the single group "NNN" in radiotelegraphy and by the addition of the single word "NEUTRAL" pronounced as in French "neutral" in radiotelephony. As soon as practicable, communications shall be transferred to an appropriate working frequency;

2 that the use of the signal as described in the preceding paragraph indicates that the message which follows concerns a ship or aircraft of a State not party to an armed conflict. The message shall convey at least the following data:

a) call sign or other recognized means of identification of such ship or aircraft;

b) position of such ship or aircraft;

---

[1] Administrations are invited to study the text of this Resolution and provide any proposals to a future competent Conference.

c) number and type of such ships or aircraft;

d) intended route;

e) estimated time en route and of departure and arrival, as appropriate;

f) any other information, such as flight altitude, radio frequencies guarded, languages and secondary surveillance radar modes and codes;

3 that the provisions of Article **33** relating to urgency and safety transmissions, and medical transports shall apply as appropriate to the use of the urgency and safety signals, respectively, by such ship or aircraft;

4 that the identification and location of ships of a State not party to an armed conflict may be effected by means of appropriate standard maritime radar transponders. The identification and location of aircraft of a State not party to an armed conflict may be effected by the use of the secondary surveillance radar (SSR) system in accordance with procedures to be recommended by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO);

5 that the use of the signals described above would not confer or imply recognition of any rights or duties of a State not party to an armed conflict or a party to the conflict, except as may be recognized by common agreement between the parties to the conflict and a non-party;

6 to encourage parties to a conflict to enter into such agreements,

requests the Secretary-General

to communicate the contents of this Resolution to the International Maritime Organization, the International Civil Aviation Organization, the International Committee of the Red Cross, and the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies for such action as they may consider appropriate,

requests ITU-R

to recommend an appropriate signal in the digital selective calling system for use in the maritime mobile service and other appropriate information as necessary, in consultation with concerned organizations.

RESOLUTION 20 (Rev.WRC-03)

Technical cooperation with developing countries in the field of aeronautical telecommunications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the allocations of the frequency bands and the provisions concerning various aeronautical mobile services have been revised several times by recent conferences;

b) that some of these frequency bands and provisions support the worldwide implementation of new aeronautical telecommunication systems;

c) that on the other hand, some of these frequency bands and provisions support existing aeronautical systems that may be affected by the revision;

d) that, as a consequence of *a)*, *b)* and *c)*, technological modernization will be necessary in order to maintain and improve the safety and regularity of international civil aviation, the accuracy and security of aeronautical radionavigation and the efficiency of distress and rescue systems;

e) that the developing countries may require assistance in improving the training of technical staff, as well as in introducing new systems, in coping with technological modernization and enhancing the operation of aeronautical telecommunications,

recognizing

a) the value of the assistance which, in conjunction with other international organizations, the Union has provided and may continue to provide to developing countries in the field of telecommunications;

b) that the original version of Resolution **20 (Mob-87)** established a good basis for the technical cooperation with developing countries in the field of aeronautical telecommunications that has been undertaken by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO),

resolves to instruct the Secretary-General

1 to encourage ICAO to continue its assistance to developing countries which are endeavouring to improve their aeronautical telecommunications, in particular by providing them with technical advice for the planning, establishment, operation and maintenance of equipment, as well as help with the training of staff, essentially in matters relating to the new technologies;

2 for this purpose, to seek the continued collaboration of ICAO, the United Nations Conference for Trade and Development (UNCTAD) and other specialized agencies of the United Nations, as appropriate;

3 to continue to give special attention to seeking the aid of the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) and other sources of financial support, to enable the Union to render sufficient and effective technical assistance in the field of aeronautical telecommunications,

invites the developing countries

so far as possible, to give a high level of priority to and include in their national programmes of requests for technical assistance projects relating to aeronautical telecommunications and to support multinational projects in that field.

RESOLUTION 25 (Rev.WRC-03)

Operation of global satellite systems for personal communications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that, in accordance with No. 6 of its Constitution (Geneva, 1992), one of the purposes of the Union is "to promote the extension of the benefits of the new telecommunication technologies to all the world's inhabitants";

b) that, to this end, the Union is fostering the use of new technologies in telecommunications and is studying questions relating to this use in the Radiocommunication and the Telecommunication Standardization Sectors;

c) that the Telecommunication Development Sector is studying questions aimed at identifying the benefits that developing countries may derive from using new technologies;

d) that, among these new technologies, some constellations of non-geostationary satellites may provide global coverage and facilitate low-cost communications;

e) that the theme "global mobile personal communications by satellite" (GMPCS) was discussed at the first World Telecommunication Policy Forum established by Resolution 2 (Kyoto, 1994) of the Plenipotentiary Conference;

f) that Council Resolution 1116 instructs the Secretary-General to act as depositary of the GMPCS Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) and its Arrangements, to act as the registry for type-approval procedures and terminal types and to authorize the use of the abbreviation "ITU" as part of the GMPCS-MoU mark;

g) Recommendations ITU-R M.1343 and ITU-R M.1480 on the essential technical requirements of GMPCS earth stations that should be used by administrations as a common technical basis facilitating the global circulation and use of such GMPCS terminals in conformity with these Recommendations,

recognizing

a) that the spectrum available to global satellite systems for personal communications is limited;

b) that successful coordination does not in any way imply licensing authorization to provide a service within the territory of a Member State,

considering further

that other countries intending to use these systems should be guaranteed that they will be operated in accordance with the Constitution, the Convention and the Administrative Regulations,

noting

a) that the Constitution recognizes the sovereign right of each State to regulate its telecommunications;

b) that the International Telecommunication Regulations "recognize the right of any Member, subject to national law and should it decide to do so, to require that administrations and private operating agencies, which operate in its territory and provide an international telecommunication service to the public, be authorized by that Member", and specifies that "within the framework of the present Regulations, the provision and operation of international telecommunication services in each relation is pursuant to mutual agreement between administrations";

c) that Article **18** specifies the authorities for licensing the operation of stations within any given territory;

d) the right of each Member State to decide on its participation in these systems, and the obligations for entities and organizations providing international or national telecommunication services by means of these systems to comply with the legal, financial and regulatory requirements of the administrations in whose territory these services are authorized,

resolves

that administrations licensing global satellite systems and stations intended to provide public personal communications by means of fixed, mobile or transportable terminals shall ensure, when licensing these systems and stations, that they can be operated only from the territory or territories of administrations having authorized such service and stations in compliance with Articles **17** and **18**, in particular No. **18.1**,

requests administrations

1 to continue cooperating with worldwide satellite system operators in improving the established arrangements for the provision of service within their territories and with the Secretary-General in implementing the GMPCS-MoU and its Arrangements;

2 to participate actively in ITU-R studies in developing and improving relevant Recommendations,

reminds operators of such systems

to take account, when contracting agreements on the operation of their systems from the territory of a country, of any potential loss of revenue that the country may suffer from a possible reduction of its international traffic existing at the time such agreements are executed.

RESOLUTION 26 (Rev.WRC-07)

Footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations in Article 5 of the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that footnotes are an integral part of the Table of Frequency Allocations in the Radio Regulations and, as such, form part of an international treaty text;

b) that footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations should be clear, concise and easy to understand;

c) that footnotes should relate directly to matters of frequency allocation;

d) that, in order to ensure that footnotes allow modification of the Table of Frequency Allocations without introducing unnecessary complications, principles relating to the use of footnotes are needed;

e) that, currently, footnotes are adopted by competent world radiocommunication conferences and any addition, modification or deletion of a footnote is considered and adopted by the competent conference;

f) that some problems concerning country footnotes may be resolved through the application of a special agreement envisaged by Article **6**;

g) that, in certain cases, administrations are confronted with major difficulties due to inconsistencies or omissions in footnotes;

h) that, in order to keep the footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations up to date, there should be clear and effective guidelines for additions, modifications and deletions of footnotes,

resolves

1 that, wherever possible, footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations should be confined to altering, limiting or otherwise changing the relevant allocations rather than dealing with the operation of stations, assignment of frequencies or other matters;

2 that the Table of Frequency Allocations should include only those footnotes which have international implications for the use of the radio-frequency spectrum;

3 that new footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations should only be adopted in order to:

a) achieve flexibility in the Table of Frequency Allocations;

b) protect the relevant allocations in the body of the Table and in other footnotes in accordance with Section II of Article **5**;

c) introduce either transitional or permanent restrictions on a new service to achieve compatibility; or

d) meet the specific requirements of a country or area when it is impracticable to satisfy such needs otherwise within the Table of Frequency Allocations;

4 that footnotes serving a common purpose should be in a common format, and, where possible, be grouped into a single footnote with appropriate references to the relevant frequency bands,

further resolves

1 that any addition of a new footnote or modification of an existing footnote should be considered by a world radiocommunication conference only when:

a) the agenda of that conference explicitly includes the frequency band to which the proposed additional or modified footnote relates; or

b) the frequency bands to which the desired additions or modifications of the footnote belong are considered during the conference and the conference decides to make a change in those bands; or

c) the addition or modification of footnotes is specifically included in the agenda of the conference as a result of the consideration of proposals submitted by one or more interested administration(s);

2 that recommended agendas for future world radiocommunication conferences should include a standing agenda item which would allow for the consideration of proposals by administrations for deletion of country footnotes, or country names in footnotes, if no longer required;

3 that in cases not covered by *further resolves* 1 and 2, proposals for new footnotes or modification of existing footnotes could exceptionally be considered by a world radiocommunication conference if they concern corrections of obvious omissions, inconsistencies, ambiguities or editorial errors and have been submitted to ITU as stipulated in No. 40 of the General Rules of Conferences, Assemblies and Meetings of the Union (Antalya, 2006),

urges administrations

1 to review footnotes periodically and to propose the deletion of their country footnotes or of their country names from footnotes, as appropriate;

2 to take account of the *further resolves* above in making proposals to world radiocommunication conferences.

RESOLUTION 27 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of incorporation by reference in the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the principles of incorporation by reference were adopted by WRC-95, revised by WRC-97 and further refined by WRC-2000 (see Annexes 1 and 2 to this Resolution);

b) that there are provisions in the Radio Regulations containing references which fail to distinguish adequately whether the status of the referenced text is mandatory or non-mandatory,

noting

that references to Resolutions or Recommendations of a world radiocommunication conference (WRC) require no special procedures, and are acceptable for consideration, since such texts will have been agreed by a WRC,

resolves

1 that for the purposes of the Radio Regulations, the term "incorporation by reference" shall only apply to those references intended to be mandatory;

2 that when considering the introduction of new cases of incorporation by reference, such incorporation shall be kept to a minimum and made by applying the following criteria:

– only texts which are relevant to a specific WRC agenda item may be considered;

– the correct method of reference shall be determined on the basis of the principles set out in Annex 1 to this Resolution;

– the guidance contained in Annex 2 to this Resolution shall be applied in order to ensure that the correct method of reference for the intended purpose is employed;

3 that the procedure described in Annex 3 to this Resolution shall be applied for approving the incorporation by reference of ITU-R Recommendations or parts thereof;

4 that existing references to ITU-R Recommendations shall be reviewed to clarify whether the reference is mandatory or non-mandatory in accordance with Annex 2 to this Resolution;

5 that ITU-R Recommendations, or parts thereof, incorporated by reference at the conclusion of each WRC shall be collated and published in a volume of the Radio Regulations (see Annex 3 to this Resolution),

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to bring this Resolution to the attention of the Radiocommunication Assembly and the ITU-R Study Groups;

2 to identify the provisions and footnotes of the Radio Regulations containing references to ITU-R Recommendations and make suggestions on any further action to the second session of the Conference Preparatory Meeting (CPM) for its consideration, as well as for inclusion in the Director's Report to the next WRC;

3 to identify the provisions and footnotes of the Radio Regulations containing references to WRC Resolutions that contain references to ITU-R Recommendations, and make suggestions on any further action to the second session of the Conference Preparatory Meeting (CPM) for its consideration, as well as for inclusion in the Director's Report to the next WRC,

invites administrations

to submit proposals to future conferences, taking into account the CPM Report, in order to clarify the status of references, where ambiguities remain regarding the mandatory or non-mandatory status of the references in question, with a view to amending those references:

i) that appear to be of a mandatory nature, identifying such references as being incorporated by reference by using clear linking language in accordance with Annex 2;

ii) that are of a non-mandatory character, so as to refer to "the most recent version" of the Recommendations.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 27 (Rev.WRC-07)

Principles of incorporation by reference

1 For the purposes of the Radio Regulations, the term "incorporation by reference" shall apply only to those references intended to be mandatory.

2 Where the relevant texts are brief, the referenced material should be placed in the body of the Radio Regulations rather than using incorporation by reference.

3 Where a mandatory reference to an ITU-R Recommendation, or parts thereof, is included in the *resolves* of a WRC Resolution, which is itself cited in a provision or footnote of the Radio Regulations using mandatory language (i.e. "shall"), that ITU-R Recommendation or parts thereof shall also be considered as incorporated by reference.

4 Texts which are of a non-mandatory nature or which refer to other texts of a non-mandatory nature shall not be considered for incorporation by reference.

5 If, on a case-by-case basis, it is decided to incorporate material by reference on a mandatory basis, then the following provisions shall apply:

5.1 the text incorporated by reference shall have the same treaty status as the Radio Regulations themselves;

5.2 the reference must be explicit, specifying the specific part of the text (if appropriate) and the version or issue number;

5.3 the text incorporated by reference must be submitted for adoption by a competent WRC in accordance with *resolves* 3;

5.4 all texts incorporated by reference shall be published following a WRC, in accordance with *resolves* 5.

6 If, between WRCs, a text incorporated by reference (e.g. an ITU-R Recommendation) is updated, the reference in the Radio Regulations shall continue to apply to the earlier version incorporated by reference until such time as a competent WRC agrees to incorporate the new version. The mechanism for considering such a step is given in Resolution **28 (Rev.WRC-03)**.

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 27 (Rev.WRC-07)

Application of incorporation by reference

When introducing new cases of incorporation by reference in the provisions of the Radio Regulations or reviewing existing cases of incorporation by reference, administrations and ITU-R should address the following factors in order to ensure that the correct method of reference is employed for the intended purpose, according to whether each reference is mandatory (i.e. incorporated by reference), or non-mandatory:

Mandatory references

1 mandatory references shall use clear linking language, i.e. “shall”;

2 mandatory references shall be explicitly and specifically identified, e.g. “Recommendation ITU-R M.541-8”;

3 if the intended reference material is, as a whole, unsuitable as treaty-status text, the reference shall be limited to just those portions of the material in question which are of a suitable nature, e.g. “Annex A to Recommendation ITU-R Z.123-4”.

Non-mandatory references

4 Non-mandatory references or ambiguous references that are determined to be of a non-mandatory character (i.e. not incorporated by reference) shall use appropriate language, such as “should” or “may”. This appropriate language may refer to “the most recent version” of a Recommendation. Any appropriate language may be changed at any future WRC.

ANNEX 3 TO RESOLUTION 27 (Rev.WRC-07)

Procedures applicable by WRC for approving the incorporation by reference of ITU-R Recommendations or parts thereof

The referenced texts shall be made available to delegations in sufficient time for all administrations to consult them in the ITU languages. A single copy of the texts shall be made available to each administration as a conference document.

During the course of each WRC, a list of the texts incorporated by reference shall be developed and maintained by the committees. This list shall be published as a conference document in line with developments during the conference.

Following the end of each WRC, the Bureau and General Secretariat will update the volume of the Radio Regulations which serves as the repository of texts incorporated by reference in line with developments at the conference as recorded in the above-mentioned document.

RESOLUTION 28 (Rev.WRC-03)

Revision of references to the text of ITU-R Recommendations incorporated by reference in the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the Voluntary Group of Experts (VGE) on simplification of the Radio Regulations proposed the transfer of certain texts of the Radio Regulations to other documents, especially to ITU-R Recommendations, using the incorporation by reference procedure;

b) that, in some cases, the provisions of the Radio Regulations imply an obligation on Member States to conform to the criteria or specifications incorporated by reference;

c) that references to incorporated texts shall be explicit and shall refer to a precisely identified provision (see Resolution **27 (Rev.WRC-03)**[*]);

d) that all texts of ITU-R Recommendations incorporated by reference are published in a volume of the Radio Regulations;

e) that, taking into account the rapid evolution of technology, ITU-R may revise the ITU-R Recommendations containing text incorporated by reference at short intervals;

f) that, following revision of an ITU-R Recommendation containing text incorporated by reference, the reference in the Radio Regulations shall continue to apply to the earlier version until such time as a competent world radiocommunication conference (WRC) agrees to incorporate the new version;

g) that it would be desirable that texts incorporated by reference reflect the most recent technical developments,

noting

that administrations need sufficient time to examine the potential consequences of changes to ITU-R Recommendations containing text incorporated by reference and would therefore benefit greatly from being advised, as early as possible, of which ITU-R Recommendations have been revised and approved during the elapsed study period or at the Radiocommunication Assembly preceding the WRC,

---

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

resolves

1 that each radiocommunication assembly shall communicate to the following WRC a list of the ITU-R Recommendations containing text incorporated by reference in the Radio Regulations which have been revised and approved during the elapsed study period;

2 that, on this basis, WRC should examine those revised ITU-R Recommendations, and decide whether or not to update the corresponding references in the Radio Regulations;

3 that, if the WRC decides not to update the corresponding references, the currently referenced version shall be maintained in the Radio Regulations;

4 that WRCs shall place the examination of ITU-R Recommendations in conformity with *resolves* 1 and *resolves* 2 of this Resolution on the agenda of future WRCs,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to provide the CPM immediately preceding each WRC with a list, for inclusion in the CPM Report, of those ITU-R Recommendations containing texts incorporated by reference that have been revised or approved since the previous WRC, or that may be revised in time for the following WRC,

urges administrations

1 to participate actively in the work of the radiocommunication study groups and the radiocommunication assembly on revision of those Recommendations to which mandatory references are made in the Radio Regulations;

2 to examine any indicated revisions of ITU-R Recommendations containing text incorporated by reference and to prepare proposals on possible updating of relevant references in the Radio Regulations.

RESOLUTION 33 (Rev.WRC-03)

Bringing into use of space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service, prior to the entry into force of agreements and associated plans for the broadcasting-satellite service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that while Resolution **507 (Rev.WRC-03)** envisages plans for the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS), some administrations might nevertheless feel the need to bring stations in that service into use prior to such plans being established;

b) that administrations should, as far as possible, avoid proliferation of space stations in the BSS before such plans have been established;

c) that a space station in the BSS may cause harmful interference to terrestrial stations operating in the same frequency band, even if the latter are outside the service area of the space station;

d) that the procedures specified in Articles **9** to **14** and Appendix **5** contain provisions for coordination between stations in the BSS and terrestrial stations, between space systems in that service and space systems of other administrations;

e) that there are many existing and planned stations in the BSS not subject to agreements and associated plans that have submitted advance publication information (API) or a request for coordination under the existing Resolution **33** procedures and that some administrations are currently in coordination under these procedures,

resolves

1 that, except in those cases where agreements and associated plans for the BSS have been established and have entered into force, for satellite networks for which the API has been received following 1 January 1999, only the procedures of Articles **9** to **14**[*] shall be applied for the coordination and notification of stations in the BSS and coordination and notification of other services in respect of that service;

---

[*] Or procedures contained in other provisions of these Regulations when they replace any of those in Articles **9** to **14** for the broadcasting-satellite service.

2 that, except in those cases where agreements and associated plans for the BSS have been established and have entered into force, for satellite networks for which the API has been received by the Radiocommunication Bureau prior to 1 January 1999, only the procedure in Sections A to C in this Resolution shall be applied;

3 that a future conference review the requirement for the procedures in this Resolution.

Section A – Coordination procedure between space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service and terrestrial stations

2.1 Before an administration notifies to the Bureau or brings into use any frequency assignment to a space station in the BSS in a frequency band where this frequency band is allocated, with equal rights, to the BSS and to a terrestrial radiocommunication service, either in the same Region or sub-Region or in different Regions or sub-Regions, it shall coordinate the use of this assignment with any other administration whose terrestrial radiocommunication services may be affected. For this purpose, it shall inform the Bureau of all the technical characteristics of the station, as listed in the relevant sections of Appendix **4**, which are necessary to assess the risk of interference to a terrestrial radiocommunication service[1].

2.2 The Bureau shall publish this information in a Special Section of its International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC) and shall also, when the BR IFIC contains such information, so advise all administrations by circular telegram.

2.3 Any administration which considers that its terrestrial radiocommunication services may be affected shall forward its comments to the administration seeking coordination and, in any case, to the Bureau. These comments must be forwarded within four months from the date of the relevant BR IFIC. It shall be deemed that any administration which has not forwarded comments within that period considers that its terrestrial radiocommunication services are unlikely to be affected.

2.4 Any administration which has forwarded comments on the projected station shall either give its agreement, with a copy to the Bureau, or, if this is not possible, send to the administration seeking coordination all the data on which its comments are based as well as any suggestions it may be able to offer with a view to a satisfactory solution of the problem.

2.5 The administration which plans to bring into use a space station in the BSS as well as any other administration which believes that its terrestrial radiocommunication services are likely to be affected by the station in question may request the assistance of the Bureau at any time during the coordination procedure.

---

[1] The calculation methods and the interference criteria to be employed in evaluating the interference should be based upon relevant ITU-R Recommendations agreed by the administrations concerned either as a result of Resolution **703 (Rev.WRC-03)*** or otherwise. In the event of disagreement on an ITU-R Recommendation or in the absence of such Recommendations, the methods and criteria shall be agreed between the administrations concerned. Such agreements shall be concluded without prejudice to other administrations.

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

2.6 In the event of continuing disagreement between an administration seeking to effect coordination and one with which coordination has been sought, the administration seeking coordination shall, except in the cases where the assistance of the Bureau has been requested, defer the submission of its notice concerning the proposed assignment by six months from the date of publication of the information according to § 2.2.

Section B – Coordination procedure between space stations in the BSS and space systems of other administrations

3 An administration intending to bring into use a space station in the BSS shall, for the purpose of coordination with space systems of other administrations, apply the following provisions of Article **11** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994):

3.1 Nos. **1041** to **1058** inclusive.

3.2.1 Nos. **1060** to **1065**[2].

3.2.2 No coordination under § 3.2.1 is required when an administration proposes to change the characteristics of an existing assignment in such a way as not to increase the probability of harmful interference to stations in the space radiocommunication service of other administrations.

3.2.3 Nos. **1074** to **1105** inclusive.

Section C – Notification, examination and recording in the Master Register of assignments to space stations in the BSS dealt with under this Resolution

4.1 Any frequency assignment[3] to a space station in the BSS shall be notified to the Bureau. The notifying administration shall apply for this purpose the provisions of Nos. **1495** to **1497** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994).

4.2 Notices made under § 4.1 shall initially be treated in accordance with No. **1498** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994).

5.1 The Bureau shall examine each notice with respect to:

5.2 *a)* its conformity with the Convention, the Table of Frequency Allocations and the other provisions of the Radio Regulations, with the exception of those relating to the coordination procedures and to the probability of harmful interference, which are the subject of § 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5;

---

2 See footnote 1.

3 The expression *frequency assignment*, wherever it appears in this Resolution, shall be understood to refer either to a new frequency assignment or to a change in an assignment already recorded in the Master International Frequency Register (hereinafter called the *Master Register*).

5.3 *b)* its conformity, where applicable, with the provisions of § 2.1 of Section A above, relating to coordination of the use of the frequency assignment with the other administrations concerned;

5.4 *c)* its conformity, where applicable, with the provisions of § 3.2.1 of Section B above, relating to coordination of the use of the frequency assignment with the other administrations concerned;

5.5 *d)* where appropriate, the probability of harmful interference to the service rendered by a station in a space or terrestrial radiocommunication service for which a frequency assignment has already been recorded in the Master Register in conformity with the provisions of No. **1240** or **1503** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or No. **11.31**, as appropriate, if that assignment has not, in fact, caused harmful interference to the service rendered by a station for which an assignment has been previously recorded in the Master Register and which itself is in conformity with No. **1240** or **1503** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or No. **11.31**, as appropriate.

6.1 Depending upon the findings of the Bureau subsequent to the examination prescribed in § 5.2, 5.3, 5.4 and 5.5, further action shall be as follows:

6.2 Where the Bureau reaches an unfavourable finding with respect to § 5.2, the notice shall be returned immediately by airmail to the notifying administration with the reasons of the Bureau for this finding together with such suggestions as the Bureau is able to offer with a view to a satisfactory solution of the problem.

6.3 Where the Bureau reaches a favourable finding with respect to § 5.2, or where it reaches the same finding after resubmission of the notice, it shall examine the notice with respect to the provisions of § 5.3 and 5.4.

6.4 Where the Bureau finds that the coordination procedures mentioned in § 5.3 and 5.4 have been successfully completed with all administrations whose services may be affected, the assignment shall be recorded in the Master Register. The date of receipt by the Bureau of the notice shall be entered in Column 2d of the Master Register with an entry in the Remarks Column indicating that such recording does not prejudge in any way the decisions to be included in the agreements and associated plans referred to in Resolution **507 (Rev.WRC-03)**.

6.5 Where the Bureau finds that the coordination procedures mentioned in § 5.3 or 5.4 have not, as appropriate, been applied or have been unsuccessfully applied, the notice shall be returned immediately by airmail to the notifying administration with the reason for its return together with such suggestions as the Bureau is able to offer with a view to a satisfactory solution of the problem.

6.6 Where the notifying administration resubmits the notice and states that it has been unsuccessful in endeavouring to effect the coordination, the notice shall be examined by the Bureau with respect to § 5.5.

6.7 Where the notifying administration resubmits the notice and the Bureau finds that the coordination procedures have been successfully completed with all administrations whose services may be affected, the assignment shall be treated as indicated in § 6.4.

6.8 Where the Bureau reaches a favourable finding with respect to § 5.5, the assignment shall be recorded in the Master Register. The appropriate symbol indicating the finding by the Bureau shall indicate that the coordination procedures, as appropriate, referred to in § 2.1 or 3.2.1 were not successfully completed. The date of receipt by the Bureau of the notice shall be entered in Column 2d of the Master Register, with the remark mentioned in § 6.4.

6.9 Where the Bureau reaches an unfavourable finding with respect to § 5.5, the notice shall be returned immediately by airmail to the notifying administration with the reasons for the Bureau's finding together with such suggestions as the Bureau is able to offer with a view to a satisfactory solution of the problem.

6.10 If the administration resubmits the notice unchanged with the insistence that it be reconsidered, but should the Bureau's unfavourable finding under § 5.5 remain unchanged, the assignment shall be recorded in the Master Register. However, this entry shall be made only if the notifying administration informs the Bureau that the assignment has been in use for at least four months without any complaint of harmful interference having been received. The date of receipt by the Bureau of the original notice shall be entered in Column 2d of the Master Register, with the remark mentioned in § 6.4. An appropriate remark shall be placed in Column 13 to indicate that the assignment is not in conformity with the provisions of § 5.3, 5.4 or 5.5, as appropriate. In the event that the administration concerned receives no complaint of harmful interference concerning the operation of the station in question for a period of one year from the commencement of operation, the Bureau shall review its finding.

6.11 If harmful interference is actually caused to the reception of any space station in the BSS whose frequency assignment has been recorded in the Master Register as a result of a favourable finding with respect to § 5.2, 5.3, 5.4 and 5.5 of this Resolution, as appropriate, by the use of a frequency assignment to a space station which has been subsequently recorded in the Master Register in accordance with the provisions of § 6.10 of this Resolution or of No. **1544** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or No. **11.41**, as appropriate, the station using the latter frequency assignment must, upon receipt of advice thereof, immediately eliminate this harmful interference.

6.12 If harmful interference is actually caused to the reception of any space radiocommunication station using an assignment recorded in the Master Register as a result of a favourable finding with respect to Nos. **1503** to **1512** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or Nos. **11.31** to **11.34**, as appropriate, by the use of an assignment to a space station in the BSS which has been subsequently recorded in the Master Register in accordance with the provisions of § 6.10 of this Resolution, the station using the latter assignment must, on receipt of advice thereof, immediately eliminate this harmful interference.

6.13 If harmful interference is actually caused to the reception of any terrestrial station using an assignment recorded in the Master Register as a result of a favourable finding with respect to No. **1240** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or No. **11.31**, as appropriate, by the use of an assignment to a space station in the BSS which has been subsequently recorded in the Master Register in accordance with the provisions of § 6.10 of this Resolution, the station, using the latter assignment must, on receipt of advice thereof, immediately eliminate this harmful interference.

6.14 If harmful interference to the reception of any station whose assignment is in accordance with § 5.2 of this Resolution is actually caused by the use of a frequency assignment which is not in conformity with No. **1240**, **1352** or **1503** of the Radio Regulations (edition of 1990, revised in 1994), or No. **11.31**, as appropriate, the station using the latter frequency assignment must, upon receipt of advice thereof, immediately eliminate this harmful interference.

RESOLUTION 34 (Rev.WRC-03)

Establishment of the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 in the 12.5-12.75 GHz frequency band and sharing with space and terrestrial services in Regions 1, 2 and 3

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

that the World Administrative Conference (Geneva, 1979) has allocated the band 12.5-12.75 GHz to the broadcasting-satellite service for community reception in Region 3,

recognizing

that under Resolution **507 (Rev.WRC-03)** the Council may wish to empower a future competent radiocommunication conference to establish a plan for the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 12.5-12.75 GHz in Region 3,

resolves

1 that, until such time as a plan may be established for the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 12.5-12.75 GHz in Region 3, the relevant provisions of Sections A and B of Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)** or of Article **9**, as appropriate (see Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)**) shall continue to apply to the coordination between stations in the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 and:

a) space stations in the broadcasting-satellite and fixed-satellite services in Regions 1, 2 and 3;

b) terrestrial stations in Regions 1, 2 and 3;

2 that the ITU-R shall study urgently the technical provisions which may be appropriate for the sharing between stations in the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 and:

a) space stations in the broadcasting-satellite and fixed-satellite services in Regions 1 and 2;

b) terrestrial stations in Regions 1 and 2;

3 that, until such time as technical provisions are developed by the ITU-R and accepted by administrations concerned under Resolution **703 (Rev.WRC-03)***, the sharing between space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 and terrestrial services in Regions 1, 2 and 3 shall be based on the following criteria as appropriate:

a) the power flux-density at the Earth's surface, produced by emissions from a space station in the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 3 for all conditions and for all methods of modulation shall not exceed the limits given in Annex 5 of Appendix **30**;

b) in addition to *resolves* 3 *a)* above, the provisions of Article **21** (Table **21-4**) shall apply in the countries mentioned in Nos. **5.494** and **5.496**;

c) the limits given in *resolves* 3 *a)* and *b)* above may be exceeded on the territory of any country provided the administration of that country has so agreed.

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

RESOLUTION 42 (Rev.WRC-03)

Use of interim systems in Region 2 in the broadcasting-satellite and fixed-satellite (feeder-link) services in Region 2 for the bands covered by Appendices 30 and 30A

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the Regional Administrative Conference for the Planning of the Broadcasting-Satellite Service in Region 2, Geneva, 1983, prepared a Plan for the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 12.2-12.7 GHz and a Plan for the associated feeder links in the band 17.3-17.8 GHz with provisions for implementing interim systems in accordance with Resolution 2 (Sat-R2);

b) that in the implementation of their assignments in the Plans, administrations of Region 2 may find it more appropriate to adopt a phased approach and initially use characteristics different from those appearing in the appropriate Region 2 Plan;

c) that some administrations of Region 2 may cooperate in the joint development of a space system with a view to covering two or more service areas from the same orbital position or to using a beam which would encompass two or more service areas;

d) that some administrations of Region 2 may cooperate in the joint development of a space system with a view to covering two or more feeder-link service areas from the same orbital position or to using a beam which encompasses two or more feeder-link service areas;

e) that interim systems shall not adversely affect the Plans nor hamper the implementation and evolution of the Plans;

f) that the number of assignments to be used in an interim system shall not in any case exceed the number of assignments appearing in the Region 2 Plan which are to be suspended;

g) that the interim systems shall not in any case use orbital positions that are not in the Region 2 Plan;

h) that an interim system shall not be introduced without the agreement of all administrations whose space and terrestrial services are considered to be affected;

i) that WRC-2000 revised Regions 1 and 3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and established Lists together with regulatory procedures, protection criteria and calculation methods for sharing between services in the frequency bands of Appendices **30** and **30A**;

j) that this Conference has modified the regulatory procedures, protection criteria and calculation methods for sharing between services in the frequency bands of Appendices **30** and **30A**,

resolves

that administrations and the Radiocommunication Bureau shall apply the procedure contained in the Annex to this Resolution, so long as Appendices **30** and **30A** remain in force.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 42 (Rev.WRC-03)

1 An administration or a group of administrations in Region 2 may, after successful application of the procedure contained in this Annex and with the agreement of the affected administrations, use an interim system during a specified period not exceeding ten years in order:

1.1 For an interim system in the broadcasting-satellite service

a) to use an increased e.i.r.p. in any direction relative to that appearing in the Region 2 Plan provided that the power flux-density does not exceed the limits given in Annex 5 to Appendix **30**;

b) to use modulation characteristics[1] different from those appearing in the Annexes to the Region 2 Plan and resulting in an increased probability of harmful interference or in a wider assigned bandwidth;

c) to change the coverage area by displacing boresight, or by increasing the major or minor axis, or by rotating them from an orbital position which shall be one of the corresponding orbital positions appearing in the Region 2 Plan;

d) to use a coverage area appearing in the Region 2 Plan or a coverage area encompassing two or more coverage areas appearing in the Region 2 Plan from an orbital position which shall be one of the corresponding positions appearing in the Region 2 Plan;

e) to use a polarization different from that in the Region 2 Plan.

1.2 For an interim feeder-link system

a) to use an increased e.i.r.p. in any direction relative to that appearing in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan;

b) to use modulation characteristics[1] different from those appearing in the Annexes to the Plan and resulting in an increased probability of harmful interference or in a wider assigned bandwidth;

c) to change the feeder-link beam area by displacing the boresight, or by increasing the major or minor axis, or by rotating them in relation to an orbital position which shall be one of the corresponding orbital positions appearing in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan;

---

[1] For example, modulation with sound channels frequency-multiplexed within the bandwidth of a television channel, digital modulation of sound and television signals, or other pre-emphasis characteristics.

d) to use a feeder-link beam area appearing in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan or a feeder-link beam area encompassing two or more feeder-link beam areas appearing in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan in relation to an orbital position which shall be one of the corresponding orbital positions appearing in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan;

e) to use a polarization different from that in the Region 2 feeder-link Plan.

2 In all cases, an interim system shall correspond to assignments in the appropriate Region 2 Plan; the number of assignments to be used in an interim system shall not in any case exceed the number of assignments appearing in the Region 2 Plan which are to be suspended. During the use of an interim system, the use of the corresponding assignments in the Region 2 Plan is suspended; they shall not be brought into use before the cessation of the use of the interim system. However, the suspended assignments, but not the interim system's assignments, of an administration shall be taken into account when other administrations apply the procedure of Article 4 of Appendix **30** or of Article 4 of Appendix **30A**, as appropriate, in order to modify the Region 2 Plan or to include new or modified assignments in the Regions 1 and 3 List, or the procedure of this Annex in order to bring an interim system into use. The assignments of interim systems shall not be taken into account in applying the procedure of Article 6 or Article 7 of Appendix **30** and the procedure of Article 6 or Article 7 of Appendix **30A**.

3 As a specific consequence of § 2 above, Region 2 interim system assignments shall not obtain protection from, or cause harmful interference to, new or modified assignments appearing in the Regions 1 and 3 List following the successful application of the procedure of Article 4 of Appendix **30** or of Article 4 of Appendix **30A**, as appropriate, even if the assignment modification procedure is concluded and the assignments become operational within the time-limits specified in § 4 *a)*.

4 When an administration proposes to use an assignment in accordance with § 1, it shall communicate to the Bureau the information listed in Appendix **4** not earlier than eight years but, preferably, not later than two years before the date of bringing into use. An assignment shall lapse if it is not brought into use by that date[2]. The administration shall also indicate:

a) the maximum specified period during which the interim assignment is intended to remain in use;

b) the assignments in the Region 2 Plans the use of which will remain suspended for the duration of the use of the corresponding interim assignment;

c) the names of the administrations with which an agreement for the use of the interim assignment has been reached, together with any comment relating to the period of use so agreed and the names of administrations with which an agreement may be required but has not yet been reached.

---

[2] The provisions of Resolution **533 (Rev.WRC-2000)** apply.

5 Administrations are considered to be affected as follows:

5.1 For an interim system in the broadcasting-satellite service

a) an administration of Region 2 is considered to be affected if any overall equivalent protection margin of one of its assignments in the Region 2 Plan, calculated in accordance with Annex 5 to Appendix **30** including the cumulative effect of all interim uses during the maximum specified period of use of the interim system, but excluding the corresponding suspended assignments (§ 4 *b)*), becomes negative or a former negative value is made more negative;

b) an administration of Region 1 or 3 is considered to be affected if it has an assignment which is in conformity with the Regions 1 and 3 Plan contained in Appendix **30** or with the List or in respect of which proposed new or modified assignments have been received by the Bureau in accordance with the provisions of Article 4 of that Appendix with a necessary bandwidth which falls within the necessary bandwidth of the proposed interim assignment and the appropriate limits of § 3 of Annex 1 to Appendix **30** are exceeded;

c) an administration of Region 1 or 3 is considered to be affected if it has a frequency assignment in the fixed-satellite service which is recorded in the Master Register or which has been coordinated or is being coordinated under the provisions of No. **9.7** or under Article 7 of Appendix **30** or which has been published in accordance with No. **9.2B** and the appropriate limits of § 6 of Annex 1 to Appendix **30** are exceeded;

d) an administration of Region 1 or 3 is considered to be affected if, although having no frequency assignment in the appropriate Regions 1 and 3 Plan or List in the channel concerned, it nevertheless would receive on its territory a power flux-density value which exceeds the limits given in § 4 of Annex 1 to Appendix **30** as a result of the proposed interim assignment, or if it has such an assignment for which its associated service area does not cover the whole of the territory of the administration, and in its territory outside that service area the power flux-density from the interim system space station exceeds the above-mentioned limits;

e) an administration of Region 2 is considered to be affected if, although having no frequency assignment in the appropriate Region 2 Plan in the channel concerned, it nevertheless would receive on its territory a power flux-density value which exceeds the limits given in § 4 of Annex 1 to Appendix **30** as a result of the proposed interim assignment, or if it has such an assignment for which its associated service area does not cover the whole of the territory of the administration, and in its territory outside that service area the power flux-density from the interim system space station exceeds the above-mentioned limits;

f) an administration of Region 3 is considered to be affected if it has a frequency assignment to a space station in the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 12.5-12.7 GHz with a necessary bandwidth any portion of which falls within the necessary bandwidth of the proposed assignment, and which:

– is recorded in the Master Register; *or*

– has been coordinated or is being coordinated under the provisions of Sections A and B of Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)** or under the provisions of Articles **9** to **14**, as appropriate (see Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)**); *or*

– appears in a Region 3 Plan to be adopted at a future radiocommunication conference, taking account of modifications which may be introduced subsequently in accordance with the Final Acts of that conference,

and the limits of § 3, Annex 1 to Appendix **30** are exceeded.

5.2 For interim feeder-link systems

a) an administration of Region 2 is considered to be affected if any overall equivalent protection margin of one of its assignments in the Plan, calculated in accordance with Annex 3 to Appendix **30A** including the cumulative effect of all interim uses during the maximum specified period of use of the interim system, but excluding the corresponding suspended assignment(s) (§ 4 *b)*), becomes negative or a former negative value is made more negative;

b) an administration in Region 1 or 3 is considered to be affected if it has an assignment for feeder links in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space), any portion of the necessary bandwidth of which falls within the necessary bandwidth of the proposed assignment, which is in conformity with the feeder-link Plan or List for Regions 1 and 3, or in respect of which proposed new or modified assignments in the List have already been received by the Bureau in accordance with the provisions of Article 4 of Appendix **30A** and for which the limits set out in § 5 of Annex 1 to Appendix **30A** are exceeded.

6 The Bureau shall publish in a Special Section of its International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC) the information received under § 4, together with the names of the administrations which the Bureau has identified in applying § 5.

7 When the Bureau finds that the suspended assignment of an administration having an interim system is not affected, it shall examine the projected interim system with respect to the interim system of that administration and if there is an incompatibility, it shall request the two administrations concerned to adopt any measures that may enable the new interim system to be operated.

8 The Bureau shall send a telegram to the administrations listed in the Special Section of the BR IFIC, drawing their attention to the information it contains and shall send them the results of its calculations.

9 Any administration not listed in the special section which considers that its planned interim assignment may be affected shall so inform the administration responsible for the interim system and the Bureau, and the two administrations shall endeavour to resolve the difficulty before the proposed date of bringing the interim assignment into use.

10 An administration which has not sent its comments either to the administration seeking agreement or to the Bureau within a period of four months following the date of the BR IFIC referred to in § 6 shall be understood as having agreed to the proposed interim use.

11 On the expiry of four months following the date of publication of the BR IFIC referred to in § 6, the Bureau shall review the matter, and, depending on the results obtained, shall inform the administration proposing the interim assignment that:

a) it may notify its proposed use under Article 5 of Appendix **30** or Article 5 of Appendix **30A**, as appropriate, if no agreement is required or the required agreement has been obtained from the administrations concerned. In this case the Bureau shall update the Interim List;

b) it may not bring into use its interim system before having obtained the agreement of the administrations affected, either directly or by applying the procedure described in Article 4 of Appendix **30** or Article 4 of Appendix **30A**, as appropriate, as a means of obtaining that agreement.

12 The Bureau shall include all the interim assignments in an Interim List in two parts, one each for the broadcasting-satellite service and the feeder-link assignments, and shall update it in accordance with this Annex. The Interim List shall be published together with the Region 2 Plans but does not constitute part of them.

13 One year prior to the expiry of the interim period, the Bureau shall draw the attention of the administration concerned to this fact and request it to notify in due time the deletion of the assignment from the Master Register and the Interim List.

14 If, notwithstanding the reminders by the Bureau, an administration does not reply to its request sent in application of § 13, the Bureau shall, at the termination of the interim period:

a) enter a symbol in the Remarks Column of the Master Register to indicate the lack of response and that the entry is for information only;

b) not take that assignment into account in the Interim List;

c) inform the administrations concerned and affected of its action.

15 When an administration confirms the termination of the use of the interim assignment, the Bureau shall delete the assignment concerned from the Interim List and the Master Register. Any corresponding assignment in the Plan(s), suspended earlier, may then be brought into use.

16 An administration which considers that its interim system may continue to be used after the expiry of the interim period may extend it by not more than four years and to this effect shall apply the procedure described in this Annex.

17 When an administration applies the procedure in accordance with § 16, but is unable to obtain the agreement of one or more affected administrations, the Bureau shall indicate this situation by inserting an appropriate symbol in the Master Register. Upon receipt of a complaint of harmful interference, the administration shall immediately cease operation of the interim assignment.

18 When an administration, having been informed of a complaint of harmful interference, does not cease transmission within a period of thirty days after the receipt of complaint, the Bureau shall apply the provisions of § 14.

RESOLUTION 49 (Rev.WRC-07)

Administrative due diligence applicable to some satellite radiocommunication services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that Resolution 18 of the Plenipotentiary Conference (Kyoto, 1994) instructed the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau to initiate a review of some important issues concerning international satellite network coordination and to make a preliminary report to WRC-95 and a final report to WRC-97;

b) that the Director of the Bureau provided a comprehensive report to WRC-97, including a number of recommendations for action as soon as possible and for identifying areas requiring further study;

c) that one of the recommendations in the Director's report to WRC-97 was that administrative due diligence should be adopted as a means of addressing the problem of reservation of orbit and spectrum capacity without actual use;

d) that experience may need to be gained in the application of the administrative due diligence procedures adopted by WRC-97, and that several years may be needed to see whether administrative due diligence measures produce satisfactory results;

e) that new regulatory approaches may need to be carefully considered in order to avoid adverse effects on networks already going through the different phases of the procedures;

f) that Article 44 of the Constitution sets out the basic principles for the use of the radio-frequency spectrum and the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits, taking into account the needs of developing countries,

considering further

g) that WRC-97 decided to reduce the regulatory time-frame for bringing a satellite network into use;

h) that WRC-2000 has considered the results of the implementation of the administrative due diligence procedures and prepared a report to the 2002 Plenipotentiary Conference in response to Resolution 85 (Minneapolis, 1998),

resolves

1 that the administrative due diligence procedure contained in Annex 1 to this Resolution shall be applied as from 22 November 1997 for a satellite network or satellite system of the fixed-satellite service, mobile-satellite service or broadcasting-satellite service for which the advance publication information under No. **9.2B**, or for which the request for modifications of the Region 2 Plan under Article 4, § 4.2.1 *b)* of Appendices **30** and **30A** that involve the addition of new frequencies or orbit positions, or for which the request for modifications of the Region 2 Plan under Article 4, § 4.2.1 *a)* of Appendices **30** and **30A** that extend the service area to another country or countries in addition to the existing service area, or for which the request for additional uses in Regions 1 and 3 under § 4.1 of Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A**, or for which the submission of information under supplementary provisions applicable to additional uses in the planned bands as defined in Article 2 of Appendix **30B** (Section III of Article 6) has been received by the Bureau from 22 November 1997, or for which submission under Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)** is received on or after 17 November 2007, with the exception of submissions of new Member States seeking the acquisition of their respective national allotments[1] for inclusion in the Appendix **30B** Plan;

2 that for a satellite network or satellite system within the scope of § 1 or 3 of Annex 1 to this Resolution not yet recorded in the Master International Frequency Register (MIFR) by 22 November 1997, for which the advance publication information under No. **1042** of the Radio Regulations (Edition of 1990, revised in 1994) or for the application of Section III of Article 6 of Appendix **30B** has been received by the Bureau before 22 November 1997, the responsible administration shall submit to the Bureau the complete due diligence information in accordance with Annex 2 to this Resolution not later than 21 November 2004, or before the expiry of the notified period for bringing the satellite network into use, plus any extension period which shall not exceed three years pursuant to the application of No. **1550** of the Radio Regulations (Edition of 1990, revised in 1994) or the dates specified in the relevant provisions Article 6 of Appendix **30B**, whichever date comes earlier. If the date of bringing into use, including extension specified above, is before 1 July 1998, the responsible administration shall submit to the Bureau the complete due diligence information in accordance with Annex 2 to this Resolution not later than 1 July 1998;

2*bis* that for a satellite network or satellite system within the scope of § 2 of Annex 1 to this Resolution not recorded in the MIFR by 22 November 1997, for which the request for a modification to the Plans of Appendices **30** and **30A** has been received by the Bureau before 22 November 1997, the responsible administration shall submit to the Bureau the complete due diligence information in accordance with Annex 2 to this Resolution as early as possible before the end of the period established as a limit to bringing into use in accordance with the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendix **30** and the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendix **30A**;

---

[1] See § 2.3 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**.

3 that for a satellite network or satellite system within the scope of § 1, 2 or 3 of Annex 1 to this Resolution recorded in the MIFR by 22 November 1997, the responsible administration shall submit to the Bureau the complete due diligence information in accordance with Annex 2 to this Resolution not later than 21 November 2000, or before the notified date of bringing the satellite network into use (including any extension period), whichever date comes later;

4 that six months before the expiry date specified in *resolves* 2 or 2*bis* above, if the responsible administration has not submitted the due diligence information, the Bureau shall send a reminder to that administration;

5 that if the due diligence information is found to be incomplete, the Bureau shall immediately request the administration to submit the missing information. In any case, the complete due diligence information shall be received by the Bureau before the expiry date specified in *resolves* 2 or 2*bis* above, as appropriate, and shall be published by the Bureau in the International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC);

6 that if the complete due diligence information is not received by the Bureau before the expiry date specified in *resolves* 2 or 2*bis* above, the request for coordination or request for a modification to the Plans of Appendices **30** and **30A** or for application of Section III of Article 6 of Appendix **30B** as covered by *resolves* 1 above submitted to the Bureau shall be cancelled. Any modifications of the Plans (Appendices **30** and **30A**) shall lapse and any recording in the MIFR as well as recordings in the Appendix **30B** List shall be deleted by the Bureau after it has informed the concerned administration. The Bureau shall publish this information in the BR IFIC,

further resolves

that the procedures in this Resolution are in addition to the provisions under Article **9** or **11** of the Radio Regulations or Appendices **30**, **30A** or **30B**, as applicable, and, in particular, do not affect the requirement to coordinate under those provisions (Appendices **30**, **30A**) in respect of extending the service area to another country or countries in addition to the existing service area,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to report to future competent world radiocommunication conferences on the results of the implementation of the administrative due diligence procedure.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 49 (Rev.WRC-07)

1 Any satellite network or satellite system of the fixed-satellite service, mobile-satellite service or broadcasting-satellite service with frequency assignments that are subject to coordination under Nos. **9.7**, **9.11**, **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13** and Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)** shall be subject to these procedures.

2 Any request for modifications of the Region 2 Plan under the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A** that involve the addition of new frequencies or orbit positions or for modifications of the Region 2 Plan under the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A** that extend the service area to another country or countries in addition to the existing service area or request for additional uses in Regions 1 and 3 under the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A** shall be subject to these procedures.

3 Any submission of information under Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**, with the exception of submissions of new Member States seeking the acquisition of their respective national allotments[2] for inclusion in the Appendix **30B** Plan, shall be subject to these procedures.

4 An administration requesting coordination for a satellite network under § 1 above shall send to the Bureau as early as possible before the end of the period established as a limit to bringing into use in No. **9.1**, the due diligence information relating to the identity of the satellite network and the spacecraft manufacturer specified in Annex 2 to this Resolution.

5 An administration requesting a modification of the Region 2 Plan or additional uses in Regions 1 and 3 under Appendices **30** and **30A** under § 2 above shall send to the Bureau as early as possible before the end of the period established as a limit to bringing into use in accordance with the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendix **30** and the relevant provisions of Article 4 of Appendix **30A**, the due diligence information relating to the identity of the satellite network and the spacecraft manufacturer specified in Annex 2 to this Resolution.

6 An administration applying Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)** under § 3 above shall send to the Bureau as early as possible before the end of the period established as a limit to bringing into use in § 6.1 of that Article, the due diligence information relating to the identity of the satellite network and the spacecraft manufacturer specified in Annex 2 to this Resolution.

7 The information to be submitted in accordance with § 4, 5 or 6 above shall be signed by an authorized official of the notifying administration or of an administration that is acting on behalf of a group of named administrations.

8 On receipt of the due diligence information under § 4, 5 or 6 above, the Bureau shall promptly examine that information for completeness. If the information is found to be complete, the Bureau shall publish the complete information in a special section of the BR IFIC within 30 days.

9 If the information is found to be incomplete, the Bureau shall immediately request the administration to submit the missing information. In all cases, the complete due diligence information shall be received by the Bureau within the appropriate time period specified in § 4, 5 or 6 above, as the case may be, relating to the date of bringing the satellite network into use.

---

[2] See § 2.3 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**.

10 Six months before expiry of the period specified in § 4, 5 or 6 above and if the administration responsible for the satellite network has not submitted the due diligence information under § 4, 5 or 6 above, the Bureau shall send a reminder to the responsible administration.

11 If the complete due diligence information is not received by the Bureau within the time limits specified in this Resolution, the networks covered by § 1, 2 or 3 above shall no longer be taken into account and shall not be recorded in the MIFR. The provisional recording in the MIFR shall be deleted by the Bureau after it has informed the concerned administration. The Bureau shall publish this information in the BR IFIC.

With respect to the request for modification of the Region 2 Plan or for additional uses in Regions 1 and 3 under Appendices **30** and **30A** under § 2 above, the modification shall lapse if the due diligence information is not submitted in accordance with this Resolution.

With respect to the request for application of Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)** under § 3 above, the network shall also be deleted from the Appendix **30B** List. When an allotment under Appendix **30B** is converted into an assignment, the assignment shall be reinstated in the Plan in accordance with § 6.33 *c)* of Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**.

12 An administration notifying a satellite network under § 1, 2 or 3 above for recording in the MIFR shall send to the Bureau, as early as possible before the date of bringing into use, the due diligence information relating to the identity of the satellite network and the launch services provider specified in Annex 2 to this Resolution.

13 When an administration has completely fulfilled the due diligence procedure but has not completed coordination, this does not preclude the application of No. **11.41** by that administration.

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 49 (Rev.WRC-07)

A Identity of the satellite network

a) Identity of the satellite network

b) Name of the administration

c) Country symbol

d) Reference to the advance publication information or to the request for modification of the Region 2 Plan or for additional uses in Regions 1 and 3 under Appendices **30** and **30A**; or reference to the information processed under Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**

e) Reference to the request for coordination (not applicable for Appendices **30**, **30A** and **30B**)

f) Frequency band(s)

g) Name of the operator

h) Name of the satellite

i) Orbital characteristics.

B Spacecraft manufacturer*

a) Name of the spacecraft manufacturer

b) Date of execution of the contract

c) Contractual "delivery window"

d) Number of satellites procured.

C Launch services provider

a) Name of the launch vehicle provider

b) Date of execution of the contract

c) Launch or in-orbit delivery window

d) Name of the launch vehicle

e) Name and location of the launch facility.

* NOTE – In cases where a contract for satellite procurement covers more than one satellite, the relevant information shall be submitted for each satellite.

RESOLUTION 51 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Transitional arrangements relating to the advance publication and coordination of satellite networks[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that as a result of the review under Resolution 18 of the Plenipotentiary Conference, (Kyoto, 1994) a number of provisions relating to the advance publication, coordination and notification of assignments for satellite networks have been modified and these should be applied provisionally as soon as possible;

b) that WRC-97 decided to reduce the regulatory time-frame for bringing a satellite network into use, and to delete the advance publication information (API) if not followed by the coordination data within 24 months of the date of receipt of the API;

c) that there are a number of satellite networks for which the relevant information has been communicated to ITU prior to the end of WRC-97, and it is necessary to provide for some transitional measures for the treatment of this information by the Radiocommunication Bureau;

d) that WRC-97 decided that the provisions of Sections I, IA and IB of Article **S9** and provisions of Article **S11** (Nos. **S11.43A**, **S11.44**, **S11.44B** to **S11.44I**, **S11.47** and **S11.48**), as revised by WRC-97, were to be applied by the Bureau and by administrations on a provisional basis from 22 November 1997;

e) that WRC-97 decided that, for satellite networks which were subject to coordination for which the API had been received by the Bureau prior to 22 November 1997 but the coordination data had not been received by the Bureau prior to that date, the responsible administration would have until 22 November 1999 or the end of the period pursuant to the application of No. **1056A**, whichever date came earlier, to submit the coordination data in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Radio Regulations; otherwise the Bureau would cancel the relevant API in accordance with No. **1056A** or No. **9.5D** as applicable;

f) that WRC-97 decided that the revised Appendix **S4** with respect to the API for satellite networks which were subject to coordination under Section II of Article **S9** was to be applied as of 22 November 1997,

resolves

that, for satellite networks for which the API was received by the Bureau prior to 22 November 1997, the maximum allowed time period from the date of publication of the API to bring the relevant frequency assignments into use shall be six years plus the extension pursuant to No. **1550** (see also Resolution **49 (WRC-97)**[*]).

---

[1] WRC-07 reviewed this Resolution and decided to abrogate it as of 1 January 2010 (see *further resolves* 3 of Resolution **97 (WRC-07)**).

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

RESOLUTION 55 (Rev.WRC-07)

Electronic submission of notice forms for satellite networks, earth stations and radio astronomy stations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

that submission of notices for all satellite networks, earth stations and radio astronomy stations in electronic format would further facilitate the tasks of the Radiocommunication Bureau and of administrations, and would accelerate the processing of these notices,

recognizing

that, should the processing delays related to the coordination and notification procedures extend beyond the periods specified in Articles **9** and **11** as well as in Appendices **30**, **30A** and **30B**, administrations may be faced with a shortened time window in which to effect coordination,

resolves

1 that, as from 3 June 2000, all notices (AP4/II and AP4/III), radio astronomy notices (AP4/IV) and API (AP4/V and AP4/VI) and due diligence information (Resolution **49 (Rev.WRC-07)**) for satellite networks and earth stations submitted to the Radiocommunication Bureau pursuant to Articles **9** and **11** shall be submitted in electronic format which is compatible with the BR electronic notice form capture software (SpaceCap);

2 that, as from 17 November 2007, all notices for satellite networks, earth stations and radio astronomy stations submitted to the Radiocommunication Bureau pursuant to Articles **9** and **11**, as well as Appendices **30** and **30A** and Resolution **49 (Rev.WRC-07)**, shall be submitted in electronic format which is compatible with the BR electronic notice form capture software (SpaceCap and SpaceCom);

3 that, as from 1 June 2008, all notices for satellite networks and earth stations submitted to the Radiocommunication Bureau pursuant to Appendix **30B** shall be submitted in electronic format which is compatible with the BR electronic notice form capture software (SpaceCap);

4 that, since 3 June 2000, all graphical data associated with the submissions addressed in *resolves* 1, 2 and 3 should be submitted in graphics data format which is compatible with the Bureau's data capture software (graphical interference management system (GIMS)); submission of graphics in paper form, however, continues to be accepted,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to make available coordination requests and notifications referred to in *resolves* 1, "as received", on its BR International Frequency Information Circular CD-ROM, within 30 days of receipt, and also on its website;

2 to provide administrations with the latest versions of the capture and validation software and any necessary technical means, training and manuals, along with any assistance requested by administrations to enable them to comply with *resolves* 1 to 4 above;

3 to integrate the validation software with the capture software to the extent practicable,

urges administrations

to submit, as soon as practicable, the graphical data relating to their notices in a format compatible with the Bureau's graphic data capture software.

RESOLUTION 58 (WRC-2000)

Transitional measures for coordination between certain specific geostationary fixed-satellite service receive earth stations and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service transmit space stations in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz, and 19.7-20.2 GHz where epfd↓ limits apply

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that WRC-97 adopted, in Article **22**, provisional equivalent power flux-density (epfd) limits to be met by non-geostationary fixed-satellite service (non-GSO FSS) systems in order to protect GSO FSS and GSO broadcasting-satellite service networks in parts of the frequency range 10.7-30 GHz;

b) that this Conference has revised these limits to ensure that they provide adequate protection to GSO systems without causing undue constraints to any of the systems and services sharing these frequency bands;

c) that additional protection above that provided by the revised epfd↓ limits in *considering b)* is required for certain GSO FSS networks with specific receive earth stations having all of the following characteristics:

– earth station antenna maximum isotropic gain greater than or equal to 64 dBi for the frequency band 10.7-12.75 GHz or 68 dBi for the frequency bands 17.8-18.6 GHz and 19.7-20.2 GHz;

– G/T of 44 dB/K or higher; and

– emission bandwidth of 250 MHz or more for the frequency bands below 12.75 GHz or 800 MHz or more for the frequency bands above 17.8 GHz;

d) that, as a consequence, this Conference adopted an alternative regulatory procedure to protect the earth stations referred to in *considering c)*;

e) that this regulatory procedure, specified in Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B** and associated provisions in Articles **9** (Nos. **9.7A**, **9.7B**, **9.7A.1** and **9.7B.1**, and **9.7A.2** and **9.7B.2**), **11** (Nos. **11.32A** and **11.32A.1**), and **22** and Appendices **4** and **5**, defines the conditions for effecting coordination between a specific earth station referred to in *considering c)* in respect of a non-GSO FSS system, and between a non-GSO FSS system in respect of a specific earth station referred to in *considering c)*;

f) that there was no requirement to provide the specific locations of earth stations referred to in *considering c)* prior to WRC-2000, except in respect of coordination with terrestrial stations or earth stations operating in the opposite direction of transmission under Nos. **9.17** and **9.17A**;

g) that coordination of an earth station referred to in *considering c)* shall remain within the authority of the administration on whose territory the station is located;

h) that complete coordination information for GSO FSS networks with typical earth stations having all the characteristics specified in *considering c)* have been received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before WRC-2000;

i) that complete notification or coordination information, as appropriate, for non-GSO FSS systems has been received by the Bureau prior to WRC-2000 and, in some cases, prior to WRC-97,

recognizing

that transitional measures are needed for the regulatory procedures referred to in *considering e)*,

resolves

1 that, in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz and 19.7-20.2 GHz, the requirement for coordination and associated provisions referred to in *considering e)* shall be applied as from 3 June 2000;

2 that, in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz and 19.7-20.2 GHz, the requirement for coordination under No. **9.7A** shall be applied to specific earth stations for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, is considered as having been received by the Bureau prior to 3 June 2000;

3 that, in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz and 19.7-20.2 GHz, the requirement for coordination under No. **9.7B** shall be applied to non-GSO FSS systems for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, has been received by the Bureau after 21 November 1997;

4 that, in the frequency bands 10.7-12.75 GHz, 17.8-18.6 GHz and 19.7-20.2 GHz, the requirement for coordination under No. **9.7B** shall not apply to non-GSO FSS systems for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, has been received by the Bureau before 22 November 1997 but No. **22.2** shall apply in respect of any specific earth stations for which complete coordination information is considered as having been received before 22 November 1997 if coordination under No. **9.7A** has not been concluded;

5 that coordination information relating to a specific earth station received by the Bureau prior to 30 June 2000 shall be considered as complete information under No. **9.7A** or No. **9.7B** as from the date of receipt of complete coordination information of the associated GSO FSS satellite network under No. **9.7**, provided that:

5.1 the maximum isotropic gain, lowest total receiving system noise temperature and necessary bandwidth of the specific earth station are the same as those of any typical earth station included in the GSO FSS network that has previously entered coordination;

5.2 the coordination or notification information, as appropriate, of the GSO FSS network containing the typical earth station referred to in *resolves* 5.1 was received by the Bureau prior to 8 May 2000;

6 that, in cases other than those covered in *resolves* 5, the date of receipt by the Bureau of the complete coordination information under Nos. **9.7A** or **9.7B** or the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, of the associated GSO network, whichever is later, shall be used;

7 that the administration on whose territory the specific earth station is located shall submit the coordination information contained in Annex 1 to this Resolution,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to draw up appropriate forms of notice and instructions to assist administrations in providing the information in Annex 1 of this Resolution immediately after this Conference, taking into account the deadline established by *resolves* 5;

2 as of the end of WRC-2000, to review and, if appropriate, identify in accordance with No. **9.27**, any administration with which coordination may need to be effected in accordance with Nos. **9.7A** or **9.7B** in cases covered by *resolves* 2 and 3.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 58 (WRC-2000)

Appendix 4 characteristics to be provided for specific receive GSO FSS earth stations

A.1.e.1 Type of earth station (i.e. specific)

A.1.e.2 Earth station name

A.1.e.3 Country and geographical coordinates of the antenna site

A.2.a Date of bringing into use

A.3 Operating administration or agency

A.4.c Identity of associated space station (i.e. name and nominal orbital longitude)

A.13 As appropriate, reference to the special section of the Bureau's International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC)

B.1 Associated satellite transmitting beam designation

B.5.a Maximum isotropic gain

B.5.c Earth station antenna reference radiation pattern

C.2.a Assigned frequency

C.3.a Assigned frequency band

C.4 Class of station and nature of service

C.5.b Lowest total receiving system noise temperature

C.7.a Class of emission and the necessary bandwidth

RESOLUTION 63 (Rev.WRC-07)

Protection of radiocommunication services against interference caused by radiation from industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) equipment

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that ISM applications are defined under RR 1.15 as "operation of equipment or appliances designed to generate and use locally radio frequency energy for industrial, scientific, medical, domestic or similar purposes, excluding applications in the field of *telecommunications*";

b) that ISM equipment may be situated in locations where outward radiation cannot always be avoided;

c) that there is an increasing amount of ISM equipment working on various frequencies throughout the spectrum;

d) that in some cases a considerable part of the energy may be radiated by ISM equipment outside its working frequency;

e) that Recommendation ITU-R SM.1056 recommends to administrations the use of International Special Committee on Radio Interference (CISPR) Publication 11 as a guide for ISM equipment to protect radiocommunication services, but that CISPR 11 does not yet fully specify radiation limits for all frequency bands;

f) that some radio services, especially those using low field strengths, may suffer interference caused by radiation from ISM equipment, a risk which is unacceptable particularly in the case of radionavigation or other safety services;

g) that, in order to limit the risks of interference to specified parts of the spectrum:

– the preceding Radio Conferences of Atlantic City, 1947, and Geneva, 1959, designated some frequency bands within which the radiocommunication services must accept harmful interference produced by ISM equipment;

– WARC-79 accepted an increase in the number of bands to be designated for ISM equipment, but only on the condition that limits of radiation from such equipment be specified within the bands newly designated for worldwide use and outside all the bands designated for ISM equipment,

resolves

that, to ensure that radiocommunication services are adequately protected, studies are required on the limits to be imposed on the radiation from ISM equipment within the frequency bands designated in the Radio Regulations for this use and outside of those bands,

invites ITU-R

to continue, in collaboration with CISPR, its studies relating to radiation from ISM equipment within the frequency bands designated in the Radio Regulations for this use and outside of those bands in order to ensure adequate protection of radiocommunication services, with priority being given to the completion of studies which would permit CISPR to define limits in Publication CISPR 11 on radiation from ISM equipment inside all the bands designated in the Radio Regulations for the use of such equipment,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to bring this Resolution to the attention of CISPR;

2 to provide the results of these studies to WRC-11 for its consideration.

RESOLUTION 72 (Rev.WRC-07)

World and regional preparations for world radiocommunication conferences

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that many regional telecommunication organizations continue to coordinate their preparations for WRCs;

b) that many common proposals have been submitted to this Conference from administrations participating in the preparations of regional telecommunication organizations;

c) that this consolidation of views at regional level, together with the opportunity for interregional discussions prior to the Conference, has eased the task of reaching a common understanding and saved time during past WRCs;

d) that the burden of preparation for future conferences is likely to increase;

e) that there is consequently great benefit to the Member States of coordination of preparations at world level and at regional level;

f) that the success of future conferences will depend on greater efficiency of regional coordination and interaction at interregional level prior to future conferences, including possible face-to-face meetings between regional groups;

g) that there is a need for overall coordination of the interregional consultations,

recognizing

a) *resolves* 2 of Resolution 80 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference:

"to support the regional harmonization of common proposals, as stated in Resolution 72 (WRC-97), for submission to world radiocommunication conferences";

b) *resolves* 3 of Resolution 80 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference:

"to encourage both formal and informal collaboration in the interval between conferences with a view to resolving differences on items already on the agenda of a conference or new items",

noting

that the plenipotentiary conferences have resolved that the Union should continue to develop stronger relations with regional telecommunication organizations,

resolves

to invite the regional groups to continue their preparations for WRCs, including the possible convening of joint meetings of regional groups formally and informally,

further resolves to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to continue consulting the regional telecommunication organizations on the means by which assistance can be given to their preparations for future world radiocommunication conferences in the following areas:

– organization of regional preparatory meetings;

– organization of information sessions, preferably before and after the second session of the Conference Preparatory Meeting (CPM);

– identification of major issues to be resolved by the future world radiocommunication conference;

– facilitation of regional and interregional formal and informal meetings, with the objective of reaching a possible convergence of interregional views on major issues;

2 pursuant to Resolution ITU-R 2-5 of the Radiocommunication Assembly on the CPM, to assist in ensuring that overview presentations of the chapters of the CPM Report will be made by the CPM management at an early stage in the CPM session, as part of the regularly scheduled meetings, in order to help all participants understand the contents of the CPM Report;

3 to submit a report on the results of such consultations to the next WRC,

invites the Director of the Telecommunication Development Bureau

to collaborate with the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau in implementing this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 73 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Measures to solve the incompatibility between the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 1 and the fixed-satellite service in Region 3 in the frequency band 12.2-12.5 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that the band 12.2-12.5 GHz is allocated on a primary basis to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) in Region 1 and to the fixed-satellite service (FSS) in Region 3;

b) that both services should have equitable access to the orbit and spectrum;

c) that several modifications to the Regions 1 and 3 BSS Plan, which have assignments in the band 12.2-12.5 GHz, have entered into the Plan by successfully applying Article 4 of Appendix **30** procedure and that some of these assignments have already been brought into use;

d) that some Region 3 FSS systems are currently operating, or are under coordination, applying relevant provisions of the Radio Regulations;

e) that the WRC-97 Regions 1 and 3 Plan included frequency assignments which may not be compatible with Region 3 FSS networks for which notification or coordination data as per Appendix **3**[*] or Appendix **4** information had been received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 27 October 1997;

f) that WRC-97, in its Resolution **73 (WRC-97)**, adopted measures to resolve such incompatibilities between the BSS in Region 1 and the FSS in Region 3 in the frequency band 12.2-12.5 GHz which included instructions to the Bureau to identify both the administrations whose assignments affect Region 1 BSS networks in the 12.2-12.5 GHz band, and also to identify those administrations whose assignments affect Region 3 FSS networks in the 12.2-12.5 GHz band;

g) that this Conference has adopted procedures in Appendix **30** for coordination between the BSS in Region 1 and the FSS in Region 3 in the frequency band 12.2-12.5 GHz,

noting

that, in response to Resolution **73 (WRC-97)**, the Bureau has developed necessary software tools for analysing the incompatibility situations mentioned under *considering f)*,

---

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* Edition of 1990, revised in 1994.

resolves

1 that, upon request, the Bureau shall provide the results of the analysis carried out in response to Resolution **73 (WRC-97)** regarding incompatibilities between the BSS in Region 1 and the FSS in Region 3 in the frequency band 12.2-12.5 GHz to the administrations concerned;

2 that the administrations which have been identified by the Bureau in *resolves* 1 above shall make all possible mutual efforts to solve the interference problems;

3 that provision of this assistance shall in no way have any implications regarding the status of assignments in both the BSS and the FSS as identified by the Bureau.

RESOLUTION 74 (Rev.WRC-03)

Process to keep the technical bases of Appendix 7 current

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that Appendix **7** provides the method for the determination of the coordination area of an earth station, and the assumed technical coordination parameters for unknown terrestrial stations or earth stations;

b) that the technical coordination parameters are contained in Tables 7, 8 and 9 of Annex 7 to Appendix **7**;

c) that the technical coordination parameter tables are based on Recommendation ITU-R SM.1448;

d) that ITU-R studies on methods for the determination of the coordination area of an earth station are continuing, and the conclusions of these studies could lead to revision of Appendix **7**; these methods under study are:

– methods considering the cumulative impact in determining the coordination areas for high-density earth stations (fixed and mobile);

– methods to address the modelling of VHF/UHF frequencies for percentages of time less than 1%;

– methods to address propagation mode (1) water vapour density for both radio climatic Zones B and C;

– refinements to propagation mode (2) to address elevation angle dependency and the displacement of the centre of the propagation mode (2) contour from the coordinating earth station;

e) that the technical coordination parameter tables may also need to be modified when changes are made to the Table of Frequency Allocations at future world radiocommunication conferences (WRCs), or due to changes in technology or in applications;

f) that the technical coordination parameter tables do not include values for all the necessary parameters of certain space radiocommunication services and terrestrial radiocommunication services sharing frequency bands with equal rights,

recognizing

a) that Recommendation ITU-R SM.1448 was developed by ITU-R as a basis for the revision of Appendix **7**;

b) that there is a need for future WRCs to keep Appendix **7** current with the latest techniques and to ensure protection of other radiocommunication services sharing the same frequency bands with equal rights, particularly through revision of the tables of technical coordination parameters,

invites ITU-R

1 to continue its study, as required, of the technical bases used for determination of the coordination area of an earth station, including recommended values for the missing entries in the tables of technical coordination parameters (Annex 7 to Appendix **7**);

2 to maintain the relevant ITU-R texts in a format which would facilitate the future revision of Appendix **7**;

3 to assess the significance of changes to the technical bases,

resolves

1 that when ITU-R concludes, based on its studies of the methods in *considering d)* for determination of the coordination area of an earth station and/or the values of technical coordination parameters, that a revision of Appendix **7** is warranted, the matter shall be brought to the attention of the Radiocommunication Assembly;

2 that, if the Radiocommunication Assembly confirms the improvements of the methods in *considering d)* for determination of the coordination area of an earth station and/or the values of technical coordination parameters which have been presented by ITU-R, the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall identify the matter in the Director's report to the following WRC,

invites

1 WRCs, when presented with any significant changes through the Director's report, to consider the revision of Appendix **7** in light of the recommendation of the Radiocommunication Assembly, pursuant to *resolves* 1 and 2 above;

2 each WRC, when modifying the Table of Frequency Allocations, to consider any consequential changes that may be required to the technical coordination parameters of Annex 7 to Appendix **7** and, if necessary, request ITU-R to study the matter.

RESOLUTION 75 (WRC-2000)

Development of the technical basis for determining the coordination area for coordination of a receiving earth station in the space research service (deep space) with transmitting stations of high-density systems in the fixed service in the 31.8-32.3 GHz and 37-38 GHz bands

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that the band 31.8-32.3 GHz is allocated to the space research service for deep space operations only, the band 37-38 GHz is allocated to the space research service (space-to-Earth), and both bands are allocated to the fixed service for the use of high-density applications and to other services on a primary basis;

b) that the 31.8-32.3 GHz band offers unique advantages in support of deep-space missions;

c) that space research service earth stations operating in these bands employ very high-gain antennas and very low-noise amplifiers in order to receive weak signals from deep space;

d) that fixed-service stations in these bands are expected to be deployed in large numbers over urban areas of large geographical extent;

e) that studies are being initiated to characterize short-term (of the order of 0.001% of the time, commensurate with the protection criteria given in Recommendations ITU-R SA.1396 and ITU-R SA.1157) anomalous propagation from transmitting stations dispersed over a large geographical area to a single receiving earth station (area-to-point propagation);

f) that preliminary ITU-R studies have indicated that the coordination distance between a space research service (deep space) earth station and a single urban area may be of the order of 250 km;

g) that there are currently three space research service (deep space) earth stations in operation or planned for operation near Goldstone (United States of America), Madrid (Spain) and Canberra (Australia), and there are up to ten more earth stations planned in the future,

noting

that Resolution **74 (WRC-2000)*** provides a mechanism to update Appendix **7** as required,

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-03.

resolves to invite ITU-R

to develop, as a matter of urgency, the technical basis for determining the coordination area for coordination of a receiving earth station in the space research service (deep space) with transmitting stations of high-density systems in the fixed service in the 31.8-32.3 GHz and 37-38 GHz bands,

urges administrations

to participate actively in the aforementioned studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 76 (WRC-2000)

Protection of geostationary fixed-satellite service and geostationary broadcasting-satellite service networks from the maximum aggregate equivalent power flux-density produced by multiple non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems in frequency bands where equivalent power flux-density limits have been adopted

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that WRC-97 adopted, in Article **22**, provisional equivalent power flux-density (epfd) limits to be met by non-geostationary fixed-satellite service (non-GSO FSS) systems in order to protect GSO FSS and GSO broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) networks in parts of the frequency range 10.7-30 GHz;

b) that this Conference has revised Article **22** to ensure the limits contained therein provide adequate protection to GSO systems without placing undue constraints on any of the systems and services sharing these frequency bands;

c) that this Conference has decided that a combination of single-entry validation, single-entry operational and, for certain antenna sizes, single-entry additional operational epfd limits, contained in Article **22**, along with the aggregate limits in Tables 1A to 1D as contained in Annex 1 to this Resolution, which apply to non-GSO FSS systems, protects GSO networks in these bands;

d) that these single-entry validation limits have been derived from aggregate epfd masks contained in Tables 1A to 1D, assuming a maximum effective number of non-GSO FSS systems of 3.5;

e) that the aggregate interference caused by all co-frequency non-GSO FSS systems in these bands into GSO FSS systems should not exceed the aggregate epfd levels in Tables 1A to 1D;

f) that WRC-97 decided, and this Conference has confirmed, that non-GSO FSS systems in the bands in question are to mutually coordinate the use of frequencies in these bands under the provisions of No. **9.12**;

g) that the orbital characteristics of such systems are likely to be inhomogeneous;

h) that, as a result of this likely inhomogeneity, the aggregate epfd levels from multiple non-GSO FSS systems will not be directly related to the actual number of systems sharing a frequency band, and the number of such systems operating co-frequency is likely to be small;

i) that the possible misapplication of single-entry limits should be avoided,

recognizing

a) that non-GSO FSS systems are likely to need to implement interference mitigation techniques to mutually share frequencies;

b) that, on account of the use of such interference mitigation techniques, it is likely that the number of non-GSO systems will remain small, as will the aggregate interference caused by non-GSO FSS systems into GSO systems;

c) that, notwithstanding *considering d)* and *e)* and *recognizing b)*, there may be instances where the aggregate interference from non-GSO systems could exceed the interference levels given in Tables 1A to 1D;

d) that administrations operating GSO systems may wish to ensure that the aggregate epfd produced by all operating co-frequency non-GSO FSS systems in the frequency bands referred to in *considering a)* above into GSO FSS and/or GSO BSS networks does not exceed the aggregate interference levels given in Tables 1A to 1D,

resolves

1 that administrations operating or planning to operate non-GSO FSS systems, for which coordination or notification information, as appropriate, was received after 21 November 1997, in the frequency bands referred to in *considering a)* above, individually or in collaboration, shall take all possible steps, including, if necessary, by means of appropriate modifications to their systems, to ensure that the aggregate interference into GSO FSS and GSO BSS networks caused by such systems operating co-frequency in these frequency bands does not cause the aggregate power levels given in Tables 1A to 1D to be exceeded (see No. **22.5K**);

2 that, in the event that the aggregate interference levels in Tables 1A to 1D are exceeded, administrations operating non-GSO FSS systems in these frequency bands shall take all necessary measures expeditiously to reduce the aggregate epfd levels to those given in Tables 1A to 1D, or to higher levels where those levels are acceptable to the affected GSO administration (see No. **22.5K**),

invites ITU-R

1 to develop, as a matter of urgency and in time for the next WRC, a suitable methodology for calculating the aggregate epfd produced by all non-GSO FSS systems operating or planning to operate co-frequency in the frequency bands referred to in *considering a)* above into GSO FSS and GSO BSS networks, which may be used to determine whether the systems are in compliance with the aggregate power levels given in Tables 1A to 1D;

2 to continue its studies and to develop, as a matter of urgency, a Recommendation on the accurate modelling of interference from non-GSO FSS systems into GSO FSS and GSO BSS networks in the frequency bands referred to in *considering a)* above, in order to assist administrations planning or operating non-GSO FSS systems in their efforts to limit the aggregate epfd levels produced by their systems into GSO networks, and to provide guidance to GSO network designers on the maximum epfd↓ levels expected to be produced by all non-GSO FSS systems when accurate modelling assumptions are used;

3 to develop, as a matter of urgency, a Recommendation containing procedures to be used among administrations in order to ensure that the aggregate epfd limits given in Tables 1A to 1D are not exceeded by operators of non-GSO FSS systems;

4 to attempt to develop measurement techniques to identify the interference levels from non-GSO systems in excess of the aggregate limits given in Tables 1A to 1D, and to confirm compliance with these limits,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to assist in the development of the methodology referred to in *invites ITU-R* 1 above;

2 to report to WRC-03 on the results of studies in *invites ITU-R* 1 and 3 above.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 76 (WRC-2000)

TABLE 1A[1, 2, 3]

Limits on aggregate epfd↓ radiated by non-GSO FSS systems in certain frequency bands

Frequency band (GHz)	epfd↓ (dB(W/m²))	Percentage of time during which epfd↓ may not be exceeded	Reference bandwidth (kHz)	Reference antenna diameter, and reference radiation pattern[4]
10.7-11.7 in all Regions 11.7-12.2 in Region 2 12.2-12.5 in Region 3 12.5-12.75 in Regions 1 and 3	–170 –168.6 –165.3 –160.4 –160 –160	0 90 99 99.97 99.99 100	40	60 cm Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–176.5 –173 –164 –161.6 –161.4 –160.8 –160.5 –160 –160	0 99.5 99.84 99.945 99.97 99.99 99.99 99.9975 100	40	1.2 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–185 –184 –182 –168 –164 –162 –160 –160	0 90 99.5 99.9 99.96 99.982 99.997 100	40	3 m [5] Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–190 –190 –166 –160 –160	0 99 99.99 99.998 100	40	10 m [5] Recommendation ITU-R S.1428

1 For certain GSO FSS receive earth stations, see also Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B**.

2 In addition to the limits shown in Table 1A, the following aggregate epfd↓ limits apply to all antenna sizes greater than 60 cm in the frequency bands listed in Table 1A:

100% of the time epfd↓ (dB(W/(m² · 40 kHz)))	Latitude (North or South) (degrees)
–160	0 ≤ | Latitude| ≤ 57.5
–160 + 3.4(57.5 – |Latitude|)/4	57.5 < | Latitude| ≤ 63.75
–165.3	63.75 < | Latitude|

3 For each reference antenna diameter, the limit consists of the complete curve on a plot which is linear in decibels for the epfd↓ levels and logarithmic for the time percentages, with straight lines joining the data points.

4 For this Table, reference patterns in Recommendation ITU-R S.1428 shall be used only for the calculation of interference from non-GSO FSS systems into GSO FSS systems.

5 The values for the 3 m and 10 m antennas are applicable only for the methodology referred to *invites ITU-R* 1.

TABLE 1B[1, 2, 3]

Limits on aggregate epfd↓ radiated by non-GSO FSS systems in certain frequency bands

Frequency band (GHz)	epfd↓ (dB(W/m^2))	Percentage of time during which epfd↓ may not be exceeded	Reference bandwidth (kHz)	Reference antenna diameter, and reference radiation pattern[4]
17.8-18.6	–170 –170 –164 –164	0 90 99.9 100	40	1 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–156 –156 –150 –150	0 90 99.9 100	1 000	
	–173 –173 –166 –164 –164	0 99.4 99.9 99.92 100	40	2 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–159 –159 –152 –150 –150	0 99.4 99.9 99.92 100	1 000	
	–180 –180 –172 –164 –164	0 99.8 99.8 99.992 100	40	5 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–166 –166 –158 –150 –150	0 99.8 99.8 99.992 100	1 000	

1 For certain GSO FSS receive earth stations, see also Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B**.

2 For each reference antenna diameter, the limit consists of the complete curve on a plot which is linear in decibels for the epfd↓ levels and logarithmic for the time percentages, with straight lines joining the data points.

3 A non-GSO system shall meet the limits of this Table in both the 40 kHz and the 1 MHz reference bandwidths.

4 For this Table, reference patterns in Recommendation ITU-R S.1428 shall be used only for the calculation of interference from non-GSO FSS systems into GSO FSS systems.

TABLE 1C[1, 2, 3]

Limits on aggregate epfd↓ radiated by non-GSO FSS systems in certain frequency bands

Frequency band (GHz)	epfd↓ (dB(W/m^2))	Percentage of time during which epfd↓ may not be exceeded	Reference bandwidth (kHz)	Reference antenna diameter, and reference radiation pattern[4]
19.7-20.2	–182 –172 –154 –154	0 90 99.94 100	40	70 cm Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–168 –158 –140 –140	0 90 99.94 100	1 000	
	–185 –176 –165 –160 –154 –154	0 91 99.8 99.8 99.99 100	40	90 cm Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–171 –162 –151 –146 –140 –140	0 91 99.8 99.8 99.99 100	1 000	
	–191 –162 –154 –154	0 99.933 99.998 100	40	2.5 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–177 –148 –140 –140	0 99.933 99.998 100	1 000	
	–195 –184 –175 –161 –154 –154	0 90 99.6 99.984 99.9992 100	40	5 m Recommendation ITU-R S.1428
	–181 –170 –161 –147 –140 –140	0 90 99.6 99.984 99.9992 100	1 000	

1 For certain GSO FSS receive earth stations, see also Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B**.

2 For each reference antenna diameter, the limit consists of the complete curve on a plot which is linear in decibels for the epfd↓ levels and logarithmic for the time percentages, with straight lines joining the data points.

3 A non-GSO system shall meet the limits of this Table in both the 40 kHz and the 1 MHz reference bandwidths.

4 For this Table, reference patterns in Recommendation ITU-R S.1428 shall be used only for the calculation of interference from non-GSO FSS systems into GSO FSS systems.

TABLE 1D[1, 2]

Limits on aggregate epfd↓ radiated by non-GSO FSS systems in certain frequency bands into 30 cm, 45 cm, 60 cm, 90 cm, 120 cm, 180 cm, 240 cm and 300 cm BSS antennas

Frequency band (GHz)	epfd↓ (dB(W/m^2))	Percentage of time during which epfd↓ may not be exceeded	Reference bandwidth (kHz)	Reference antenna diameter, and reference radiation pattern[3]
11.7-12.5 in Region 1 11.7-12.2 and 12.5-12.75 in Region 3 12.2-12.7 in Region 2	–160.4 –160.1 –158.6 –158.6 –158.33 –158.33	0 25 96 98 98 100	40	30 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–170 –167 –164 –160.75 –160 –160	0 66 97.75 99.33 99.95 100	40	45 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–171 –168.75 –167.75 –162 –161 –160.2 –160 –160	0 90 97.8 99.6 99.8 99.9 99.99 100	40	60 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–173.75 –173 –171 –165.5 –163 –161 –160 –160	0 33 98 99.1 99.5 99.8 99.97 100	40	90 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–177 –175.25 –173.75 –173 –169.5 –167.8 –164 –161.9 –161 –160.4 –160	0 90 98.9 98.9 99.5 99.7 99.82 99.9 99.965 99.993 100	40	120 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1

TABLE 1D[1, 2] (*end*)

Frequency band (GHz)	epfd↓ (dB(W/m^2))	Percentage of time during which epfd↓ may not be exceeded	Reference bandwidth (kHz)	Reference antenna diameter, and reference radiation pattern[3]
11.7-12.5 in Region 1 11.7-12.2 and 12.5-12.75 in Region 3 12.2-12.7 in Region 2	–179.5 –178.66 –176.25 –163.25 –161.5 –160.35 –160 –160	0 33 98.5 99.81 99.91 99.975 99.995 100	40	180 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–182 –180.9 –178 –164.4 –161.9 –160.5 –160 –160	0 33 99.25 99.85 99.94 99.98 99.995 100	40	240 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1
	–186.5 –184 –180.5 –173 –167 –162 –160 –160	0 33 99.5 99.7 99.83 99.94 99.97 100	40	300 cm Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443, Annex 1

[1] For BSS antenna diameters of 180 cm, 240 cm and 300 cm, in addition to the aggregate limits shown in Table 1D, the following aggregate 100% of the time epfd↓ limits also apply:

100% of the time epfd↓ (dB(W/(m^2 · 40 kHz)))	Latitude (North or South) (degrees)
–160	0 ≤ | Latitude| ≤ 57.5
–160 + 3.4(57.5 – |Latitude|)/4	57.5 < | Latitude| ≤ 63.75
–165.3	63.75 < | Latitude|

[2] For each reference antenna diameter, the limit consists of the complete curve on a plot which is linear in decibels for the epfd↓ levels and logarithmic for the time percentages, with straight lines joining the data points. For BSS antenna of diameter 240 cm, in addition to the above aggregate 100% of the time epfd↓ limit, a –167 dB(W/(m^2 · 40 kHz)) aggregate 100% of the time operational epfd↓ limit also applies to receive antennas located in Region 2, west of 140° W, north of 60° N, pointing toward GSO BSS satellites at 91° W, 101° W, 110° W, 119° W and 148° W with elevation angles greater than 5°. This limit is implemented during a transition period of 15 years.

[3] For this Table, reference patterns in the Annex 1 to Recommendation ITU-R BO.1443 shall be used only for the calculation of interference from non-GSO FSS systems into GSO BSS systems.

RESOLUTION 80 (Rev.WRC-07)

Due diligence in applying the principles embodied in the Constitution

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that Articles 12 and 44 of the Constitution lay down the basic principles for the use of the radio-frequency spectrum and the geostationary-satellite and other satellite orbits;

b) that those principles have been included in the Radio Regulations;

c) that Article I of the Agreement between the United Nations and the International Telecommunication Union provides that "the United Nations recognizes the International Telecommunication Union (hereinafter called "the Union") as the specialized agency responsible for taking such action as may be appropriate under its basic instrument for the accomplishment of the purposes set forth therein";

d) that, in accordance with Nos. **11.30**, **11.31** and **11.31.2**, notices shall be examined with respect to the provisions of the Radio Regulations, including the provision relating to the basic principles, appropriate rules of procedure being developed for the purpose;

e) that WRC-97 instructed the Radio Regulations Board (RRB) to develop, within the framework of Nos. **11.30**, **11.31** and **11.31.2**, rules of procedure to be followed in order to be in compliance with the principles in No. **0.3** of the Preamble to the Radio Regulations;

f) that the Board, in accordance with Resolution **80 (WRC-97)**, submitted a report to WRC-2000 suggesting possible solutions and stating that, after examining the Radio Regulations, it had concluded that there are no provisions currently in the Radio Regulations that link the formal notification or coordination procedures with the principles stated in No. **0.3** of the Preamble to the Radio Regulations;

g) that the Legal Subcommittee of the Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space of the United Nations General Assembly has drawn up recommendations in this respect,

noting

a) that, in accordance with the provisions of No. 127 of the Convention, the Conference may give instructions to the Sectors of the Union;

b) that, according to No. 160C of the Convention, the Radiocommunication Advisory Group (RAG) shall review any matter as directed by a conference;

c) the RRB report to WRC-2000 (see Annex 1);

d) the RRB report to WRC-03 (see Annex 2);

e) that some of the issues identified in the report referred to in *noting c)* have been resolved before WRC-07,

resolves

1 to instruct the Radiocommunication Sector, in accordance with No. 1 of Article 12 of the Constitution, to carry out studies on procedures for measurement and analysis of the application of the basic principles contained in Article 44 of the Constitution;

2 to instruct the RRB to consider and review possible draft recommendations and draft provisions linking the formal notification, coordination and registration procedures with the principles contained in Article 44 of the Constitution and No. **0.3** of the Preamble to the Radio Regulations, and to report to each future World Radiocommunication Conference with regard to this Resolution;

3 to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau to submit to each future World Radiocommunication Conference a detailed progress report on the action taken on this Resolution,

invites

1 the other organs of the Radiocommunication Sector, in particular the RAG, to make relevant contributions to the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau for inclusion in his report to each future World Radiocommunication Conference;

2 administrations to contribute to the studies referred to in *resolves* 1 and to the work of the RRB as detailed in *resolves* 2.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 80 (Rev.WRC-07)

RRB Report to WRC-2000

In the RRB Report to WRC-2000[1], several members of the Board noted some difficulties likely to be experienced by administrations, particularly administrations of developing countries, as follows:

– the "first-come first-served" concept restricts and sometimes prevents access to and use of certain frequency bands and orbit positions;

– a relative disadvantage for developing countries in coordination negotiations due to various reasons such as a lack of resources and expertise;

[1] This Report can be found in Document 29 to WRC-2000.

– perceived differences in consistency of application of the Radio Regulations;

– the submitting of "paper" satellites that restricts access options;

– the growing use of the bands of the Plans of Appendices **30** and **30A** by regional, multichannel systems, which may modify the main purpose of these Plans to provide equitable access to all countries;

– the considerable processing delays in the Radiocommunication Bureau are due to the very complex procedures required and the large number of filings submitted; these delays contribute to a coordination backlog of 18 months which could extend to three years and creates uncertain regulatory situations, additional delay in the coordination process that cannot be overcome by administrations, and the possible loss of the assignment because the allotted time is exceeded;

– satellite systems may already be in orbit before completion of coordination;

– statutory time-frames, such as those in No. **11.48**, may often be insufficient for developing countries to be able to complete the regulatory requirements as well as the design, construction and launch of satellite systems;

– no provisions for international monitoring to confirm the bringing into use of satellite networks (assignments and orbits).

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 80 (Rev.WRC-07)

RRB Report to WRC-03

In the RRB Report to WRC-03[2], concepts to satisfy *resolves* 2 of Resolution **80 (WRC-2000)** were provided, as follows:

– special measures for countries submitting their first satellite filing:

  – on an exceptional basis, special consideration could be given to countries submitting their first filing for a satellite system, taking into account the special needs of developing countries;

  – such consideration should take into account the following:

    – impact on other administrations;

    – satellite service of the system (i.e. FSS, MSS, BSS);

    – frequency band covered by the filing;

    – system is intended to meet the direct needs of the country(s) concerned;

2 This Report can be found in Addendum 5 to Document 4 to WRC-03.

– extension of the regulatory time-limit for bringing into use:

  – conditions could be specified under which extensions might be granted on an exceptional basis to developing countries when they are not able to complete the regulatory date requirements, so that sufficient time for design, construction and launch of satellite systems is made available;

  – the conditions created under the previous paragraph should be included in the Radio Regulations as provisions that would allow the Radiocommunication Bureau to grant the extension.

RESOLUTION 81 (WRC-2000)

Evaluation of the administrative due diligence procedure for satellite networks

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that WRC-97 adopted Resolution **49 (WRC-97)**[*] establishing administrative due diligence procedure applicable to some satellite radiocommunication services with effect from 22 November 1997;

b) that the Plenipotentiary Conference adopted Resolution 85 (Minneapolis, 1998) on evaluation of the administrative due diligence procedure for satellite networks;

c) that Resolution 85 (Minneapolis, 1998) instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau to inform WRC-2000 about the effectiveness of the administrative due diligence procedure, in accordance with Resolution **49 (WRC-97)**[*];

d) that Resolution 85 (Minneapolis, 1998) resolves that WRC-2000 shall evaluate the results of the implementation of the administrative due diligence procedure and shall inform the next Plenipotentiary Conference, in 2002, of its conclusions in that regard;

e) the report of the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau on the administrative due diligence procedure applicable to some satellite networks;

f) the proposals made to this Conference to strengthen the administrative due diligence procedure, and to adopt financial due diligence procedures,

noting

a) that the Bureau has not encountered any administrative difficulty in applying the provisions and in gathering and publishing information;

b) that the Bureau has taken action pursuant to *resolves* 6 of Resolution **49 (WRC-97)**[*] to cancel the submissions, and accordingly publish the related special sections, in respect of 36 satellite networks;

c) that, for all of these cancellations, the maximum (nine-year) period for bringing into use pursuant to *resolves* 1 and 2 of Resolution **51 (WRC-97)** and No. **11.44** had been reached and hence the submissions would have been cancelled in any event;

---

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

d) that, when requested to provide due diligence information (triggered by the original date of bringing into use of their satellite networks), administrations have generally requested, wherever possible, extensions of the regulatory period for bringing into use up to the maximum limit authorized by the Radio Regulations;

e) that the effect of the administrative due diligence procedure may not, therefore, be fully apparent until at least 21 November 2003,

recognizing

that the administrative due diligence procedure has not yet had any impact on the problem of reservation of orbit and spectrum capacity without actual use,

resolves

1 that further experience is needed in the application of the administrative due diligence procedures adopted by WRC-97, and that several years may be needed to see whether the procedure produces satisfactory results;

2 that it is premature to consider the adoption, among other procedures, of any financial due diligence procedures,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to report to the 2002 Plenipotentiary Conference on the results of the implementation of the administrative due diligence procedure,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the 2002 Plenipotentiary Conference.

RESOLUTION 85 (WRC-03)

Application of Article 22 of the Radio Regulations to the protection of geostationary fixed-satellite service and broadcasting-satellite service networks from non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that WRC-2000 adopted, in Article **22**, single-entry limits applicable to non-geostationary (non-GSO) fixed-satellite service (FSS) systems in certain parts of the frequency range 10.7-30 GHz to protect geostationary-satellite (GSO) networks operating in the same frequency bands;

b) that, taking into account Nos. **22.5H** and **22.5I**, wherever the limits referred to in *considering a)* are exceeded by a non-GSO FSS system to which the limits apply without the agreement of the concerned administrations, this constitutes a violation of the obligations under No. **22.2**;

c) that ITU-R has developed Recommendation ITU-R S.1503 to provide a functional description to be used in developing software tools for determining the conformity of non-GSO FSS networks with limits contained in Article **22**;

d) that there is currently no software tool available to the Radiocommunication Bureau for epfd examinations;

e) that the Bureau has issued Circular Letters CR/176 and CR/182, which request additional information from non-GSO systems in order to examine them for compliance with the Article **22** epfd limits;

f) that, since no epfd validation software is available, the Bureau has requested commitments from the notifying administrations that they will meet the epfd limits in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3**, and that under these commitments the Bureau gives qualified favourable findings to their systems;

g) that the Bureau is not in a position to perform its duties in relation to Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B** due to the lack of epfd validation software;

h) that during the examination under Nos. **9.35** and **11.31**, the Bureau examines non-GSO FSS systems to ensure their compliance with the single-entry epfd limits given in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3**,

resolves

1 that since the Bureau is unable to examine non-GSO FSS systems subject to Nos. **22.5C**, **22.5D** and **22.5F** under Nos. **9.35** and/or **11.31**, the notifying administration shall send to the Bureau a commitment that the non-GSO FSS system complies with the limits given in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3** in addition to the information submitted under Nos. **9.30** and **11.15**;

2 that the Bureau shall issue either a qualified favourable finding under No. **9.35** or a favourable finding with a date of review under No. **11.31** with respect to the limits contained in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3**, if *resolves* 1 is satisfied, otherwise the non-GSO FSS system will receive a definitive unfavourable finding;

3 that if an administration believes that a non-GSO FSS system, for which the commitment referred to in *resolves* 1 was sent, has the potential to exceed the limits given in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3**, it may request from the notifying administration additional information with regard to the compliance with the limits mentioned above. Both administrations shall cooperate to resolve any difficulties, with the assistance of the Bureau, if so requested by either of the parties, and may exchange any additional relevant information that may be available;

4 that the Bureau shall determine coordination requirements between GSO FSS earth stations and non-GSO FSS systems under Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B** based on bandwidth overlap, and GSO FSS earth station antenna maximum isotropic gain, G/T and emission bandwidth;

5 that this Resolution shall no longer be applied after the Bureau has communicated to all administrations via a Circular Letter that the epfd validation software is available and the Bureau is able to verify compliance with the limits in Tables **22-1A**, **22-1B**, **22-1C**, **22-1D**, **22-1E**, **22-2** and **22-3** and to determine the coordination requirements under Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B**,

further resolves

that those provisions of the Radio Regulations that have been amended by this Conference and that are referred to in *resolves* 5 shall provisionally apply as from 5 July 2003,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to encourage administrations to develop the epfd validation software;

2 to review, once the epfd validation software is available, its findings made in accordance with Nos. **9.35** and **11.31**;

3 to review, once the epfd validation software is available, the coordination requirements under Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B**.

RESOLUTION 86 (Rev.WRC-07)

Implementation of Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the Plenipotentiary Conference (Marrakesh, 2002) discussed the application of Resolution 86 (Minneapolis, 1998) and decided to request WRC-03 to determine the scope and criteria to be used by future world radiocommunication conferences (WRCs) in the application of Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002);

b) that the Plenipotentiary Conference (Antalya, 2006) invited WRC-07 to consider Resolution 86 (Marrakesh, 2002) and to report the results to the 2010 Plenipotentiary Conference,

recognizing

that the Radio Regulations Board makes suggestions to transform the content of the Rules of Procedure into a regulatory text in accordance with Nos. **13.0.1** and **13.0.2** of Article **13** of the Radio Regulations,

noting

that administrations may also wish to make proposals to transform the content of the Rules of Procedure into a regulatory text for possible inclusion in the Radio Regulations,

resolves to invite future world radiocommunication conferences

1 to consider any proposals which deal with deficiencies and improvements in the advance publication, coordination, notification and recording procedures of the Radio Regulations for frequency assignments pertaining to space services which have either been identified by the Board and included in the Rules of Procedure or which have been identified by administrations or by the Radiocommunication Bureau, as appropriate;

2 to ensure that these procedures, and the related appendices of the Radio Regulations reflect the latest technologies, as far as possible,

invites administrations

to consider, in preparing for PP-10, appropriate action with regard to Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002).

RESOLUTION 95 (Rev.WRC-07)

General review of the Resolutions and Recommendations of world administrative radio conferences and world radiocommunication conferences

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that it is important to keep the Resolutions and Recommendations of past world administrative radio conferences and world radiocommunication conferences under constant review, in order to keep them up to date;

b) that the reports of the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau submitted to previous conferences provided a useful basis for a general review of the Resolutions and Recommendations of past conferences;

c) that some principles and guidelines are necessary for future conferences to treat the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences which are not related to the agenda of the Conference,

resolves to invite future competent world radiocommunication conferences

1 to review the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences that are related to the agenda of the Conference with a view to their possible revision, replacement or abrogation and to take appropriate action;

2 to review the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences that are not related to any agenda item of the Conference with a view to:

– abrogating those Resolutions and Recommendations that have served their purpose or have become no longer necessary;

– reviewing the need for those Resolutions and Recommendations, or parts thereof, requesting ITU-R studies on which no progress has been made during the last two periods between conferences;

– updating and modifying Resolutions and Recommendations, or parts thereof that have become out of date, and to correct obvious omissions, inconsistencies, ambiguities or editorial errors and effect any necessary alignment;

3 at the beginning of the conference, to determine which committee within the conference has the primary responsibility to review each of the Resolutions and Recommendations referred to in *resolves* 1 and 2 above,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to conduct a general review of the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences and, after consultation with the Radiocommunication Advisory Group and the Chairmen and Vice-Chairmen of the Radiocommunication Study Groups, submit a report to the second session of the Conference Preparatory Meeting (CPM) in respect of *resolves* 1 and *resolves* 2, including an indication of any associated agenda items;

2 to include in the above report, with the cooperation of the chairmen of the Radiocommunication Study Groups, the progress reports of ITU-R studies on the issues which have been requested by the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences, but which are not placed on the agendas of the forthcoming two conferences,

invites administrations

to submit contributions on the implementation of this Resolution to CPM,

invites the Conference Preparatory Meeting

to include, in its Report, the results of the general review of the Resolutions and Recommendations of previous conferences, based on the contributions by administrations to CPM, in order to facilitate the follow-up by future WRCs.

RESOLUTION 97 (WRC-07)

Provisional application of certain provisions of the Radio Regulations as revised by WRC-07 and abrogation of certain Resolutions and Recommendations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that this conference has adopted a partial revision to the Radio Regulations (RR) in accordance with its terms of reference which will enter into force on 1 January 2009;

b) that some of the provisions, as amended by this conference, need to apply provisionally as of an earlier date;

c) that as a general rule, new and revised Resolutions and Recommendations enter into force at the time of signing of the Final Acts of a conference;

d) that as a general rule, Resolutions and Recommendations which a WRC has decided to suppress are abrogated at the time of the signing of the Final Acts of the conference,

resolves

1 that, as of 17 November 2007, the following provisions of the RR, as revised or established by this conference, shall provisionally apply: No. **5.327A** and the associated allocation in the Table of Article **5** to the aeronautical mobile (R) service in the band 960-1 164 MHz, Nos. **5.328B** and **5.329A** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the radionavigation-satellite service, No. **5.338A** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the fixed and to the fixed-satellite services, No. **5.379B** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the mobile-satellite service, No. **5.403** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the mobile-satellite, except aeronautical mobile-satellite service, No. **5.414** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the mobile-satellite service, No. **5.414A** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5**, No. **5.415** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the fixed-satellite service, No. **5.416** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the broadcasting-satellite service, No. **5.418** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the broadcasting-satellite and the broadcasting services, No. **5.419** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the mobile-satellite service, No. **5.420** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the mobile-satellite service except aeronautical mobile-satellite service, No. **5.482A** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the Earth exploration-satellite (passive), fixed and mobile services, No. **5.517** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the broadcasting-satellite and to the fixed-satellite services, No. **5.538** and the associated allocations

in the Table of Article **5** to the fixed-satellite service, No. **5.550A** and the associated allocations in the Table of Article **5** to the Earth exploration-satellite (passive), fixed and mobile services, Nos. **9.2B.1**, **9.14**, **9.38.1**, **9.41**, Nos. **A.11.6**, **11.15**, **11.43A**, **11.46**, **11.47**, Nos. **21.16.3A**, **21.16.6B**, **21.16.6C**, Table **21-2**, Table **21-4**, No. **22.2**, Annex 2 to Appendix **4**, Tables 5-1 and 5-2 of Appendix **5**, Table 10 of Appendix **7**, Appendix **30**, Appendix **30A**, Appendix **30B** and Appendix **42**;

2 that, as of 17 November 2007, the following provisions, which are suppressed by this Conference, shall be abrogated: No. **5.420A** and No. **5.518**;

3 that, as of 1 February 2009, No. **5.199**, which is suppressed by this conference, shall be abrogated;

further resolves

1 to abrogate the following Resolutions as of 17 November 2007:

Resolution **21 (Rev.WRC-03)**,
Resolution **56 (Rev.WRC-03)**,
Resolution **57 (WRC-2000)**,
Resolution **79 (WRC-2000)**,
Resolution **87 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **88 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **89 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **96 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **105 (Orb-88)**,
Resolution **132 (WRC-97)**,
Resolution **139 (WRC-2000)**,
Resolution **141 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **146 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **228 (Rev.WRC-03)**,
Resolution **230 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **340 (WRC-97)**,
Resolution **353 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **414 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **415 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **527 (WARC-92)**,
Resolution **544 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **545 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **670 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **728 (Rev.WRC-2000)**,
Resolution **738 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **740 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **742 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **745 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **746 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **747 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **802 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **803 (WRC-03)**,
Resolution **952 (WRC-03)**

2 to abrogate the following Recommendations as of 17 November 2007:

Recommendation **14 (Mob-87)**,
Recommendation **318 (Mob-87)**,
Recommendation **517 (Rev.WRC-03)**,
Recommendation **604 (Rev.Mob-87)**,
Recommendation **605 (Rev.Mob-87)**,
Recommendation **606 (Mob-87)**,
Recommendation **705**,
Recommendation **722 (WRC-03)**,
Recommendation **723 (WRC-03)**,
Recommendation **800 (WRC-03)**;

3 to abrogate Resolution **51 (Rev.WRC-2000)** as of 1 January 2010.

RESOLUTION 111 (Orb-88)

Planning of the fixed-satellite service in the bands 18.1-18.3 GHz, 18.3-20.2 GHz and 27-30 GHz[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference on the Use of the Geostationary-Satellite Orbit and the Planning of Space Services Utilizing It (Second Session – Geneva, 1988),

considering

a) that WARC Orb-85 in its Report to WARC Orb-88, requested the ITU-R to study the technical characteristics of the fixed-satellite service in the bands 18.1-18.3 GHz, 18.3-20.2 GHz and 27-30 GHz with a view to a decision on the future planning of these bands for the fixed-satellite service being taken by a future competent conference;

b) that the ITU-R concluded that it would be extremely unwise for these bands to be subject to planning at this time and that further study would be necessary,

recognizing

1 that these bands have not been exploited extensively due to technical and economic reasons, although they potentially have great capacity;

2 that the required satellite orbital spacing may be reduced, thus resulting in easier coordination between satellite networks because narrower satellite antenna beamwidths can be achieved than in the lower frequency bands;

3 that different performance criteria may well be necessary from those which currently exist for frequency bands below 15 GHz, since the propagation characteristics are different,

resolves

that the bands 18.1-18.3 GHz, 18.3-20.2 GHz and 27-30 GHz shall not be included in frequency bands identified for planning at this time,

invites the ITU-R

to continue its studies into the technical characteristics of the bands 18.1-18.3 GHz, 18.3-20.2 GHz and 27-30 GHz until a decision is taken by a future competent conference.

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 114 (Rev.WRC-03)

Studies on compatibility between new systems of the aeronautical radionavigation service and the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) (limited to feeder links of the non-geostationary mobile-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service) in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) the current allocation of the frequency band 5 000-5 250 MHz to the aeronautical radionavigation service;

b) the requirements of both the aeronautical radionavigation and the fixed-satellite (FSS) (Earth-to-space) (limited to feeder links of non-geostationary satellite (non-GSO) systems in the mobile-satellite service (MSS)) services in the above-mentioned band,

recognizing

a) that precedence must be given to the microwave landing system (MLS) in accordance with No. **5.444** and to other international standard systems of the aeronautical radionavigation service in the frequency band 5 030-5 150 MHz;

b) that, in accordance with Annex 10 of the Convention of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) on international civil aviation, it may be necessary to use the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz for the MLS if its requirements cannot be satisfied in the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz;

c) that the FSS providing feeder links for non-GSO systems in the MSS will need access to the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz in the short term,

noting

a) that Recommendation ITU-R S.1342 describes a method for determining coordination distances between international standard MLS stations operating in the band 5 030-5 091 MHz and FSS earth stations providing Earth-to-space feeder links in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz;

b) the small number of FSS stations to be considered;

c) the development of new systems that will provide supplemental navigation information integral to the aeronautical radionavigation service,

resolves

1 that administrations authorizing stations providing feeder links for non-GSO systems in the MSS in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz shall ensure that they do not cause harmful interference to stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service;

2 that the allocation to the aeronautical radionavigation service and the FSS in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz should be reviewed at a future competent conference prior to 2018;

3 that studies be undertaken on compatibility between new systems of the aeronautical radionavigation service and systems of the FSS providing feeder links of the non-GSO systems in the MSS (Earth-to-space),

invites administrations

when assigning frequencies in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz before 1 January 2018 to stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service or to stations of the FSS providing feeder links of the non-GSO systems in the MSS (Earth-to-space), to take all practicable steps to avoid mutual interference between them,

invites ITU-R

to study the technical and operational issues relating to sharing of this band between new systems of the aeronautical radionavigation service and the FSS providing feeder links of the non-GSO systems in the MSS (Earth-to-space),

invites

1 ICAO to supply technical and operational criteria suitable for sharing studies for new aeronautical systems;

2 all Members of the Radiocommunication Sector, and especially ICAO, to participate actively in such studies,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 122 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz by high altitude platform stations in the fixed service and by other services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band 47.2-50.2 GHz is allocated to the fixed, mobile and fixed-satellite services on a co-primary basis;

b) that WRC-97 made provision for operation of high altitude platform stations (HAPS), also known as stratospheric repeaters, within the fixed service in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

c) that establishing a stable technical and regulatory environment will promote the use of all co-primary services in the band 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

d) that systems using HAPS are in an advanced stage of development and some countries have notified such systems to ITU in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

e) that Recommendation ITU-R F.1500 contains the characteristics of systems in the fixed service using HAPS in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

f) that while the decision to deploy HAPS can be taken on a national basis, such deployment may affect neighbouring administrations and operators of co-primary services;

g) that ITU-R has completed studies dealing with sharing between systems using HAPS in the fixed service and other types of systems in the fixed service in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

h) that ITU-R has completed studies on compatibility between HAPS systems in the 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz bands and the radio astronomy service in the 48.94-49.04 GHz band;

i) that No. **5.552** urges administrations to take all practicable steps to reserve fixed-satellite service (FSS) use of the band 47.2-49.2 GHz for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) operating in the band 40.5-42.5 GHz, and that ITU-R studies indicate that HAPS in the fixed service may share with such feeder links;

j) that the technical characteristics of expected BSS feeder links and FSS gateway-type stations are similar;

k) that ITU-R has completed studies dealing with sharing between systems using HAPS in the fixed service and the fixed-satellite service,

recognizing

a) that, in the long term, the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz are expected to be required for HAPS operations for both gateway and ubiquitous terminal applications, for which several administrations have already notified systems to the Radiocommunication Bureau;

b) that identification of common sub-bands for ubiquitous ground terminal applications in the use of the fixed service could facilitate HAPS deployment and sharing with other primary services in the 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz bands;

c) that Recommendation ITU-R SF.1481-1 and Recommendation ITU-R SF.1843 provide information on the feasibility of HAPS systems in the fixed service sharing with the FSS;

d) that ITU-R studies on HAPS operation in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz allocated to the fixed service have concluded that, in order to share with FSS (Earth-to-space), the maximum uplink transmit e.i.r.p. density of HAPS ground terminals in the bands should, in clear-sky conditions, be 6.4 dB(W/MHz) for Urban Area Coverage (UAC), 22.57 dB(W/MHz) for Suburban Area Coverage (SAC) and 28 dB(W/MHz) for Rural Area Coverage (RAC), and that these values can be increased by up to 5 dB during periods of rain;

e) that ITU-R studies have established specific power flux-density values to be met at international borders to facilitate bilateral agreement on sharing conditions for HAPS with other types of fixed service systems in a neighbouring country;

f) that FSS satellite networks and systems with earth station antenna diameters of 2.5 metres or larger operating as a gateway-type station are capable of sharing with ubiquitous HAPS terminals,

resolves

1 that to facilitate sharing with the FSS (Earth-to-space), the maximum transmit e.i.r.p. density of a ubiquitous HAPS ground terminal shall not exceed the following levels under clear-sky conditions:

6.4	dB(W/MHz)	for UAC	$(30° < \theta \leq 90°)$
22.57	dB(W/MHz)	for SAC	$(15° < \theta \leq 30°)$
28	dB(W/MHz)	for RAC	$(5° < \theta \leq 15°)$

where θ is the ground terminal elevation angle in degrees;

2 that the maximum transmit e.i.r.p. density levels specified in *resolves* 1 may be increased, using fading compensation techniques, by up to 5 dB during periods of rain;

3 that the ground terminal antenna patterns of HAPS operating in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz shall meet the following antenna beam patterns:

$$G(\varphi) = G_{max} - 2.5 \times 10^{-3} \left(\frac{D}{\lambda} \varphi \right)^2 \qquad \text{for} \quad 0° < \varphi < \varphi_m$$

$$G(\varphi) = 39 - 5 \log (D/\lambda) - 25 \log \varphi \qquad \text{for} \quad \varphi_m \leq \varphi < 48°$$

$$G(\varphi) = -3 - 5 \log (D/\lambda) \qquad \text{for} \quad 48° \leq \varphi \leq 180°$$

where:

G_{max}: maximum antenna gain (dBi)

$G(\varphi)$: gain (dBi) relative to an isotropic antenna

φ: off-axis angle (degrees)

D: antenna diameter
λ: wavelength
} expressed in the same units

$$\varphi_m = \frac{20 \lambda}{D} \sqrt{G_{max} - G_1} \quad \text{degrees}$$

G_1: gain of the first side lobe

$= 2 + 15 \log (D/\lambda)$ (dBi);

4 that for the purpose of protecting fixed wireless systems in neighbouring administrations from co-channel interference, a HAPS system operating in the frequency bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz shall not exceed the following power flux-density values at the Earth's surface at an administration's border, unless explicit agreement of the affected administration is provided at the time of the notification of HAPS:

-141	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $0° \leq \delta < 3°$
$-141 + 2(\delta - 3)$	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $3° \leq \delta \leq 13°$
-121	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $13° < \delta \leq 90°$

where δ is the angle of the arrival above the horizontal plane in degrees;

5 that, to protect radio astronomy stations operating in the band 48.94-49.04 GHz from unwanted emissions of HAPS operating in the 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz bands, the separation distance between the radio astronomy station and the nadir of a HAPS platform shall exceed 50 km;

6 that administrations planning to implement a HAPS system in the 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz bands shall notify the frequency assignments by submitting all mandatory elements of Appendix **4** to the Bureau for the examination of compliance with respect to *resolves* 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 above with a view to their registration in the Master International Frequency Register;

7 that administrations shall notify the new data elements for the notices referred to in *instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau* 1 in order to enable the Bureau to perform the examinations,

invites administrations

that intend to deploy HAPS systems in the fixed service in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz to consider specifying the use of the bands 47.2-47.35 GHz and 47.9-48.05 GHz for ubiquitous HAPS terminals,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to maintain and process notices concerning HAPS that were received by the Bureau prior to 20 October 2007 and provisionally recorded in the Master International Frequency Register, only until 1 January 2012, unless the notifying administration informs the Bureau before that date that a particular assignment has been brought into use and provides the complete set of data elements of Appendix **4**;

2 to examine all assignments to HAPS in the fixed service notified prior to 20 October 2007 and apply the provisions of *resolves* 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 and the respective calculation methodologies included in Recommendation ITU-R F.1820 and Recommendation ITU-R SF.1843.

RESOLUTION 124 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Protection of the fixed service in the frequency band 8 025-8 400 MHz sharing with geostationary-satellite systems of the Earth exploration-satellite service (space-to-Earth)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that prior to WRC-97, the band 8 025-8 400 MHz was allocated to the Earth exploration-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a secondary basis in Regions 1 and 3, except for those countries listed in former No. **5.464**;

b) that the power flux-density limits given in Table **21-4** of Article **21** apply to emissions from space stations of the Earth exploration-satellite service (space-to-Earth);

c) that, for those administrations where the secondary allocation applied before WRC-97, geostationary orbital avoidance was not required for the fixed service and, therefore, the power flux-density limits given in Table **21-4** of Article **21** may give rise to excessive interference to the fixed service;

d) that WRC-97 adopted provisional power flux-density limits as specified in No. **5.462A** which are lower than those shown in Table **21-4** of Article **21** to protect the fixed service;

e) that, prior to WRC-97, no studies had been conducted in this frequency band by ITU-R on the power flux-density values to apply to space stations of geostationary-satellite systems in the Earth exploration-satellite service where geostationary orbital avoidance had not been implemented by stations of the fixed service,

considering further

a) that the band 8 025-8 400 MHz is used extensively by the fixed service in accordance with ITU-R radio-frequency channel arrangements for the 8 GHz band (see Recommendation ITU-R F.386) and is also used by some countries for television outside broadcast applications;

b) that Recommendation ITU-R F.1502, which was developed in response to Resolution **124 (WRC-97)** and approved by the Radiocommunication Assembly (Istanbul, 2000), recommends power flux-density limits different from those in No. **5.462A**,

resolves

to invite a future competent world radiocommunication conference to review No. **5.462A**, taking into account Recommendation ITU-R F.1502, and to take appropriate action.

RESOLUTION 125 (WRC-97)

Frequency sharing in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz between the mobile-satellite service and the radio astronomy service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

with a view

to enabling the mobile-satellite service (MSS) and the radio astronomy service to make the most efficient use of frequency bands allocated to them, having due regard to the other services to which those bands are also allocated,

considering

a) that the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz are allocated to the radio astronomy service and the MSS (Earth-to-space) on a co-primary basis;

b) that No. **5.372** states that "Harmful interference shall not be caused to stations of the radio astronomy service using the band 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz by stations of the radiodetermination-satellite and mobile-satellite services (No. **29.13** applies)"; and that Article **29** also points out that emissions from space or airborne stations can be particularly serious sources of interference to the radio astronomy service;

c) that the nature of objects studied by the radio astronomy service in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz demands maximum flexibility in the planning of observation frequencies;

d) that, in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz, which are shared between the radio astronomy service and the MSS, operational constraints are necessary for MSS mobile earth stations;

e) that a former ITU-R Recommendation relating to sharing between the MSS and the radio astronomy service in the band 1 660-1 660.5 MHz noted that further studies were required, particularly in the areas of propagation models and assumptions used for the determination of separation distances;

f) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1316 may be used in order to facilitate coordination between mobile earth stations and radio astronomy stations in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz;

g) that no experience has been gained up to now with the use of the Recommendation mentioned in *considering f)*;

h) that the threshold levels of interference detrimental to the radio astronomy service are given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.769-1,

resolves

that a future competent conference should evaluate frequency sharing in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 660.5 MHz between the MSS and the radio astronomy service, based upon the experience gained with the use of ITU-R M.1316 and other relevant ITU-R Recommendations,

invites ITU-R

to submit a report to that future conference on evaluating the effectiveness of Recommendations aiming to facilitate sharing between the MSS and the radio astronomy service,

urges administrations

to participate actively in this evaluation.

RESOLUTION 136 (Rev.WRC-03)

Frequency sharing in the range 37.5-50.2 GHz between geostationary fixed-satellite service networks and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that WRC-2000 made provisions for the operation of geostationary fixed-satellite service (GSO FSS) networks and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service (non-GSO FSS) systems in the 10-30 GHz frequency range;

b) that there is an emerging interest in operating GSO FSS networks and non-GSO FSS systems in the 37.5-50.2 GHz frequency range;

c) that there is a need to provide for the orderly development and implementation of new satellite technologies in the 37.5-50.2 GHz frequency range;

d) that systems based on the use of new technologies associated with both GSO FSS networks and non-GSO FSS systems are capable of providing the most isolated regions of the world with high-capacity and low-cost means of communication;

e) that there should be equitable access to the radio-frequency spectrum and orbital resources in a mutually acceptable manner that allows for new entrants in the provision of services;

f) that the Radio Regulations should be sufficiently flexible to accommodate the introduction and implementation of innovative technologies as they evolve;

g) that in the frequency range 37.5-50.2 GHz where there has been little or no deployment of satellite systems to date, administrations concerned with both GSO FSS and non-GSO FSS systems should be expected to exhibit flexibility in achieving the appropriate balance in the sharing environment;

h) that this Conference, having considered the outcome of the ITU-R studies on this subject, as summarized in the CPM Report to this Conference, has decided that further studies are needed before the conditions for non-GSO FSS systems to share these bands with GSO FSS networks can reliably be determined,

resolves to invite administrations

to seek balanced sharing arrangements between GSO FSS networks and non-GSO FSS systems in the application of Article **22** to such systems in the 37.5-50.2 GHz frequency range, prior to the review by WRC-10 of the results of the studies called for by this Resolution,

invites ITU-R

1 to undertake, as a matter of urgency, further technical, operational and regulatory studies on sharing arrangements which achieve an appropriate balance between GSO FSS networks and non-GSO FSS systems in the frequency range 37.5-50.2 GHz. Such further studies should include, but not necessarily be limited to:

a) techniques which individually or in combination avoid, or otherwise adequately mitigate, main beam-to-main beam coupling of interference in both directions between non-GSO FSS systems and GSO FSS networks at "in-line" instants. The studies should be based on the key parameters of systems firmly planned to operate in the bands concerned, and should be pursued sufficiently far to establish appropriate long-term and short-term interference criteria and to compute the time statistics of interference from non-GSO systems to GSO networks, and from GSO networks to non-GSO systems, to determine whether those criteria would be met. The computations and comparisons should be made firstly assuming no mitigation, and subsequently with each of the various mitigation techniques or combinations of mitigation techniques envisaged. The mitigation techniques thus investigated should include:

– satellite diversity or arc avoidance;

– geographical isolation between earth stations;

– site diversity;

– adaptive coding;

– link balancing;

– other appropriate techniques, if any;

b) the development of technical, operational and regulatory guidance which would enable WRC-10 to decide whether or not to include, in the Radio Regulations, equivalent power flux-density (epfd) limits on non-GSO FSS systems for the protection of GSO FSS networks, and off-axis e.i.r.p. density limits on earth stations in GSO FSS networks for the protection of non-GSO FSS systems, in the frequency range 37.5-50.2 GHz. Such guidance should include quantitative values for suitable epfd↓, epfd↑ and off-axis e.i.r.p. density limits;

2 to report the results of these studies to WRC-10*.

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Conference has been rescheduled for 2011 (WRC-11).

RESOLUTION 140 (WRC-03)

Measures and studies associated with the equivalent power flux-density (epfd) limits in the band 19.7-20.2 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that, after several years of study, WRC-2000 adopted epfd limits in a number of frequency bands to give practical effect to No. **22.2**, in order to facilitate non-geostationary-orbit (non-GSO) systems in the fixed-satellite service (FSS) systems to operate while still ensuring protection of GSO FSS networks from unacceptable interference;

b) that in Resolution **76 (WRC-2000)** WRC-2000 also adopted aggregate epfd↓ limits in the same bands for the protection of GSO FSS systems;

c) that a small number of systems based on constellations of satellites in highly elliptical orbits (HEOs), in certain FSS bands, have been operating for many years;

d) that since the late 1990s, especially after WRC-2000, there has been a growing interest in HEOs in a number of bands and for several space services, predominantly in the FSS allocations below 30 GHz;

e) that ITU-R studies reported to this Conference considered HEO systems to be a sub-category of non-GSO systems and characterized their operational features;

f) that in the period between WRC-2000 and this Conference, ITU-R developed Recommendations concerning frequency sharing between HEO FSS systems and other systems, including GSO, low Earth orbit (LEO), medium Earth orbit (MEO) and HEO systems;

g) that certain types of HEO system would have difficulty in meeting the long-term portion of epfd↓ limits in force in the 19.7-20.2 GHz band,

noting

a) that, in the long-term portion, the epfd↓ limits in the band 19.7-20.2 GHz are considerably more stringent than those in the 17.8-18.6 GHz band;

b) that Nos. **9.7A** and **9.7B** apply in this band;

c) that the 19.7-20.2 GHz band is one of the few bands identified by this Conference on a global basis for high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service,

resolves to invite ITU-R

to develop, during this ITU-R study period, criteria which would protect GSO FSS networks in the band 19.7-20.2 GHz from unacceptable interference by HEO FSS systems taking account of the combined effect of interference into downlinks of the GSO FSS networks from HEO FSS systems and other non-GSO FSS systems,

invites administrations

to consider using the relevant ITU-R Recommendations regarding the protection of GSO FSS satellite networks from interference by non-GSO FSS systems as a guideline for consultation between administrations, to fulfil their obligations under No. **22.2** in the band 19.7-20.2 GHz, and in the case where an administration responsible for a non-GSO FSS system requests the application of No. **22.5CA**,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

in cases where an administration responsible for a non-GSO FSS system indicates in its coordination request its wish to apply No. **22.5CA** with respect to the epfd↓ limits in Table **22-1C** in the 19.7-20.2 GHz band but has not yet reached the necessary agreements, to make a qualified favourable finding with respect to this provision. This provisional finding regarding compliance with epfd↓ limits shall be changed to a definitive favourable finding at the notification stage, only if all explicit agreements from administrations for which epfd limits are exceeded are obtained and an indication thereof is provided to the Bureau within two years from the date of receipt of the coordination request. Otherwise, this provisional finding shall be changed to a definitive unfavourable finding.

RESOLUTION 142 (WRC-03)

Transitional arrangements relating to use of the frequency band 11.7-12.2 GHz by geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service in Region 2

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that, in Region 2, the band 11.7-12.1 GHz is allocated on a co-primary basis to terrestrial services (except in the countries listed in No. **5.486**) and to the fixed-satellite service (FSS);

b) that, in Region 2, the band 12.1-12.2 GHz is allocated on a co-primary basis to terrestrial services in Peru (see No. **5.489**) and to the FSS;

c) that, in Regions 1 and 3, the band 11.7-12.2 GHz is allocated on a co-primary basis to terrestrial services and to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS);

d) that WRC-2000 adopted Resolution **77** to protect terrestrial services in Regions 1, 2 and 3 from geostationary-satellite (GSO) networks in the FSS in Region 2, but did not clarify which procedures should be applied;

e) that the Rule of Procedure concerning No. **5.488** extended the applicability of Resolution **77** to coordination requests received from 1 January 1999 and to coordination requests received prior to 1 January 1999 for which Special Sections under former Article **14** had not been published;

f) that this Conference suppressed Resolution **77** and, through revision of No. **5.488**, replaced it with application of No. **9.14** for FSS in Region 2 to coordinate with stations in terrestrial services in all three Regions,

recognizing

that transitional measures are needed to address implementation of No. **9.14** for GSO FSS in Region 2 in the band 11.7-12.2 GHz,

resolves

1 that, for requests for coordination under Article **9** for GSO networks in the FSS in Region 2 in the band 11.7-12.2 GHz for which complete Appendix **4** information was received after 1 May 2002 by the Bureau, the Bureau shall apply No. **9.14** as adopted at this Conference;

2 that, for requests for coordination processed previously under Resolution **77**, the Bureau shall apply No. **9.14** as adopted at this Conference which may involve publication of a list of such networks to initiate the No. **9.14** process;

3 that, for requests for notification under Article **11** involving networks processed under *resolves* 1 and 2 above, the provisions in Article **11** associated with No. **9.14** shall be applied;

4 that the provisions of Nos. **5.488**, **9.14** and the part of Table 5-1 of Appendix **5 (Rev.WRC-03)** referring to No. **9.14** as amended by this Conference shall be provisionally applied as from 5 July 2003.

RESOLUTION 143 (Rev.WRC-07)

Guidelines for the implementation of high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service in frequency bands identified for these applications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that demand has been increasing steadily for global broadband communication services throughout the world, such as those provided by high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service (HDFSS);

b) that HDFSS systems are characterized by flexible, rapid and ubiquitous deployment of large numbers of cost-optimized earth stations employing small antennas and having common technical characteristics;

c) that HDFSS is an advanced broadband communication application concept that will provide access to a wide range of broadband telecommunication applications supported by fixed telecommunication networks (including the Internet), and thus will complement other telecommunication systems;

d) that, as with other FSS systems, HDFSS offers great potential to establish telecommunication infrastructure rapidly;

e) that HDFSS applications can be provided by satellites of any orbital type;

f) that interference mitigation techniques have been and continue to be studied in ITU-R to facilitate sharing between HDFSS earth stations and terrestrial services;

g) that to date, studies have not concluded on the practicability of implementation of interference mitigation techniques for all HDFSS earth stations,

noting

a) that No. **5.516B** identifies bands for HDFSS;

b) that, in some of these bands, the FSS allocations are co-primary with fixed and mobile service allocations as well as other services;

c) that this identification does not preclude the use of these bands by other services or by other FSS applications, and does not establish priority in these Radio Regulations among users of the bands;

d) that, in the band 18.6-18.8 GHz, the FSS allocation is co-primary with the Earth exploration-satellite service (EESS) (passive) with the restrictions of Nos. **5.522A** and **5.522B**;

e) that radio astronomy observations are carried out in the 48.94-49.04 GHz band, and that such observations require protection at notified radio astronomy stations;

f) that co-frequency sharing between transmitting HDFSS earth stations and terrestrial services is difficult in the same geographical area;

g) that co-frequency sharing between receiving HDFSS earth stations and terrestrial stations in the same geographical area may be facilitated through the implementation of interference mitigation techniques, if practicable;

h) that many FSS systems with other types of earth stations and characteristics have already been brought into use or are planned to be brought into use in some of the frequency bands identified for HDFSS in No. **5.516B**;

i) that HDFSS stations in these bands are expected to be deployed in large numbers over urban, suburban and rural areas of large geographical extent;

j) that the 50.2-50.4 GHz band, adjacent to the band 48.2-50.2 GHz (Earth-to-space) identified for HDFSS in Region 2, is allocated to the EESS (passive),

recognizing

a) that in cases where FSS earth stations use bands that are shared on a co-primary basis with terrestrial services, the Radio Regulations stipulate that earth stations of the FSS shall be individually notified to the Bureau when their coordination contours extend into the territory of another administration;

b) that, as a consequence of their general characteristics, it is expected that the coordination of HDFSS earth stations with fixed service stations on an individual site-by-site basis between administrations will be a difficult and long process;

c) that, to minimize the burden for administrations, simplified coordination procedures and provisions can be agreed by administrations for large numbers of similar HDFSS earth stations associated with a given satellite system;

d) that harmonized worldwide bands for HDFSS would facilitate the implementation of HDFSS, thereby helping to maximize global access and economies of scale,

recognizing further

that HDFSS applications implemented on FSS networks and systems are subject to all provisions of the Radio Regulations applicable to the FSS, such as coordination and notification pursuant to Articles **9** and **11**, including any requirements to coordinate with terrestrial services of other countries, and the provisions of Articles **21** and **22**,

resolves

that administrations which implement HDFSS should consider the following guidelines:

a) making some or all of the frequency bands identified in No. **5.516B** available for HDFSS applications;

b) in making frequency bands available under *resolves a)*, take into account:

– that HDFSS deployment will be simplified in bands that are not shared with terrestrial services;

– in bands shared with terrestrial services, the impact that the further deployment of terrestrial stations would have on the existing and future development of HDFSS, and the further deployment of HDFSS earth stations would have on the existing and future development of terrestrial services;

c) take into account the relevant technical characteristics applicable to HDFSS, as identified by ITU-R Recommendations (e.g. Recommendations ITU-R S.524-9, ITU-R S.1594 and ITU-R S.1783);

d) take into account other existing and planned FSS systems, having different characteristics, in frequency bands where HDFSS is implemented in accordance with *resolves a)* above and the conditions specified in No. **5.516B**,

invites administrations

1 to give due consideration to the benefits of harmonized utilization of the spectrum for HDFSS on a global basis, taking into account the use and planned use of these bands by all other services to which these bands are allocated, as well as other types of FSS applications;

2 to consider implementing simplified procedures and provisions that facilitate the deployment of HDFSS systems in some or all of the bands identified in No. **5.516B**;

3 when considering the deployment of HDFSS systems in the upper portion of the band 48.2-50.2 GHz, to take into account as appropriate the potential impact such deployment may have on the satellite passive services in the adjacent band 50.2-50.4 GHz, and to participate in ITU-R studies on the compatibility between these services, taking into account No. **5.340**;

4 to consider, given *invites administrations* 3 above, and where practicable, starting the deployment of HDFSS earth stations in the lower part of the band 48.2-50.2 GHz.

RESOLUTION 144 (Rev.WRC-07)

Special requirements of geographically small or narrow countries operating earth stations in the fixed-satellite service in the band 13.75-14 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WARC-92 made an additional allocation to the fixed-satellite service (FSS) (Earth-to-space) in the band 13.75-14 GHz;

b) that this band is shared with the radiolocation and radionavigation services;

c) that, following a decision by WRC-2000 and the completion of ITU-R studies, WRC-03 reviewed and revised the sharing conditions for the services in this band and adopted new regulations which govern sharing between the FSS, radiolocation and radionavigation services (see No. **5.502)**;

d) that these revised sharing conditions additionally permit the operation of geostationary FSS earth stations in the band 13.75-14 GHz with antennas having diameters between 1.2 m and 4.5 m,

recognizing

a) that these sharing conditions of No. **5.502** will mean that countries which are geographically small or narrow will have significant difficulties deploying geostationary FSS earth stations in this band with antennas having diameters between 1.2 m and 4.5 m;

b) that in order to further facilitate sharing between the FSS and the maritime radiolocation systems operating in the radiolocation service, there may be a need to develop technical and operational methods;

c) that these technical and operational methods may be used to allow a greater deployment of FSS earth stations in the band 13.75-14 GHz in conformity with No. **5.502** while protecting the radiolocation service,

resolves

1 to continue inviting ITU-R, to pursue its studies as a matter of urgency, with a view to developing ITU-R Recommendations, which will establish technical or operational methods which will further facilitate sharing and may allow greater flexibility in the deployment of FSS earth stations in the band 13.75-14 GHz, having regard to No. **5.502**, and which may also be used as a basis for the establishment of bilateral agreements between concerned administrations;

2 that the administrations of geographically small or narrow countries may exceed the limitations on FSS earth station power flux-density at the low-water mark in No. **5.502** if such operation is in conformance with bilateral agreements with administrations deploying maritime radiolocation systems in the band 13.75-14 GHz, this being in order to provide due consideration to administrations of geographically small or narrow countries,

encourages

administrations deploying maritime and land mobile radiolocation systems in the band 13.75-14 GHz to rapidly reach bilateral agreements relating to the operation of FSS earth stations in this band with administrations of those geographically small or narrow countries deploying these FSS earth stations, this being in order to provide due consideration to administrations of geographically small or narrow countries,

invites

1 administrations deploying maritime radiolocation systems in the band 13.75 to 14 GHz to participate actively in the ITU-R studies referred to in *resolves* 1;

2 administrations of geographically small or narrow countries to also contribute to the above studies.

RESOLUTION 145 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz by high altitude platform stations in the fixed service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WRC-97 made provision for the operation of high altitude platform stations (HAPS), also known as stratospheric repeaters, within a 2×300 MHz portion of the fixed-service allocation in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz;

b) that WRC-97 adopted No. **4.15A** specifying that transmissions to or from HAPS shall be limited to the bands specifically identified in Article **5**;

c) that at WRC-2000, several countries in Region 3 and one country in Region 1 expressed a need for a lower frequency band for HAPS due to the excessive rain attenuation that occurs at 47 GHz in these countries;

d) that some countries in Region 2 have also expressed an interest in using a frequency range lower than those referred to in *considering a)*;

e) that, in order to accommodate the need expressed by the countries referred to in *considering c)*, WRC-2000 adopted Nos. **5.537A** and **5.543A**, which were modified at WRC-03 and then again at WRC-07 to permit the use of HAPS in the fixed service in the band 27.9-28.2 GHz and in the band 31-31.3 GHz in certain Region 1 and 3 countries on a non-harmful interference, non-protection basis;

f) that the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz are already heavily used or planned to be used by a number of different services and a number of other types of applications in the fixed service;

g) that while the decision to deploy HAPS can be taken on a national basis, such deployment may affect neighbouring administrations, particularly in small countries;

h) that the 31.3-31.8 GHz band is allocated to the radio astronomy, Earth exploration-satellite (passive) and space research (passive) services, and that WRC-03 amended No. **5.543A** to specify signal levels that would protect satellite passive services and radio astronomy stations;

i) that ITU-R has conducted studies dealing with sharing between systems using HAPS in the fixed service and other types of systems in the fixed service in the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz leading to Recommendation ITU-R F.1609;

j) that results of some ITU-R studies indicate that, in the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz, sharing between fixed-service systems using HAPS and other conventional fixed-service systems in the same area will require appropriate interference mitigation techniques to be developed and implemented;

k) that ITU-R has conducted studies dealing with compatibility between systems using HAPS and the passive services in the 31.3-31.8 GHz band leading to Recommendations ITU-R F.1570 and ITU-R F.1612;

l) that ITU-R has produced Recommendation ITU-R SF.1601 containing methodologies for evaluating interference from fixed-service systems using HAPS into GSO FSS systems in the band 27.9-28.2 GHz;

m) that HAPS technical issues could continue to be studied in order to determine appropriate measures for protecting the fixed service and other co-primary services in the band 27.9-28.2 GHz,

resolves

1 that, notwithstanding No. **4.15A**, in Region 2 the use of HAPS within the fixed-service allocations within the 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz bands shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, other stations of services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations of Article **5**, and, further, that the development of these other services shall proceed without constraints by HAPS operating pursuant to this Resolution;

2 that any use by HAPS of the fixed-service allocation at 27.9-28.2 GHz pursuant to *resolves* 1 above shall be limited to operation in the HAPS-to-ground direction, and that any use by HAPS of the fixed-service allocation at 31-31.3 GHz shall be limited to operation in the ground-to-HAPS direction;

3 that systems using HAPS in the band 31-31.3 GHz, in accordance with *resolves* 1 above, shall not cause harmful interference to the radio astronomy service having a primary allocation in the band 31.3-31.8 GHz, taking into account the protection criterion given in the relevant ITU-R Recommendation in the RA series. In order to ensure the protection of satellite passive services, the level of unwanted power density into the HAPS ground station antenna in the band 31.3-31.8 GHz shall be limited to −106 dB(W/MHz) under clear-sky conditions and may be increased up to −100 dB(W/MHz) under rainy conditions to mitigate fading due to rain, provided that the effective impact on the passive satellite does not exceed the impact under clear-sky conditions;

4 that the administrations listed in Nos. **5.537A** and **5.543A** which intend to implement systems using HAPS in the fixed service in the bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz shall seek explicit agreement of concerned administrations with regard to their stations of primary services to ensure that the conditions in Nos **5.537A** and **5.543A** are met, and those administrations in Region 2 which intend to implement systems using HAPS in the fixed service in these bands shall seek explicit agreement of concerned administrations with regard to their stations of services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations of Article **5** to ensure that the conditions in *resolves* 1 and *resolves* 3 are met;

5 that administrations planning to implement a HAPS system pursuant to *resolves* 1 above shall notify the frequency assignment(s) by submitting all mandatory elements of Appendix **4** to the Radiocommunication Bureau for the examination of compliance with *resolves* 3 and 4 above,

invites ITU-R

1 to continue to carry out studies on the appropriate interference mitigation techniques for the situations referred to in *considering j)*;

2 to develop protection criteria for the mobile service having primary allocations in the frequency bands 27.9-28.2 GHz and 31-31.3 GHz from HAPS in the fixed service.

RESOLUTION 147 (WRC-07)

Power flux-density limits for certain systems in the fixed-satellite service using highly-inclined orbits having an apogee altitude greater than 18 000 km and an orbital inclination between 35° and 145° in the band 17.7-19.7 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band 17.7-19.7 GHz is heavily used in many countries for fixed service (FS) applications including mobile communication network infrastructure;

b) that in the band 17.7-19.7 GHz, there are planned or existing non-geostationary (non-GSO) fixed-satellite service (FSS) systems using satellites with highly-inclined orbits having an apogee altitude greater than 18 000 km and an orbital inclination between 35° and 145°;

c) that in this frequency band, ITU-R has conducted studies of the impact on FS stations of the pfd produced or to be produced by non-GSO FSS systems of the types described in *considering b)*;

d) that one of the types of systems referred to in *considering b)* under the ITU filing name USCSID-P, was notified and brought into use under the applicable power flux-density (pfd) levels for the 17.7-19.7 GHz band in Table **21-4**:

-115	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $0° \le \delta < 5°$
$-115 + 0.5(\delta - 5)$	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $5° \le \delta \le 25°$
-105	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $25° < \delta \le 90°$

where δ is the angle of arrival above the horizontal plane in degrees,

recognizing

1 that studies carried out in ITU-R of the systems described in *considering b)*, demonstrated that the system described in *considering d)* did not cause harmful interference to the fixed service in the 17.7-19.7 GHz band;

2 that one FSS system of the type described in *considering d)* has been operating since 1995 at the −115/−105 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) levels and there has been no complaint of harmful interference to any station in the fixed service of any administration,

resolves

that in the band 17.7-19.7 GHz, FSS space stations currently operating in a system of the type described in *considering d)* and for which advance publication information was received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 5 July 2003, as well as space stations with the same parameters in a future notice for a replacement system, shall continue to be subject to the power flux-density limits:

–115	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $0° \leq \delta < 5°$
–115 + 0.5(δ – 5)	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $5° \leq \delta \leq 25°$
–105	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $25° < \delta \leq 90°$

where δ is the angle of arrival above the horizontal plane in degrees.

RESOLUTION 148 (WRC-07)

Satellite systems formerly listed in Part B of the Plan of Appendix 30B (WARC Orb-88)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WARC Orb-88 adopted a Plan for the fixed-satellite service in the frequency bands 4 500-4 800 MHz, 6 725-7 025 MHz, 10.70-10.95 GHz, 11.20-11.45 GHz and 12.75-13.25 GHz contained in Appendix **30B (WARC Orb-88)**;

b) that, when the Plan was adopted, some satellite systems in the same frequency bands were under coordination or had been recorded in the Master International Frequency Register (MIFR), or had information relating to advance publication that was received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 8 August 1985, and which in all cases were listed in Part B of the Plan at WARC Orb-88;

c) that in the original provisions of Appendix **30B (WARC Orb-88)**, the satellite systems mentioned in *considering b)* above were referred to as "existing systems";

d) that satellite systems identified in *considering b)* have either been included in the List of Appendix **30B** or cancelled, and thus Part B of the Plan is empty;

e) that, therefore, this Conference suppressed Part B of the Plan in Appendix **30B**,

recognizing

a) that § 9.2 of Appendix **30B (WARC Orb-88)** indicates that "The existing systems listed in Part B of the Plan may continue in operation for a maximum period of 20 years from the date of entry into force of this Appendix", and consequently the period of operation of satellite systems in Part B of the Plan expires after 16 March 2010;

b) that some administrations expressed their wish to continue operation of these systems after the deadline mentioned in *recognizing a)*;

c) that satellite systems referred to in *considering b)* are compatible with satellite networks in Appendix **30B**,

resolves

1 that the notified period of validity of assignments to "existing system(s)" as referred to in *considering c)* for which the notified period of validity expires before 16 May 2011 shall be extended until that date;

2 that administrations intending to further operate assignments to "existing system(s)" as referred to in *considering c)* beyond 16 March 2010 shall so inform the Radiocommunication Bureau before 16 March 2008, indicating which assignments are concerned;

3 that, after the notifying administration has acted in accordance with *resolves* 2, assignments to "existing system(s)" as referred to in *considering c)* may continue to be operated in accordance with the notified period of validity, including the extension provided in *resolves* 1, if appropriate;

4 that an administration wishing to further extend the notified period of validity, extended under *resolves* 1, if applicable, of assignments to "existing system(s)" as referred to in *considering c)*, shall inform the Bureau accordingly more than three years before the expiry of the notified period of validity, extended under *resolves* 1, if applicable, and if the characteristics of that assignment remain unchanged, the Bureau shall amend, as requested, the notified period of validity and publish that information in a special section of the Bureau's International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC),

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to cancel from the Master Register and the List assignments to "existing system(s)" as referred to in *considering c)* upon expiry of their notified period of validity, or if the notifying administration failed to comply with *resolves* 2 above;

2 to calculate aggregate *C*/*I* of the "existing systems" as referred to in *considering c)* without taking into account the interference between these systems;

3 to take the appropriate actions in accordance with *resolves* 1 and 4.

RESOLUTION 149 (WRC-07)

Implementation of the decisions of WRC-07 relating to Appendix 30B to the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WARC Orb-88 adopted a Plan for the fixed-satellite service in the frequency bands 4 500-4 800 MHz, 6 725-7 025 MHz, 10.70-10.95 GHz, 11.20-11.45 GHz and 12.75-13.25 GHz as contained in Appendix **30B (WARC Orb-88)**;

b) that this Conference revised the Appendix **30B** Plan and the associated regulatory procedures;

c) that this Conference has adopted new technical parameters, sharing criteria and associated calculation methods which are included or referred to in the Annexes to Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**;

d) that in revising the regulatory procedures, this Conference decided that the principle of guaranteed access to spectrum resources for all Members of the Union must be maintained and, as a consequence, the highest priority should be given to submissions from countries not having a national allotment in the Plan or an assignment in the List stemming from the conversion of an allotment;

e) that under the regulatory provisions adopted by WARC Orb-88 and revised by subsequent conferences, submissions from Member States not having a national allotment in the Plan or an assignment in the List stemming from the conversion of an allotment are processed in order of receipt together with other submissions;

f) that, as a result of the decisions of this Conference, a large number of Rules of Procedure developed with respect to the application of the procedures of Appendix **30B** need to be reviewed;

g) that, at the conclusion of this Conference, there is a large number of submissions under Appendix **30B** waiting to be processed,

recognizing

a) that the Radiocommunication Bureau needs clear instructions from this Conference on how to implement Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)** and how to process submissions that have been received, but have not yet been processed;

b) that, since the establishment of the WARC Orb-88 Plan, the geographical situation of some ITU Member States has changed;

c) that some countries that have joined, or may join, the Union as a Member State do not have a national allotment or an assignment in the List stemming from the conversion of an allotment;

d) that the Radiocommunication Bureau needs some time to modify its software to implement the new criteria adopted by this Conference,

resolves

1 that the revised Appendix **30B** as adopted by this Conference shall enter into force as of 17 November 2007;

2 that following WRC-07, the Bureau shall update and publish the reference situation of the Appendix **30B** Plan and List as of 17 November 2007, based on the decisions of this Conference;

3 that a single-entry *C*/*I* of 25 dB and an aggregate *C*/*I* of 21 dB shall be applied when processing requests from new Member States received before 17 November 2007 under Article 7 of Appendix **30B**;

4 that as of 17 November 2007 the Bureau shall use the revised Appendix **30B** as adopted by this Conference in its examination of submissions received after the Conference as well as submissions received before 17 November 2007, but not yet processed at that time[1];

5 that an administration of a country which has joined the Union as a Member State and does not have a national allotment in the Plan or an assignment in the List stemming from the conversion of an allotment shall have the right to request the Bureau to exclude its territory from the service area of an allotment or an assignment, whereupon the Bureau shall exclude the territory accordingly without adversely affecting the rest of the service area and subsequently recalculate the new reference situation for the Appendix **30B** Plan and List;

6 that administrations, in compliance with Article 44 of the ITU Constitution, review their submissions under Appendix **30B** received before 17 November 2007 but not yet processed, with a view to reducing their number of submissions, and to indicate to the Bureau the networks which are no longer required to be considered and processed under Article 6 of Appendix **30B**;

[1] With the exception of those cases identified in the revised Appendix **30B** as adopted by this Conference.

7 that, for submissions received under Appendix **30B** before 17 November 2007 but not yet processed, administrations may reduce the e.i.r.p. density to meet the limits of Annex 3 and supply new values before the Bureau's examination under § 6.3 of Article 6 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**;

8 to urge administrations[2] to make utmost efforts to accommodate submissions received from new Member States of ITU,

instructs the Radio Regulations Board

1 to review the current Rules of Procedure and make necessary revisions;

2 to prepare necessary Rules of Procedure in response to possible inconsistencies or difficulties encountered by the Radiocommunication Bureau in applying Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**;

3 in compliance with Nos. **13.01** and **13.02**, report to the next World Radiocommunication Conference any possible modifications to the Radio Regulations to alleviate inconsistencies or difficulties encountered in applying the procedures of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to prepare a report for the next meeting of the ITU Council on the revised procedures of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)** for their consideration of required consequential changes to Council Decision 482;

2 to communicate to administrations the details of the interpolation method implemented for examination under Annex 4 of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**;

3 to take all possible measures in order to make available, not later than 17 November 2008, the software for the application of revised Annexes 3 and 4 to Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**,

invites administrations

whose geographical situation has changed to evaluate the technical parameters of their allotments in conjunction with the principles of Appendix **30B (Rev.WRC-07)**.

[2] Those administrations which are the basis of unfavourable findings with respect to submissions from new Member States.

RESOLUTION 205 (Rev.Mob-87)

Protection of the band 406-406.1 MHz allocated to the mobile-satellite service[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference for the Mobile Services, Geneva, 1987,

considering

a) that WARC-79 allocated the band 406-406.1 MHz to the mobile-satellite service in the Earth-to-space direction;

b) that Nos. **5.266** and **5.267** limit the use of the band 406-406.1 MHz to low-power satellite emergency position-indicating radiobeacons (EPIRBs);

c) that WARC Mob-83 made provision in the Radio Regulations for the introduction and development of a global distress and safety system;

d) that the use of satellite EPIRBs is an essential element of this system;

e) that, like any frequency band reserved for a distress and safety system, the band 406-406.1 MHz is entitled to full protection against all harmful interference;

f) that WARC Mob-83 adopted Recommendation **604 (Rev.Mob-83)**[*] which recommends that the ITU-R continue its studies on the technical and operational questions for EPIRBs, including those using the frequencies in the band 406-406.1 MHz;

g) that the ITU-R has initiated a study of the compatibility between satellite EPIRBs in the band 406-406.1 MHz and services using adjacent bands,

considering further

h) that some administrations have developed and implemented an operational low-altitude, near-polar orbiting satellite system (COSPAS-SARSAT) operating in the band 406-406.1 MHz to provide alerting and to aid in the locating of distress incidents;

i) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) has decided that EPIRBs operating in the COSPAS-SARSAT system will form part of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS);

j) that observations of the use of frequencies in the band 406-406.1 MHz show that they are being used by stations other than those authorized by No. **5.266**, and that these stations have caused harmful interference to the mobile-satellite service, and particularly to the reception of satellite EPIRB signals by the COSPAS-SARSAT system;

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Resolution.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was abrogated by WRC-07.

k) that in the future, new satellite systems which may be either geostationary or non-geostationary may be introduced in this band,

recognizing

that it is essential for the protection of human life and property that bands allocated exclusively to a service for distress and safety purposes be kept free from harmful interference,

resolves

to instruct the Radiocommunication Bureau

to organize monitoring programmes in the band 406-406.1 MHz in order to identify the source of any unauthorized emission in that band,

to urge administrations

1 to take part in monitoring programmes requested by the Bureau in accordance with No. **16.5**, in the band 406-406.1 MHz, with a view to identifying and locating stations of services other than those authorized in the band;

2 to ensure that stations other than those operated under No. **5.266** abstain from using frequencies in the band 406-406.1 MHz;

3 to take the appropriate measures to eliminate harmful interference caused to the distress and safety system,

invites the ITU-R

to continue on an urgent basis its study of compatibility between satellite EPIRBs in the band 406-406.1 MHz and services using adjacent bands.

RESOLUTION 207 (Rev.WRC-03)

Measures to address unauthorized use of and interference to frequencies in the bands allocated to the maritime mobile service and to the aeronautical mobile (R) service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the HF frequencies currently used by the aeronautical and maritime mobile services for distress, safety and other communications, including allotted operational frequencies, suffer from harmful interference and are often subject to difficult propagation conditions;

b) that WRC-97 considered some aspects of the use of the HF bands for distress and safety communications in the context of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS), especially with regard to regulatory measures;

c) that unauthorized operations using maritime and aeronautical frequencies in the HF bands are continuing to increase and are already a serious risk to HF distress, safety and other communications;

d) that some administrations have resorted to, for example, transmitting warning messages on operational HF channels as a means of deterring unauthorized users;

e) that provisions of the Radio Regulations prohibit the unauthorized use of certain safety frequencies for communications other than those related to safety;

f) that enforcing compliance with these regulatory provisions is becoming increasingly difficult with the availability of low-cost HF single side-band (SSB) transceivers;

g) that monitoring observations of the use of frequencies in the band 2 170-2 194 kHz and in the bands allocated exclusively to the maritime mobile service between 4 063 kHz and 27 500 kHz and to the aeronautical mobile (R) service between 2 850 kHz and 22 000 kHz show that a number of frequencies in these bands are still being used by stations of other services, many of which are operating in contravention of No. **23.2**;

h) that, in certain situations, HF radio is the sole means of communication for the maritime mobile service and that certain frequencies in the bands mentioned in *considering g)* are reserved for distress and safety purposes;

i) that, in certain situations, HF radio is the sole means of communication for the aeronautical mobile (R) service and that this is a safety service;

j) that WRC-2000 and this Conference have reviewed the use of the HF bands by the aeronautical mobile (R) and maritime mobile services with a view to protecting operational, distress and safety communications;

k) that this Resolution identifies several interference mitigation techniques that can be employed by administrations on a non-mandatory basis,

considering in particular

a) that it is of paramount importance that the distress and safety channels of the maritime mobile service be kept free from harmful interference, since they are essential for the protection of the safety of life and property;

b) that it is also of paramount importance that channels directly concerned with the safe and regular conduct of aircraft operations be kept free from harmful interference, since they are essential for the safety of life and property,

resolves to invite ITU-R and ITU-D, as appropriate

to increase regional awareness of appropriate practices in order to help mitigate interference in the HF bands, especially on distress and safety channels,

invites administrations

1 to ensure that stations of services other than the maritime mobile service abstain from using frequencies in distress and safety channels and their guardbands and in the bands allocated exclusively to that service, except under the conditions expressly specified in Nos. **4.4**, **5.128**, **5.129***, **5.137** and **4.13** to **4.15**; and to ensure that stations of services other than the aeronautical mobile (R) service abstain from using frequencies allocated to that service except under the conditions expressly specified in Nos. **4.4** and **4.13**;

2 to make every effort to identify and locate the source of any unauthorized emission capable of endangering human life or property and the safe and regular conduct of aircraft operations, and to communicate their findings to the Radiocommunication Bureau;

3 to participate, in accordance with item 4 in the Annex, in any monitoring programmes organized by the Bureau or administrations, if so agreed among those administrations, without adversely affecting the rights of other administrations or conflicting with any provisions of the Radio Regulations;

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* WRC-07 suppressed provision No. **5.129** and modified provision No. **5.128** by merging the contents of former provisions Nos. **5.128** and **5.129**.

4 to make every effort to prevent unauthorized transmissions in bands allocated to the maritime mobile service and the aeronautical mobile (R) service;

5 to request their competent authorities to take, within their respective jurisdiction, such legislative or regulatory measures which they consider necessary or appropriate in order to prevent stations from unauthorized use of distress and safety channels or from operating in contravention of No. **23.2**;

6 to take all necessary steps in such cases of contravention of No. **23.2** to ensure the cessation of any transmissions contravening the provisions of the Radio Regulations on the frequencies or in the bands referred to in this Resolution;

7 to employ as many of the interference mitigation techniques referred to in the Annex as are appropriate for the maritime mobile and aeronautical mobile (R) services,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to seek the cooperation of administrations in identifying the sources of those emissions by all available means and in securing the cessation of those emissions;

2 when the station of another service transmitting in a band allocated to the maritime mobile service or to the aeronautical mobile (R) service has been identified, to inform the administration concerned;

3 to include the problem of interference to maritime and aeronautical distress and safety channels on the agenda of relevant regional radiocommunication seminars,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the International Maritime Organization and the International Civil Aviation Organization for such actions as they may consider appropriate.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 207 (Rev.WRC-03)

Interference mitigation techniques

This Annex lists several possible HF interference mitigation techniques that may be used, either in combination or singly, depending on the resources of administrations. Use of any or all of these techniques is not mandatory.

1 Alternative modulation methods

The use of digitally modulated emissions, such as QPSK, to replace or supplement analogue SSB voice (J3E) and data (J2B) emissions. This initiative would need to be adopted internationally to allow the interoperability of equipment. For example, ICAO has adopted an HF data-link standard to provide packet data communications using automated link establishment and adaptive frequency control techniques as a supplement to analogue SSB voice communications (see ICAO Convention, Annex 10).

2 Passive and active/adaptive antenna systems

Use of passive and active/adaptive antenna systems to reject unwanted signals.

3 Channel barring

Administrations should ensure through their licensing, equipment standardization and inspection arrangements that, in compliance with No. **43.1**, HF radio equipment cannot transmit on frequencies exclusively allocated to the aeronautical mobile (R) service, as detailed in Appendix **27**, except for frequencies allocated for worldwide use and shared with the aeronautical mobile (OR) service (see Appendix **26**/3.4).

4 Regional HF monitoring and direction-finding facilities

Collaboration and cooperation between regional administrations to coordinate the use of monitoring and direction-finding facilities.

5 Transmission of warning messages

Transmission of multilanguage warning messages on specific channels affected by strong or persistent interference. Such transmissions should be conducted after coordination with the users of the affected services and the administration(s) or competent authorities concerned.

6 Education and publicity initiatives

Administrations should provide education and publicity initiatives on the proper use of the radio-frequency spectrum in these bands.

RESOLUTION 212 (Rev.WRC-07)

Implementation of International Mobile Telecommunications in the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) includes IMT-2000 and IMT Advanced;

b) that ITU-R, for WRC-97, recommended approximately 230 MHz for use by the terrestrial and satellite components of IMT-2000;

c) that ITU-R studies forecast that additional spectrum may be required to support the future services of IMT-Advanced and to accommodate future user requirements and network deployments;

d) that ITU-R has recognized that space techniques are an integral part of IMT;

e) that, in No. **5.388**, WARC-92 identified bands to accommodate certain mobile services, now called IMT,

noting

a) that the terrestrial component of IMT has already been deployed or is being considered for deployment in the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz;

b) that the availability of the satellite component of IMT in the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz simultaneously with the terrestrial component of IMT in the bands identified in No. **5.388** would improve the overall implementation and the attractiveness of IMT,

resolves

that administrations which implement IMT:

a) should make the necessary frequencies available for system development;

b) should use those frequencies when IMT is implemented;

c) should use the relevant international technical characteristics, as identified by ITU-R and ITU-T Recommendations,

invites administrations

to give due consideration to the accommodation of other services currently operating in these bands when implementing IMT,

invites ITU-R

to continue its studies with a view to developing suitable and acceptable technical characteristics for IMT that will facilitate worldwide use and roaming, and ensure that IMT can also meet the telecommunication needs of the developing countries and rural areas.

RESOLUTION 215 (Rev.WRC-97)

Coordination process among mobile-satellite systems and efficient use of the allocations to the mobile-satellite service in the 1-3 GHz range

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that space-to-Earth transmissions of mobile-satellite systems are constrained to limit their power flux-density over areas where the frequency band is shared with terrestrial systems;

b) that a number of proposed mobile-satellite systems can provide a good service to users within the power flux-density limits given in Annex 2 to Resolution **46 (Rev.WRC-97)***/ Annex 1 to Appendix **5**;

c) that when maximum communication capacity is achieved by systems in the mobile-satellite service (MSS) a major portion of the interference into each of these systems will come from the other mobile-satellite systems sharing the frequency band, and, consequently, if one system starts to transmit at higher power, all others need to do the same in order to overcome mutual interference;

d) that ITU-R is studying the efficient use of the radio spectrum and frequency sharing within the MSS, that Recommendations ITU-R M.1186 and ITU-R M.1187 are a basis for further study, and that additional preliminary texts are available or can be provided by administrations on this matter;

e) that, in a codirectional, co-frequency and co-coverage sharing environment, capacities of systems using spread-spectrum multiple-access techniques are affected by technical and operational characteristics of other MSS systems using similar multiple-access techniques;

f) that in many parts of the world and in certain frequency bands in the 1-3 GHz range, significant congestion already exists due to use by other terrestrial and space services;

g) the need to make most efficient use of frequencies in the MSS allocations,

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was abrogated by WRC-03.

recognizing

that, as a means to ensure that the frequency bands allocated to the MSS can be used in an efficient manner, there is an urgent demand for:

a) criteria to be established by ITU-R to be used in determining the need to coordinate between mobile-satellite systems; and

b) detailed methods of interference calculation to be used by administrations in the coordination process;

c) ITU-R studies which should not impede the timely deployment of any MSS systems,

resolves to invite ITU-R

1 to continue its studies on this subject and develop, as a matter of urgency, criteria for determining the need to coordinate and calculation methods for determining levels of interference, as well as the required protection ratios between MSS networks;

2 to study, as a matter of urgency, the use of technically and operationally feasible techniques to allow for improvements in spectrum efficiency in MSS systems,

further resolves

1 that ITU-R studies should be focused on the technical and operational characteristics of systems using spread-spectrum multiple-access techniques that can allow co-frequency, co-coverage, codirectional sharing but which involve cooperation among systems' operators to maximize the efficient use of spectrum by multiple MSS systems using such access techniques;

2 that administrations responsible for the introduction of mobile-satellite systems are urged to implement, as practicable, the latest available technologies to improve spectrum efficiency consistent with the requirement to offer viable MSS services;

3 to recommend that administrations be encouraged to use the most advanced technology available when preparing to implement their global MSS systems in the 1-3 GHz range so that they may operate, if necessary, in different frequency bands in different regions, in accordance with the MSS allocations in the 1-3 GHz range decided by this Conference.

RESOLUTION 217 (WRC-97)

Implementation of wind profiler radars

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

having noted

a request to ITU from the Secretary-General of the World Meteorological Organization (WMO), in May 1989, for advice and assistance in the identification of appropriate frequencies near 50 MHz, 400 MHz and 1 000 MHz in order to accommodate allocations and assignments for wind profiler radars,

considering

a) that wind profiler radars are vertically-directed Doppler radars exhibiting characteristics similar to radiolocation systems;

b) that wind profiler radars are important meteorological systems used to measure wind direction and speed as a function of altitude;

c) that it is necessary to use frequencies in different ranges in order to have options for different performance and technical characteristics;

d) that, in order to conduct measurements up to a height of 30 km, it is necessary to allocate frequency bands for these radars in the general vicinity of 50 MHz (3 to 30 km), 400 MHz (500 m to about 10 km) and 1 000 MHz (100 m to 3 km);

e) that some administrations have either already deployed, or plan to expand their use of, wind profiler radars in operational networks for studies of the atmosphere and to support weather monitoring, forecasting and warning programmes;

f) that the Radiocommunication Study Groups have studied the technical and sharing considerations between wind profiler radars and other services allocated in bands near 50 MHz, 400 MHz and 1 000 MHz,

considering further

a) that some administrations have addressed this matter nationally by assigning frequencies for use by wind profiler radars in existing radiolocation bands or on a non-interference basis in other bands;

b) the work of the Voluntary Group of Experts on the Allocation and Improved Use of the Radio Frequency Spectrum and Simplification of the Radio Regulations supports increased flexibility in the allocation of frequency spectrum,

noting in particular

a) that wind profiler radars operating in the meteorological aids service in the band 400.15-406 MHz interfere with satellite emergency position-indicating radio beacons operating in the mobile-satellite service in the band 406-406.1 MHz under No. **5.266**;

b) that in accordance with No. **5.267**, any emission capable of causing harmful interference to the authorized uses of the band 406-406.1 MHz is prohibited,

resolves

1 to urge administrations to implement wind profiler radars as radiolocation service systems in the following bands, having due regard to the potential for incompatibility with other services and assignments to stations in these services, thereby taking due account of the principle of geographical separation, in particular with regard to neighbouring countries, and keeping in mind the category of service of each of these services:

46-68 MHz in accordance with No. **5.162A**

440-450 MHz

470-494 MHz in accordance with No. **5.291A**

904-928 MHz in Region 2 only

1 270-1 295 MHz

1 300-1 375 MHz;

2 that, in case compatibility between wind profiler radars and other radio applications operating in the band 440-450 MHz or 470-494 MHz cannot be achieved, the bands 420-435 MHz or 438-440 MHz could be considered for use;

3 to urge administrations to implement wind profiler radars in accordance with Recommendations ITU-R M.1226, ITU-R M.1085-1* and ITU-R M.1227 for the frequency bands around 50 MHz, 400 MHz and 1 000 MHz, respectively;

4 to urge administrations not to implement wind profiler radars in the band 400.15-406 MHz;

5 to urge administrations currently operating wind profiler radars in the band 400.15-406 MHz to discontinue them as soon as possible,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), International Maritime Organization (IMO) and WMO.

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was suppressed by the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007).

RESOLUTION 221 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of high altitude platform stations providing IMT in the bands 1 885-1 980 MHz, 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 170 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 1 885-1 980 MHz and 2 110-2 160 MHz in Region 2

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz are identified in No. **5.388** as intended for use on a worldwide basis for IMT, including the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz for the terrestrial and satellite components of IMT;

b) that a high altitude platform station (HAPS) is defined in No. **1.66A** as "a station located on an object at an altitude of 20 to 50 km and at a specified, nominal, fixed point relative to the Earth";

c) that HAPS may offer a new means of providing IMT services with minimal network infrastructure as they are capable of providing service to a large footprint together with a dense coverage;

d) that the use of HAPS as base stations within the terrestrial component of IMT is optional for administrations, and that such use should not have any priority over other terrestrial IMT use;

e) that, in accordance with No. **5.388** and Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**, administrations may use the bands identified for IMT, including the bands referred to in this Resolution, for stations of other primary services to which they are allocated;

f) that these bands are allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a co-primary basis;

g) that, in accordance with No. **5.388A**, HAPS may be used as base stations within the terrestrial component of IMT in the bands 1 885-1 980 MHz, 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 170 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 1 885-1 980 MHz and 2 110-2 160 MHz in Region 2. Their use by IMT applications using HAPS as base stations does not preclude the use of these bands by any station in the services to which they are allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations;

h) that ITU-R has studied sharing and coordination between HAPS and other stations within IMT, has considered compatibility of HAPS within IMT with some services having allocations in the adjacent bands, and has approved Recommendation ITU-R M.1456;

i) that radio interfaces of IMT HAPS are compliant with Recommendation ITU-R M.1457;

j) that ITU-R has addressed sharing between systems using HAPS and some existing systems, particularly PCS (personal communications system), MMDS (multichannel multipoint distribution system) and systems in the fixed service, which are currently operating in some countries in the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz;

k) that HAPS stations are intended to transmit in the band 2 110-2 170 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 and in the band 2 110-2 160 MHz in Region 2;

l) that administrations planning to implement a HAPS as an IMT base station may need to exchange information, on a bilateral basis, with other concerned administrations, including data items describing the HAPS characteristics in a more detailed manner than the data items currently included in Annex 1 of Appendix **4**, as indicated in the Annex to this Resolution,

resolves

1 that:

1.1 for the purpose of protecting IMT mobile stations in neighbouring countries from co-channel interference, a HAPS operating as an IMT base station shall not exceed a co-channel power flux-density (pfd) of −117 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) at the Earth's surface outside a country's borders unless explicit agreement of the affected administration is provided at the time of the notification of HAPS;

1.2 a HAPS operating as an IMT base station shall not transmit outside the frequency bands 2 110-2 170 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 2 110-2 160 MHz in Region 2;

1.3 in Region 2, for the purpose of protecting MMDS stations in some neighbouring countries in the band 2 150-2 160 MHz from co-channel interference, a HAPS operating as an IMT base station shall not exceed the following co-channel pfd at the Earth's surface outside a country's borders unless explicit agreement of the affected administration is provided at the time of the notification of the HAPS;

– –127 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival (θ) less than 7° above the horizontal plane;

– –127 + 0.666 (θ – 7) dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival between 7° and 22° above the horizontal plane; and

– –117 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival between 22° and 90° above the horizontal plane;

1.4 in some countries (see No. **5.388B**), for the purpose of protecting fixed and mobile services, including IMT mobile stations, in their territories from co-channel interference caused by a HAPS operating as an IMT base station in accordance with No. **5.388A** in neighbouring countries, the limits of **5.388B** shall apply;

2 that the limits referred to in this Resolution shall apply to all HAPS operating in accordance with No. **5.388A**;

3 that administrations wishing to implement HAPS within a terrestrial IMT system shall comply with the following:

3.1 for the purpose of protecting IMT stations operating in neighbouring countries from co-channel interference, a HAPS operating as a base station within IMT shall use antennas that comply with the following antenna pattern:

$G(\psi) = G_m - 3(\psi/\psi_b)^2$ dBi for $0° \le \psi \le \psi_1$

$G(\psi) = G_m + L_N$ dBi for $\psi_1 < \psi \le \psi_2$

$G(\psi) = X - 60 \log(\psi)$ dBi for $\psi_2 < \psi \le \psi_3$

$G(\psi) = L_F$ dBi for $\psi_3 < \psi \le 90°$

where:

$G(\psi)$: gain at the angle ψ from the main beam direction (dBi)

G_m: maximum gain in the main lobe (dBi)

ψ_b: one-half of the 3 dB beamwidth in the plane considered (3 dB below G_m) (degrees)

L_N: near side-lobe level (dB) relative to the peak gain required by the system design, and has a maximum value of –25 dB

L_F: far side-lobe level, G_m – 73 dBi

$\psi_1 = \psi_b \sqrt{-L_N / 3}$ degrees

$\psi_2 = 3.745\ \psi_b$ degrees

$X = G_m + L_N + 60 \log(\psi_2)$ dBi

$\psi_3 = 10^{(X - L_F)/60}$ degrees

The 3 dB beamwidth ($2\psi_b$) is estimated by:

$(\psi_b)^2 = 7\,442/(10^{0.1 G_m})$ degrees^2;

3.2 for the purpose of protecting mobile earth stations within the satellite component of IMT from interference, a HAPS operating as an IMT base station, shall not exceed an out-of-band pfd of –165 dB(W/(m^2 · 4 kHz)) at the Earth's surface in the bands 2 160-2 200 MHz in Region 2 and 2 170-2 200 MHz in Regions 1 and 3;

3.3 a HAPS operating as an IMT base station, in order to protect fixed stations from interference, shall not exceed the following limits of out-of-band power flux-density (pfd) at the Earth's surface in the bands 2 025-2 110 MHz:

– –165 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival (θ) less than 5° above the horizontal plane;

– –165 + 1.75 (θ – 5) dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival between 5° and 25° above the horizontal plane; and

– –130 dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)) for angles of arrival between 25° and 90° above the horizontal plane;

4 that, for facilitating consultations between administrations, administrations planning to implement a HAPS as an IMT base station shall furnish to the concerned administrations the additional data elements listed in the Annex to this Resolution, if so requested;

5 that administrations planning to implement a HAPS as an IMT base station shall notify the frequency assignment(s) by submitting all mandatory elements of Appendix **4** to the Radiocommunication Bureau for the examination of compliance with *resolves* 1.1, 1.3 and 1.4 above;

6 that, since 5 July 2003, the Bureau and administrations provisionally apply Nos. **5.388A** and **5.388B** as revised by WRC-03 for the frequency assignments to HAPS referred to in this Resolution, including those received before this date but not yet processed by the Bureau,

invites ITU-R

to develop, as a matter of urgency, an ITU-R Recommendation providing technical guidance to facilitate consultations with neighbouring administrations.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 221 (Rev.WRC-07)

Characteristics of a HAPS operating as an IMT base station in the frequency bands given in Resolution 221 (Rev.WRC-07)

A General characteristics to be provided for the station

A.1 Identity of the station

a) Identity of the station

b) Country

A.2 Date of bringing into use

The date (actual or foreseen, as appropriate) of bringing the frequency assignment (new or modified) into use.

A.3 Administration or operating agency

Symbols for the administration or operating agency and for the address of the administration to which communication should be sent on urgent matters regarding interference, quality of emissions and questions referring to the technical operation of the station (see Article **15**).

A.4 Position information of the HAPS

a) The nominal geographical longitude for the HAPS

b) The nominal geographical latitude for the HAPS

c) The nominal altitude for the HAPS

d) The planned longitudinal and latitudinal tolerance for the HAPS

e) The planned tolerance of altitude for the HAPS

A.5 Agreements

If appropriate, the country symbol of any administration or administration representing a group of administrations with which agreement has been reached, including where the agreement is to exceed the limits prescribed in Resolution **221 (Rev.WRC-07)**.

B Characteristics to be provided for each antenna beam

B.1 HAPS antenna characteristics

a) The maximum isotropic gain (dBi).

b) HAPS antenna gain contours plotted on a map of the Earth's surface.

C Characteristics to be provided for each frequency assignment for HAPS antenna beam

C.1 Frequency range

C.2 Power density characteristics of the transmission

The maximum value of the maximum power density (dB(W/MHz)), averaged over the worst 1 MHz supplied to the input of the antenna.

D Calculated pfd limit produced over any country in visibility of HAPS

The maximum pfd calculated at the Earth's surface within each administration's territory over which the HAPS may be visible and over which these calculated pfd levels exceed the limits indicated in *resolves* 1.1, 1.3 and 1.4 of Resolution **221 (Rev.WRC-07)**.

RESOLUTION 222 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite service, and studies to ensure long-term spectrum availability for the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that prior to WRC-97, the bands 1 530-1 544 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz (Earth-to-space) were allocated to the maritime mobile-satellite service and the bands 1 545-1 555 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 1 646.5-1 656.5 MHz (Earth-to-space) were allocated on an exclusive basis to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service (AMS(R)S) in most countries;

b) that WRC-97 allocated the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz (Earth-to-space) to the mobile-satellite service (MSS) to facilitate the assignment of spectrum to multiple MSS systems in a flexible and efficient manner;

c) that WRC-97 adopted No. **5.353A** giving priority to accommodating spectrum requirements for and protecting from unacceptable interference distress, urgency and safety communications of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) in the bands 1 530-1 544 MHz and 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz and No. **5.357A** giving priority to accommodating spectrum requirements for and protecting from unacceptable interference the AMS(R)S providing transmission of messages with priority categories 1 to 6 in Article **44** in the bands 1 545-1 555 MHz and 1 646.5-1 656.5 MHz;

d) that AMS(R)S is an essential element of ICAO CNS/ATM to provide safety and regularity of flight in the civil air transportation,

further considering

a) that coordination between satellite networks is required on a bilateral basis in accordance with the Radio Regulations, and, in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz (Earth-to-space), coordination is partially assisted by regional multilateral meetings;

b) that, in these bands, geostationary satellite system operators currently use a capacity-planning approach at multilateral coordination meetings, with the guidance and support of their administrations, to periodically coordinate access to the spectrum needed to accommodate their requirements;

c) that spectrum requirements for MSS networks, including the GMDSS and AMS(R)S, are currently accommodated through the capacity-planning approach and that, in the bands to which Nos. **5.353A** or **5.357A** apply, this approach, and other methods may assist in accommodating the expected increase of spectrum requirements for GMDSS and AMS(R)S;

d) that Report ITU-R M.2073 has concluded that prioritization and inter-system pre-emption between different mobile-satellite systems is not practical and, without a significant advance in technology, is unlikely to be feasible for technical, operational and economical reasons. It summarized that prioritization and intersystem real-time pre-emption would not necessarily increase the efficiency of spectrum use compared to the current situation, but it would certainly complicate substantially the coordination process and network structure;

e) that there is existing and increasing demand for spectrum for AMS(R)S and non-AMS(R)S by several mobile satellite systems in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz, and that the application of this Resolution may impact the provision of services by non-AMS(R)S systems in the mobile satellite service;

f) that future requirements for AMS(R)S and GMDSS spectrum may require additional allocations,

recognizing

a) that absolute priority to all telecommunications concerning safety of life at sea, on land, in air or in outer space is given by No. 191 of the ITU Constitution;

b) that the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has adopted Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) addressing satellite communications with aircraft in accordance with the Convention on International Civil Aviation;

c) that all air traffic communications as defined in Annex 10 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation fall within priority categories 1 to 6 of Article **44**;

d) that Table 15-2 of Appendix **15** identifies the bands 1 530-1 544 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz (Earth-to-space) for distress and safety purposes in the maritime mobile-satellite service as well as for routine non-safety purposes,

resolves

1 that, in frequency coordination of MSS in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz, administrations shall ensure that the spectrum needed for distress, urgency and safety communications of GMDSS, as elaborated in Articles **32** and **33**, in the bands where No. **5.353A** applies, and for AMS(R)S communications within priority categories 1 to 6 of Article **44** in the bands where No. **5.357A** applies, is accommodated;

2 that administrations shall ensure the use of the latest technical advances, in order to achieve the most flexible and practical use of the generic allocations;

3 that administrations shall ensure that MSS operators carrying non-safety-related traffic yield capacity, as and when necessary, to accommodate the spectrum requirements for distress, urgency and safety communication of GMDSS communications, as elaborated in Articles **32** and **33**, and for AMS(R)S communications within priority categories 1 to 6 of Article **44**; this could be achieved in advance through the coordination process in *resolves* 1, and, when necessary, through other means if such means are identified as a result of studies in *invites ITU-R*,

invites ITU-R

to conduct, in time for consideration by WRC-11, the appropriate technical, operational and regulatory studies to ensure long-term spectrum availability for the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service (AMS(R)S) including:

i) to study, as a matter of urgency, the existing and future spectrum requirements of the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service;

ii) to assess whether the long-term requirements of the AMS(R)S can be met within the existing allocations with respect to No. **5.357A** while retaining unchanged the generic allocation for the mobile-satellite service in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz, and without placing undue constraints on the existing systems operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations;

iii) to complete studies to determine the feasibility and practicality of technical or regulatory means, other than the coordination process referred to in *resolves* 1 or the means considered in Report ITU-R M.2073, in order to ensure adequate access to spectrum to accommodate the AMS(R)S requirements as referenced in *resolves* 3 above, while taking into account the latest technical advances in order to maximize spectral efficiency;

iv) if the assessment identified in *invites ITU-R* i) and ii) indicates that these requirements cannot be met, to study existing MSS allocations or possible new allocations only for satisfying the requirements of the aeronautical mobile satellite (R) service for communications with priority categories 1 to 6 of Article **44**, for global and seamless operation of civil aviation taking into account the need to avoid undue constraints on existing systems and other services,

invites WRC-11

to consider the results of the above ITU-R studies and to take appropriate action on this subject, while retaining unchanged the generic allocation to the mobile-satellite service in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz,

invites

the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), the International Maritime Organization (IMO), the International Air Transport Association (IATA), administrations and other organizations concerned to participate in the studies identified in *invites ITU-R* above.

RESOLUTION 223 (Rev.WRC-07)

Additional frequency bands identified for IMT

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT), including IMT-2000 and IMT-Advanced, is the ITU vision of global mobile access;

b) that IMT systems provide telecommunication services on a worldwide scale regardless of location, network or terminal used;

c) that IMT provides access to a wide range of telecommunication services supported by fixed telecommunication networks (e.g. PSTN/ISDN, high bitrate Internet access), and to other services which are specific to mobile users;

d) that the technical characteristics of IMT-2000 are specified in ITU-R and ITU-T Recommendations, including Recommendation ITU-R M.1457, which contains the detailed specifications of the radio interfaces of IMT-2000;

e) that the evolution of IMT is being studied within ITU-R;

f) that the review of IMT-2000 spectrum requirements at WRC-2000 concentrated on the bands below 3 GHz;

g) that at WARC-92, 230 MHz of spectrum was identified for IMT-2000 in the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz, including the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz for the satellite component of IMT-2000, in No. **5.388** and under the provisions of Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

h) that since WARC-92 there has been a tremendous growth in mobile communications including an increasing demand for broadband multimedia capability;

i) that the bands identified for IMT are currently used by mobile systems or applications of other radiocommunication services;

j) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1308 addresses the evolution of existing mobile communication systems to IMT-2000, and that Recommendation ITU-R M.1645 addresses the evolution of the IMT systems and maps out their future development;

k) that harmonized worldwide bands for IMT are desirable in order to achieve global roaming and the benefits of economies of scale;

l) that the bands 1 710-1 885 MHz and 2 500-2 690 MHz are allocated to a variety of services in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Radio Regulations;

m) that the band 2 300-2 400 MHz is allocated to the mobile service on a co-primary basis in the three ITU Regions;

n) that the band 2 300-2 400 MHz, or portions thereof, is used extensively in a number of administrations by other services including the aeronautical mobile service for telemetry in accordance with the relevant provisions in the Radio Regulations;

o) that IMT has already been deployed or is being considered for deployment in some countries in the band 1 710-1 885 MHz, 2 300-2 400 MHz and 2 500-2 690 MHz and equipment is readily available;

p) that the bands, or parts of the bands, 1 710-1 885 MHz, 2 300-2 400 MHz and 2 500-2 690 MHz are identified for use by administrations wishing to implement IMT;

q) that technological advancement and user needs will promote innovation and accelerate the delivery of advanced communication applications to consumers;

r) that changes in technology may lead to the further development of communication applications, including IMT;

s) that timely availability of spectrum is important to support future applications;

t) that IMT systems are envisaged to provide increased peak data rates and capacity that may require a larger bandwidth;

u) that ITU-R studies forecasted that additional spectrum may be required to support the future services of IMT and to accommodate future user requirements and network deployments,

emphasizing

a) that flexibility must be afforded to administrations:

– to determine, at a national level, how much spectrum to make available for IMT from within the identified bands;

– to develop their own transition plans, if necessary, tailored to meet their specific deployment of existing systems;

– to have the ability for the identified bands to be used by all services having allocations in those bands;

– to determine the timing of availability and use of the bands identified for IMT, in order to meet particular user demand and other national considerations;

b) that the particular needs of developing countries must be met;

c) that Recommendation ITU-R M.819 describes the objectives to be met by IMT-2000 in order to meet the needs of developing countries,

noting

a) Resolutions **224 (Rev.WRC-07)** and **225 (Rev.WRC-07)**, which also relate to IMT;

b) that the sharing implications between services sharing the bands identified for IMT in No. **5.384A**, as relevant, will need further study in ITU-R;

c) that studies regarding the availability of the band 2 300-2 400 MHz for IMT are being conducted in many countries, the results of which could have implications for the use of those bands in those countries;

d) that, due to differing requirements, not all administrations may need all of the IMT bands identified at this Conference, or, due to the usage by and investment in existing services, may not be able to implement IMT in all of those bands;

e) that the spectrum for IMT identified by this Conference may not completely satisfy the expected requirements of some administrations;

f) that currently operating mobile communication systems may evolve to IMT in their existing bands;

g) that services such as fixed, mobile (second-generation systems), space operations, space research and aeronautical mobile are in operation or planned in the band 1 710-1 885 MHz, or in portions of that band;

h) that in the band 2 300-2 400 MHz, or portions of that band, there are services such as the fixed, mobile, amateur and radiolocation service which are currently in operation or planned to be in operation in the future;

i) that services such as broadcasting-satellite, broadcasting-satellite (sound), mobile-satellite and fixed (including multipoint distribution/communication systems) are in operation or planned in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz, or in portions of that band;

j) that the identification of several bands for IMT allows administrations to choose the best band or parts of bands for their circumstances;

k) that ITU-R has identified additional work to address further developments in IMT;

l) that the IMT-2000 radio interfaces as defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1457 are expected to evolve within the framework of ITU-R beyond those initially specified, to provide enhanced services and services beyond those envisaged in the initial implementation;

m) that the identification of a band for IMT does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations and does not preclude the use of the band for any application of the services to which they are allocated;

n) that the provisions of Nos. **5.317A**, **5.384A** and **5.388** do not prevent administrations from having the choice to implement other technologies in the frequency bands identified for IMT, based on national requirements,

recognizing

that for some administrations the only way of implementing IMT would be spectrum refarming, requiring significant financial investment,

resolves

1 to invite administrations implementing IMT or planning to implement IMT to make available, based on user demand and other national considerations, additional bands or portions of the bands above 1 GHz identified in No. **5.384A** for the terrestrial component of IMT; due consideration should be given to the benefits of harmonized utilization of the spectrum for the terrestrial component of IMT, taking into account the services to which the frequency band is currently allocated;

2 to acknowledge that the differences in the texts of Nos. **5.384A** and **5.388** do not confer differences in regulatory status,

invites ITU-R

1 to study the implications of sharing of IMT with other applications and services in the band 2 300-2 400 MHz and the implementation, sharing and frequency arrangements of IMT in the band 2 300-2 400 MHz;

2 to develop harmonized frequency arrangements for the 2 300-2 400 MHz band for operation of the terrestrial component of IMT, taking into account the results of the sharing studies;

3 to continue its studies on further enhancements of IMT, including the provision of Internet Protocol (IP)-based applications that may require unbalanced radio resources between the mobile and base stations;

4 to continue providing guidance to ensure that IMT can meet the telecommunication needs of the developing countries and rural areas in the context of the studies referred to above;

5 to include these frequency arrangements and the results of these studies in one or more ITU-R Recommendations,

further invites ITU-R

to commence these studies forthwith.

RESOLUTION 224 (Rev.WRC-07)

Frequency bands for the terrestrial component of International Mobile Telecommunications below 1 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) is the root name, encompassing both IMT-2000 and IMT-Advanced (see Resolution ITU-R 56);

b) that IMT systems are intended to provide telecommunication services on a worldwide scale, regardless of location, network or terminal used;

c) that parts of the band 806-960 MHz are extensively used in the three Regions by mobile systems;

d) that IMT systems have already been deployed in the band 806-960 MHz in some countries of the three Regions;

e) that some administrations are planning to use the band 698-862 MHz, or part of that band, for IMT;

f) that, as a result of the transition from analogue to digital terrestrial television broadcasting, some countries are planning to make or are making the band 698-862 MHz, or parts of that band, available for applications in the mobile service (including uplinks);

g) that the band 450-470 MHz is allocated to the mobile service on a primary basis in the three Regions and that IMT systems have already been deployed in some countries of the three Regions;

h) that results of the sharing studies for the band 450-470 MHz are contained in Report ITU-R M.2110;

i) that cellular mobile systems in the three Regions in the bands below 1 GHz operate using various frequency arrangements;

j) that where cost considerations warrant the installation of fewer base stations, such as in rural and/or sparsely populated areas, bands below 1 GHz are generally suitable for implementing mobile systems including IMT;

k) that bands below 1 GHz are important, especially for some developing countries and countries with large areas where economic solutions for low population density areas are necessary;

l) that Recommendation ITU-R M.819 describes the objectives to be met by IMT-2000 in order to meet the needs of developing countries, and in order to assist them to "bridge the gap" between their communication capabilities and those in developed countries;

m) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1645 also describes the coverage objectives of IMT,

recognizing

a) that cellular-based mobile networks' evolution to IMT can be facilitated if they are permitted to evolve within their current frequency bands;

b) that the band 450-470 MHz and parts of the bands 746-806 MHz and 806-862 MHz are used extensively in many countries by various other terrestrial mobile systems and applications, including public protection and disaster relief radiocommunications (see Resolution **646 (WRC-03)**);

c) that there is a need, in many developing countries and countries with large areas of low population density, for the cost-effective implementation of IMT, and that the propagation characteristics of frequency bands below 1 GHz identified in Nos **5.286AA** and **5.317A** result in larger cells;

d) that the band 450-470 MHz, or parts of that band, is also allocated to services other than the mobile service;

e) that the band 460-470 MHz is also allocated to the meteorological-satellite service in accordance with No. **5.290**;

f) that the frequency band 470-806/862 MHz is allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis in all three Regions and used predominantly by this service, and that the GE06 Agreement applies in all Region 1 countries, except Mongolia, and in the Islamic Republic of Iran in Region 3;

g) that the GE06 Agreement contains provisions for the terrestrial broadcasting service and other primary terrestrial services, a Plan for digital television, and a list of stations of other primary terrestrial services;

h) that the transition from analogue to digital television is expected to result in situations where the band 470-806/862 MHz will be used extensively for both analogue and digital terrestrial transmission, and the demand for spectrum during the transition period may be even greater than the stand-alone usage of analogue broadcasting systems;

i) that the time-frame and transition period for analogue to digital television switchover may not be the same for all countries;

j) that, after analogue to digital television switchover, some administrations may decide to use all or parts of the band 698-806/862 MHz for other services to which the band is allocated on a primary basis, in particular the mobile service for the implementation of IMT, while in other countries the broadcasting service will continue to operate in that band;

k) that in the band 470-862 MHz, or parts of that band, there is an allocation on a primary basis for the fixed service;

l) that, in some countries, the band 698-806/862 MHz is allocated to the mobile service on a primary basis;

m) that the band 645-862 MHz is allocated on a primary basis to the aeronautical radionavigation service in the countries listed in No. **5.312**;

n) that the compatibility of the mobile service with the broadcasting, fixed and aeronautical radionavigation service in the band referred to in *recognizing k)* and *m)* will need further study in ITU-R,

emphasizing

a) that in all administrations terrestrial broadcasting is a vital part of the communication and information infrastructure;

b) that flexibility must be afforded to administrations:

– to determine, at a national level, how much spectrum to make available for IMT from within the identified bands, taking into account current uses of the spectrum and the needs of other applications;

– to develop their own transition plans, if necessary, tailored to meet their specific deployment of existing systems;

– to have the ability for the identified bands to be used by all services having allocations in those bands;

– to determine the timing of availability and use of the bands identified for IMT, in order to meet particular market demand and other national considerations;

c) that the particular needs and national conditions and circumstances of developing countries, including least-developed countries, highly-indebted poor countries with economies in transition, and countries with large territories and territories with a low-subscriber density, must be met;

d) that due consideration should be given to the benefits of harmonized utilization of the spectrum for the terrestrial component of IMT, taking into account the current and planned use of these bands by all services to which these bands are allocated;

e) that the use of frequency bands below 1 GHz for IMT also helps to "bridge the gap" between sparsely-populated areas and densely-populated areas in various countries;

f) that the identification of a band for IMT does not preclude the use of this band by other services or applications to which it is allocated;

g) that the use of the band 470-862 MHz by the broadcasting service and other primary services is also covered by the GE06 Agreement;

h) that the requirements of the different services to which the band is allocated, including the mobile and broadcasting services, need to be taken into account,

resolves

1 that administrations which are implementing, or planning to implement IMT, consider the use of bands identified for IMT below 1 GHz and the possibility of cellular-based mobile networks' evolution to IMT, in the frequency band identified in Nos **5.286AA** and **5.317A**, based on user demand and other considerations;

2 to encourage administrations to take into account the results of the ITU-R studies referred to in *invites ITU-R* below, and any recommended measures when implementing applications/systems in the bands 790-862 MHz in Region 1 and Region 3, in the band 698-806 MHz in Region 2, and in those administrations mentioned in No. **5.313A**;

3 that administrations should take into account the need to protect the existing and future broadcasting stations, both analogue and digital, in the 470-806/862 MHz band, as well as other primary terrestrial services;

4 that administrations planning to implement IMT in the bands mentioned in *resolves* 2 shall effect coordination with all neighbouring administrations prior to implementation;

5 that in Region 1 (excluding Mongolia) and in the Islamic Republic of Iran the implementation of stations in the mobile service shall be subject to the applications of procedures contained in the GE06 Agreement. In so doing:

a) administrations which deploy stations in the mobile service for which coordination was not required, or without having obtained the prior consent of those administrations that may be affected, shall not cause unacceptable interference to, nor claim protection from, stations of the broadcasting service of administrations operating in conformity with the GE06 Agreement. This should include a signed commitment as required under § 5.2.6 of the GE06 Agreement;

b) administrations which deploy stations in the mobile service for which coordination was not required, or without having obtained the prior consent of those administrations that may be affected, shall not object nor prevent the entry into the GE06 plan or recording in the MIFR of additional future broadcasting allotments or assignments of any other administration in the GE06 Plan with reference to those stations;

6 that, in Region 2, implementation of IMT shall be subject to the decision of each administration on the transition from analogue to digital television,

invites ITU-R

1 to study the potential use of the band 790-862 MHz in Region 1 and Region 3, the band 698-806 MHz in Region 2 and in those administrations mentioned in No. **5.313A** in Region 3 by new mobile and broadcasting applications, including the impact on the GE06 Agreement, where applicable, and to develop ITU-R Recommendations on how to protect the services to which these bands are currently allocated, including the broadcasting service and in particular the GE06 Plan, as updated, and its future developments;

2 in the frequency bands mentioned in *invites ITU-R* 1, to study compatibility between mobile systems with different technical characteristics and provide guidance on any impact the new considerations may have on spectrum arrangements;

3 to include the results of the studies referred to in *invites ITU-R* 2, and in particular harmonization measures for IMT, in one or more ITU-R Recommendations by 2010;

4 to develop harmonized frequency arrangements for the 450-470 MHz band for operation of the terrestrial component of IMT, taking into account *considering h)* above.

invites the Director of the Telecommunication Development Sector

to draw the attention of the Telecommunication Development Sector to this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 225 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of additional frequency bands for the satellite component of IMT

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz are identified for use by the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) through No. **5.388** and Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

b) Resolutions **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**, **223 (Rev.WRC-07)** and **224 (Rev.WRC-07)** on the implementation of the terrestrial and satellite components of IMT;

c) that the bands 1 518-1 544 MHz, 1 545-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 626.5 MHz, 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz, 1 646.5-1 660.5 MHz, 1 668-1 675 MHz, 2 483.5-2 500 MHz, 2 500-2 520 MHz and 2 670-2 690 MHz are allocated on a co-primary basis to the mobile-satellite service and other services in accordance with the Radio Regulations;

d) that distress, urgency and safety communications of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System and the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service have priority over all other mobile-satellite service communications in accordance with Nos. **5.353A** and **5.357A**,

recognizing

a) that services such as broadcasting-satellite, broadcasting-satellite (sound), mobile-satellite, fixed (including point-to-multipoint distribution/communication systems) and mobile are in operation or planned in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz, or in portions of that band;

b) that other services such as the mobile service, the radio astronomy service and radio-determination-satellite service are in operation or planned, in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations, in the bands 1 518-1 559/1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz, 1 610-1 626.5/2 483.5-2 500 MHz and 1 668-1 670 MHz, or in portions of those bands, and that those bands, or portions thereof, are intensively used in some countries by applications other than the IMT satellite component, and the sharing studies within ITU-R are not finished;

c) that studies of potential sharing and coordination between the satellite component of IMT and the terrestrial component of IMT, mobile-satellite service applications and other high-density applications in other services such as point-to-multipoint communication/distribution systems in the bands 2 500-2 520 MHz and 2 670-2 690 MHz bands are not finished;

d) that the bands 2 520-2 535 MHz and 2 655-2 670 MHz are allocated to the mobile-satellite, except aeronautical mobile-satellite, service for operation limited to within national boundaries pursuant to Nos. **5.403** and **5.420**;

e) Resolution ITU-R 47 on studies under way on satellite radio transmission technologies for IMT,

resolves

1 that, in addition to the frequency bands indicated in *considering a)* and *resolves* 2, the frequency bands 1 518-1 544 MHz, 1 545-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 626.5 MHz, 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz, 1 646.5-1 660.5 MHz, 1 668-1 675 MHz and 2 483.5-2 500 MHz may be used by administrations wishing to implement the satellite component of IMT, subject to the regulatory provisions related to the mobile-satellite service in these frequency bands;

2 that the bands 2 500-2 520 MHz and 2 670-2 690 MHz as identified for IMT in No. **5.384A** and allocated to the mobile-satellite service may be used by administrations wishing to implement the satellite component of IMT; however, depending on user demand, it may be possible in the longer term that the administrations decide to use these bands for the terrestrial component of IMT (see the Preamble of the ITU Constitution);

3 that this identification of frequency bands for the satellite component of IMT does not preclude the use of these bands by any applications of the services to which they are allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations,

invites ITU-R

1 to study the sharing and coordination issues in the above bands related to use of the mobile-satellite service allocations for the satellite component of IMT and the use of this spectrum by the other allocated services, including the radiodetermination-satellite service;

2 to report the results of these studies to a future world radiocommunication conference,

invites the Director of the Telecommunication Development Bureau

to draw the attention of the Telecommunication Development Sector to this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 229 (WRC-03)

Use of the bands 5 150-5 250 MHz, 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz by the mobile service for the implementation of wireless access systems including radio local area networks

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that this Conference has allocated the bands 5 150-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz on a primary basis to the mobile service for the implementation of wireless access systems (WAS), including radio local area networks (RLANs);

b) that this Conference has decided to make an additional primary allocation for the Earth exploration-satellite service (EESS) (active) in the band 5 460-5 570 MHz and space research service (SRS) (active) in the band 5 350-5 570 MHz;

c) that this Conference has decided to upgrade the radiolocation service to a primary status in the 5 350-5 650 MHz band;

d) that the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is allocated worldwide on a primary basis to the fixed-satellite service (FSS) (Earth-to-space), this allocation being limited to feeder links of non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service (No. **5.447A**);

e) that the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is also allocated to the mobile service, on a primary basis, in some countries (No. **5.447**) subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**;

f) that the band 5 250-5 460 MHz is allocated to the EESS (active) and the band 5 250-5 350 MHz to the SRS (active) on a primary basis;

g) that the band 5 250-5 725 MHz is allocated on a primary basis to the radiodetermination service;

h) that there is a need to protect the existing primary services in the 5 150-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz bands;

i) that results of studies in ITU-R indicate that sharing in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz between WAS, including RLANs, and the FSS is feasible under specified conditions;

j) that studies have shown that sharing between the radiodetermination and mobile services in the bands 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz is only possible with the application of mitigation techniques such as dynamic frequency selection;

k) that there is a need to specify an appropriate e.i.r.p. limit and, where necessary, operational restrictions for WAS, including RLANs, in the mobile service in the bands 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 570 MHz in order to protect systems in the EESS (active) and SRS (active);

l) that the deployment density of WAS, including RLANs, will depend on a number of factors including intrasystem interference and the availability of other competing technologies and services,

further considering

a) that the interference from a single WAS, including RLANs, complying with the operational restrictions under *resolves* 2 will not on its own cause any unacceptable interference to FSS receivers on board satellites in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz;

b) that such FSS satellite receivers may experience an unacceptable effect due to the aggregate interference from these WAS, including RLANs, especially in the case of a prolific growth in the number of these systems;

c) that the aggregate effect on FSS satellite receivers will be due to the global deployment of WAS, including RLANs, and it may not be possible for administrations to determine the location of the source of the interference and the number of WAS, including RLANs, in operation simultaneously,

noting

that, prior to WRC-03, a number of administrations have developed regulations to permit indoor and outdoor WAS, including RLANs, to operate in the various bands under consideration in this Resolution,

recognizing

a) that in the band 5 600-5 650 MHz, ground-based meteorological radars are extensively deployed and support critical national weather services, according to footnote No. **5.452**;

b) that the means to measure or calculate the aggregate pfd level at FSS satellite receivers specified in Recommendation ITU-R S.1426 are currently under study;

c) that certain parameters contained in Recommendation ITU-R M.1454 related to the calculation of the number of RLANs tolerable by FSS satellite receivers operating in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz require further study;

d) that the performance and interference criteria of spaceborne active sensors in the EESS (active) are given in Recommendation ITU-R RS.1166;

e) that a mitigation technique to protect radiodetermination systems is given in Recommendation ITU-R M.1652;

f) that an aggregate pfd level has been developed in Recommendation ITU-R S.1426 for the protection of FSS satellite receivers in the 5 150-5 250 MHz band;

g) that Recommendation ITU-R RS.1632 identifies a suitable set of constraints for WAS, including RLANs, in order to protect the EESS (active) in the 5 250-5 350 MHz band;

h) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1653 identifies the conditions for sharing between WAS, including RLANs, and the EESS (active) in the 5 470-5 570 MHz band;

i) that the stations in the mobile service should also be designed to provide, on average, a near-uniform spread of the loading of the spectrum used by stations across the band or bands in use to improve sharing with satellite services;

j) that WAS, including RLANs, provide effective broadband solutions;

k) that there is a need for administrations to ensure that WAS, including RLANs, meet the required mitigation techniques, for example, through equipment or standards compliance procedures,

resolves

1 that the use of these bands by the mobile service will be for the implementation of WAS, including RLANs, as described in Recommendation ITU-R M.1450;

2 that in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall be restricted to indoor use with a maximum mean e.i.r.p.[1] of 200 mW and a maximum mean e.i.r.p. density of 10 mW/MHz in any 1 MHz band or equivalently 0.25 mW/25 kHz in any 25 kHz band;

3 that administrations may monitor whether the aggregate pfd levels given in Recommendation ITU-R S.1426[2] have been, or will be exceeded in the future, in order to enable a future competent conference to take appropriate action;

---

[1] In the context of this Resolution, "mean e.i.r.p." refers to the e.i.r.p. during the transmission burst which corresponds to the highest power, if power control is implemented.

[2] $-124 - 20 \log_{10} (h_{SAT}/1\,414)$ dB(W/(m^2 · 1 MHz)), or equivalently,

$-140 - 20 \log_{10} (h_{SAT}/1\,414)$ dB(W/(m^2 · 25 kHz)), at the FSS satellite orbit, where h_{SAT} is the altitude of the satellite (km).

4 that in the band 5 250-5 350 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall be limited to a maximum mean e.i.r.p. of 200 mW and a maximum mean e.i.r.p. density of 10 mW/MHz in any 1 MHz band. Administrations are requested to take appropriate measures that will result in the predominant number of stations in the mobile service being operated in an indoor environment. Furthermore, stations in the mobile service that are permitted to be used either indoors or outdoors may operate up to a maximum mean e.i.r.p. of 1 W and a maximum mean e.i.r.p. density of 50 mW/MHz in any 1 MHz band, and, when operating above a mean e.i.r.p. of 200 mW, these stations shall comply with the following e.i.r.p. elevation angle mask where θ is the angle above the local horizontal plane (of the Earth):

-13 dB(W/MHz)	for $0° \le \theta < 8°$
$-13 - 0.716(\theta - 8)$ dB(W/MHz)	for $8° \le \theta < 40°$
$-35.9 - 1.22(\theta - 40)$ dB(W/MHz)	for $40° \le \theta \le 45°$
-42 dB(W/MHz)	for $45° < \theta$;

5 that administrations may exercise some flexibility in adopting other mitigation techniques, provided that they develop national regulations to meet their obligations to achieve an equivalent level of protection to the EESS (active) and the SRS (active) based on their system characteristics and interference criteria as stated in Recommendation ITU-R RS.1632;

6 that in the band 5 470-5 725 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall be restricted to a maximum transmitter power of 250 mW[3] with a maximum mean e.i.r.p. of 1 W and a maximum mean e.i.r.p. density of 50 mW/MHz in any 1 MHz band;

7 that in the bands 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz, systems in the mobile service shall either employ transmitter power control to provide, on average, a mitigation factor of at least 3 dB on the maximum average output power of the systems, or, if transmitter power control is not in use, then the maximum mean e.i.r.p. shall be reduced by 3 dB;

8 that, in the bands 5 250-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz, the mitigation measures found in Annex 1 to Recommendation ITU-R M.1652 shall be implemented by systems in the mobile service to ensure compatible operation with radiodetermination systems,

invites administrations

to adopt appropriate regulation if they intend to permit the operation of stations in the mobile service using the e.i.r.p. elevation angle mask in *resolves* 4, to ensure the equipment is operated in compliance with this mask,

---

[3] Administrations with existing regulations prior to this Conference may exercise some flexibility in determining transmitter power limits.

invites ITU-R

1 to continue work on regulatory mechanisms and further mitigation techniques to avoid incompatibilities which may result from aggregate interference into the FSS in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz from a possible prolific growth in the number of WAS, including RLANs;

2 to continue studies on mitigation techniques to provide protection of EESS from stations in the mobile service,

3 to continue studies on suitable test methods and procedures for the implementation of dynamic frequency selection, taking into account practical experience.

RESOLUTION 231 (WRC-07)

Additional allocations to the mobile-satellite service with particular focus on the bands between 4 GHz and 16 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that ITU has studied the spectrum requirements for the satellite component of IMT for the period 2010-2020, and the results are contained in Report ITU-R M.2077;

b) that the results in Report ITU-R M.2077 indicate a shortfall of spectrum available for the satellite component of IMT in the Earth-to-space direction of between 19 and 90 MHz for the year 2020;

c) that the results in Report ITU-R M.2077 indicate a shortfall of spectrum available for the satellite component of IMT in the space-to-Earth direction of between 144 and 257 MHz for the year 2020;

d) that MSS systems which are not part of the satellite component of IMT may also require additional spectrum,

resolves to invite ITU-R

to complete, for WRC-11, studies of possible bands for new allocations to the mobile-satellite service in the Earth-to-space and space-to-Earth directions, with particular focus on the range 4 GHz to 16 GHz, taking into account sharing and compatibility, without placing undue constraints on existing services in this band,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 331 (Rev.WRC-07)

Transition to the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

noting

that all ships subject to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, are required to be fitted for the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS),

noting further

a) that a number of administrations have taken steps to implement the GMDSS also for classes of vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended;

b) that an increasing number of vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended, are making use of the techniques and frequencies of the GMDSS prescribed in Chapter **VII**;

c) that this Conference has amended Chapter **VII** to provide for maintaining interoperability between ships fitted for GMDSS and ships not yet fully equipped for GMDSS;

d) that there may be a need to maintain existing shore-based distress and safety services for the reception of distress, urgency and safety calling by voice on VHF channel 16 so that vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended and not yet using the techniques and frequencies of the GMDSS will be able to attract attention and obtain assistance from these services;

e) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) is of the view that SOLAS ships, while at sea, should be required to keep a listening watch on VHF channel 16, for the foreseeable future, with a view to providing:

– a distress alerting and communication channel for non-SOLAS ships; and

– bridge-to-bridge communications;

f) that IMO has urged administrations to require all seagoing vessels under national legislation, and encourage all vessels voluntarily carrying VHF radio equipment to be fitted with facilities for transmitting and receiving distress alerts by digital selective calling (DSC) on VHF channel 70;

g) that the Radio Regulations require GMDSS ships to keep watch on the appropriate DSC distress frequencies;

h) that separate provisions in the existing Radio Regulations designate VHF channel 16 as the international channel for general calling by radiotelephony;

i) that several administrations have established Vessel Traffic Service (VTS) systems and require their vessels to keep watch on local VTS channels;

j) that ships that are required by SOLAS to carry a radio station have been equipped with DSC, and many vessels subject to national carriage requirements are also being equipped with DSC, but the majority of vessels that carry a radio station on a voluntary basis might not yet have DSC equipment;

k) that similarly, many administrations have established distress and safety service based on DSC watchkeeping, but the majority of port stations, pilot stations and other operational coast stations might not yet have been equipped with DSC facilities;

l) that Nos **52.190** to **52.192** and **52.232** to **52.234** allow frequency 2 182 kHz and channel 16 to be used for call and reply,

recognizing

a) that, as indicated in *noting further a)*, *b)*, *f)*, *j)* and *k)* above, stations in the maritime mobile service are increasingly making use of the frequencies and techniques of GMDSS;

b) that this Conference has adopted provisions for distress, urgency and safety calling by radiotelephony on VHF channel 16, requiring ships, where practicable, to maintain watch on VHF channel 16;

c) the need to maintain existing shore-based distress and safety services for reception of distress, urgency and safety calling by voice on VHF channel 16 for some years after this Conference so that vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended, and not yet using the techniques and frequencies of the GMDSS, will be able to attract attention and obtain assistance from these services until such time as they are able to participate in the GMDSS;

d) the need indicated in *noting further d)* above for maintaining existing shore-based distress, urgency and safety services on VHF channel 16,

resolves

1 to retain the provisions permitting use of VHF channel 16 and the frequency 2 182 kHz for general voice-calling;

2 to urge all administrations to assist in enhancing safety at sea by:

– encouraging all vessels to finalize the transition to the GMDSS as soon as possible;

– encouraging, where appropriate, establishment of suitable shore-based facilities for GMDSS, either on an individual basis or in cooperation with other relevant parties in the area;

– encouraging all vessels carrying maritime VHF equipment to be fitted with DSC on VHF channel 70 as soon as possible, taking into account the relevant decisions of IMO;

– encouraging vessels to limit their use of VHF channel 16 and the frequency 2 182 kHz for calling to the minimum necessary, noting the provisions of No. **52.239**;

3 that coast stations forming part of shore-based arrangements in the area concerned for reception of distress calling by radiotelephony on VHF channel 16 should maintain an efficient watch on VHF channel 16. Such watch should be indicated in the List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations;

4 that administrations may release their ship stations and coast stations from the listening watch on VHF channel 16 in respect of distress, urgency and safety calling by voice, in accordance with relevant decisions of IMO and ITU on aural watch-keeping requirements on channel 16, taking into account the GMDSS radio systems available in the area concerned;

when doing so, administrations should:

– inform IMO of their decisions and submit to IMO details on the area concerned;

– inform the Secretary-General of the necessary details for inclusion in the List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations,

resolves further

that the Secretary-General should ensure that such arrangements and details regarding the area concerned be indicated in relevant maritime publications,

invites ITU-R

to monitor the development of and changes to the GMDSS, in particular:

– watch-keeping requirements;

– distress alerting;

– carriage requirements,

and report to a future world radiocommunication conference on when further rationalization of Chapter **VII** should be considered,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of IMO, the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) and the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities (IALA).

RESOLUTION 339 (Rev.WRC-07)

Coordination of NAVTEX services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) has established a Coordinating Panel on NAVTEX to, *inter alia*, coordinate the operational aspects of NAVTEX services, such as allocation of transmitter identification character (B1) and time schedules, in the planning stages for transmissions on the frequencies 490 kHz, 518 kHz or 4 209.5 kHz;

b) that coordination in the frequencies 490 kHz, 518 kHz and 4 209.5 kHz is essentially operational;

c) that the frequency band around 518 kHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis,

resolves

to invite administrations to apply the procedures established by IMO, taking into account the IMO NAVTEX Manual, for coordinating the use of the frequencies 490 kHz, 518 kHz and 4 209.5 kHz,

instructs the Secretary-General

to invite IMO to provide ITU with information on a regular basis on operational coordination for NAVTEX services on the frequencies 490 kHz, 518 kHz and 4 209.5 kHz,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to publish this information in the *List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations* (List IV) (see No. **20.7**).

RESOLUTION 342 (Rev.WRC-2000)

New technologies to provide improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that the agenda of this Conference included the consideration of the use of new technologies for the maritime mobile service in the band 156-174 MHz and the consequential revision of Appendix **18**;

b) Recommendation **318 (Mob-87)**[*], particularly *noting b)* and *c)* thereof;

c) that Appendix **18** identifies frequencies to be used for distress and safety communications on an international basis;

d) that the introduction of new technology in the maritime mobile service shall not disrupt distress and safety communications in the VHF band including those established by the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended;

e) that the date for full implementation of the global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) was 1 February 1999;

f) that ITU-R is conducting studies on improving efficiency in the use of this band, and that these studies are still ongoing;

g) that changes made in Appendix **18** should not prejudice the future use of these frequencies or the capabilities of systems or new applications required for use by the maritime mobile service;

h) that the congestion on Appendix **18** frequencies calls for the implementation of efficient new technologies;

i) that the use of new technology on maritime VHF frequencies will make it possible to better respond to the emerging demand for new services;

j) that ITU-R has approved Recommendation ITU-R M.1312 relating to a long-term solution for improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service;

k) that ITU-R has approved Recommendation ITU-R M.1371 relating to technical characteristics for a universal shipborne automatic identification system using time-division multiple access in the VHF maritime mobile band;

l) that there is a need to maintain some duplex channels for specific applications,

---

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was abrogated by WRC-07.

noting

a) that the global maritime market may not be of a sufficient size to warrant the development of a new system solely for the maritime service;

b) that digital systems have been successfully implemented in the land mobile service,

noting also

that this Conference has modified Appendix **18**, including the addition of note *o)*, to permit the possible use on a voluntary basis of various channels or bands created by the conversion of some duplex channels to simplex channels, for the initial testing and the possible future introduction of new technologies,

resolves

1 that, in order to provide full worldwide interoperability of equipment on ships, there should be one technology, or more than one interoperable worldwide technology, implemented under Appendix **18**;

2 that, as soon as the ITU-R studies are complete, a future competent conference should consider any necessary changes to Appendix **18** to enable the use of new technologies by the maritime mobile service,

invites ITU-R

to finalize the following studies:

a) identify the future requirements of the maritime mobile service;

b) identify suitable technical characteristics of the system or interoperable systems to replace existing technology;

c) identify necessary modifications to the Table of frequencies contained in Appendix **18**;

d) recommend a transition plan for the introduction of new technologies;

e) recommend how new technologies can be introduced while ensuring compliance with the distress and safety requirements,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to the International Maritime Organization and the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities.

RESOLUTION 343 (WRC-97)

Maritime certification for personnel of ship stations and ship earth stations for which a radio installation is not compulsory

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that WRC-97 has considered the question of certification for personnel of ship stations and ship earth stations within the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS);

b) that GMDSS will be fully implemented on 1 February 1999 by ships subject to an international agreement;

c) that ships not subject to an international agreement have begun to adopt GMDSS systems and techniques;

d) that use of GMDSS equipment should be accompanied by appropriate training and certification;

e) that the Radio Regulations stipulate that the service of every ship radio station working on frequencies assigned for international use shall be performed by operators holding a certificate;

f) that the present certificates described in Article **47** may be too demanding for radio operators of ship stations and ship earth stations on board ships for which a radio installation is not compulsory,

noting

that a number of administrations currently issue radio operator certificates specially designed for the non-compulsory sector,

resolves

that administrations wishing to implement special certification for the non-compulsory sector should implement the certificates contained in the Annex to this Resolution,

invites ITU-R

to develop a Recommendation describing these certificates,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the International Maritime Organization (IMO).

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 343 (WRC-97)

Examination syllabus for radio operator's certificates appropriate to vessels using the frequencies and techniques of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System on a non-compulsory basis

Introduction

The introduction of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) in February 1992 made it necessary to harmonize the examination requirements for certificates for professional radio operators. Harmonized examination procedures for the general operator's Certificate and restricted operator's Certificate, based on the syllabuses described in Article **47**, have already been introduced for maritime radio operators performing radiocommunication duties on board vessels subject to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended. The GMDSS will be fully implemented on 1 February 1999 for vessels subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended.

For vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended, and which install radiocommunication equipment on a voluntary basis, there are significant advantages to also using the GMDSS. However, it was foreseen by some administrations that such vessels would use some, but not all, of the frequencies and techniques of the GMDSS and that radio personnel on board such vessels would not need the same level of certification as radio personnel on board vessels which use all of the frequencies and techniques of the GMDSS on a compulsory basis. A syllabus has been developed which provides the flexibility for a depth of study, level of knowledge, and length of course appropriate to meet the certification requirements of radio personnel on board vessels which use some of the frequencies and techniques of the GMDSS on a non-compulsory basis. The syllabus also provides for certification in the use of satellite equipment where appropriate.

This Annex describes the syllabus developed to meet the certification requirements referred to above, and which are implemented in a number of countries under the title "Long Range Certificate" and "Short Range Certificate". The Short Range Certificate should at least contain those elements of the syllabus which are relevant to sea area A1.

Examination syllabus

The examination should consist of theoretical and practical tests and should include at least:

A General knowledge of radiocommunications in the maritime mobile service

A.1 The general principles and basic features of the maritime mobile service.

B Detailed practical knowledge and ability to use radio equipment

B.1 The VHF radio installation. Use of VHF equipment in practice.

B.2 The MF/HF radio installation. Use of MF/HF equipment in practice.

B.3 Purpose and use of digital selective calling facilities and techniques.

C Operational procedures of the GMDSS and detailed practical operation of GMDSS subsystems and equipment

C.1 Basic introduction to GMDSS procedures.

C.2 Distress, urgency and safety communication procedures in the GMDSS.

C.3 Distress, urgency and safety communication procedures by radiotelephony in the old distress and safety system.

C.4 Protection of distress frequencies.

C.5 Maritime safety information (MSI) systems in the GMDSS.

C.6 Alerting and locating signals in the GMDSS.

D Operational procedures and regulations for radiotelephone communications

D.1 Ability to exchange communications relevant to the safety of life at sea.

D.2 Regulations, obligatory procedures and practices.

D.3 Practical and theoretical knowledge of radiotelephone procedures.

D.4 Use of the international phonetic alphabet and, where appropriate, parts of the IMO Standard Marine Communication Phrases.

E Optional examination module for the maritime mobile-satellite service for vessels not subject to a compulsory fit

E.1 The general principles and basic features of the maritime mobile-satellite service.

E.2 Operational procedures and detailed practical operation of ship earth stations in the GMDSS.

RESOLUTION 344 (Rev.WRC-03)

Management of the maritime mobile service identity numbering resource

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

noting

a) that the installation of digital selective calling equipment or Inmarsat B, C or M ship earth station equipment on ships participating in the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) on a mandatory or voluntary basis requires the assignment of a unique nine-digit maritime mobile service identity (MMSI);

b) that such equipment offers the possibility to connect with public telecommunication networks;

c) that only mobile-satellite systems have been able to resolve the various billing, routeing, charging and signalling requirements needed to provide full two-way automatic connectivity between ships and the international public correspondence service;

d) that ships using the present generation of mobile-satellite ship earth stations have to be assigned an MMSI ending with three trailing zeros in order to support automatic access to public telecommunication networks through a diallable ship telephone number whose format is compliant with ITU-T Recommendation E.164 but can only accommodate the first six digits of the MMSI;

e) that the first three digits of a ship station MMSI form the maritime identification digits (MID), which denote the ship's administration or geographical area of origin;

f) that each MID only has sufficient capacity to identify 999 ships using the three-trailing-zero number format, with the result that widespread use of MMSIs with three trailing zeros will rapidly exhaust the capacity of each MID,

considering

a) that digital selective calling distress alerts require valid identities recognizable by search and rescue authorities in order to ensure a timely response;

b) that Recommendation ITU-R M.585 contains guidance for the assignment of MMSIs,

recognizing

a) that even domestic ships which install the present generation of ship earth stations operating to Inmarsat B, C or M standards will require the assignment of MMSI numbers from those numbers originally intended for ships communicating worldwide, further depleting the resource;

b) that future growth of Inmarsat B, C or M ship earth station use by non-compulsory ships may further deplete the MMSI and MID resources;

c) that future generations of mobile-satellite systems offering access to public telecommunication networks and participating in the GMDSS will employ a free-form numbering system that need not include any part of the MMSI,

noting further

a) that ITU-T has recommended that ITU-R assume sole responsibility for managing the MMSI and MID numbering resources;

b) that ITU-R can monitor the status of the MMSI resource, through regular reviews of the spare capacity available within the MIDs already in use, and the availability of spare MIDs, taking account of regional variations,

resolves to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to manage the allotment and distribution of the MID resource within the MMSI numbering format, taking into account:

– Sections II, V and VI of Article **19**;

– regional variations in MMSI use;

– spare capacity within the MID resource; and

– the guidelines on MID and MMSI management contained in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R M.585, in particular as regards the reuse of MMSIs;

2 to report to each world radiocommunication conference on the use and status of the MMSI resource, noting in particular the anticipated reserve capacity and any indications of rapid exhaustion of the resource,

invites ITU-R

to keep under review the Recommendations for assigning MMSIs, with a view to:

– improving the management of the MID and MMSI resources; and

– identifying alternative resources if there is an indication of rapid exhaustion of these resources,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to the International Maritime Organization.

RESOLUTION 345 (WRC-97)

Operation of Global Maritime Distress and Safety System equipment on and assignment of maritime mobile service identities to non-compulsory fitted vessels

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

noting

a) that ships not required by international agreement to carry Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) equipment could elect to do so for safety purposes;

b) that such vessels may only carry VHF digital selective calling (DSC) equipment;

c) that some administrations may not require operators on such vessels to have appropriate training, certification or licence;

d) that not all administrations assign and register identities to users of VHF DSC equipment on such ships,

considering

that VHF DSC false distress alerts are a problem for rescue coordination centres, particularly when incorrect identities are used, or when the radio is operated by persons untrained in its use,

recognizing

that administrations have different training requirements for users of VHF DSC equipment,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to consider DSC standards and operating procedures in order to simplify operation of this equipment;

2 to invite ITU-T and ITU-R to review the process for assigning maritime mobile service identities for simplifying the process, taking into account cases of new installation, sale of the vessel or transfer of the equipment to a new ship;

3 to invite ITU-T and ITU-R to undertake studies to ensure the registration and continuous accessibility and availability of identities to rescue authorities,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to the International Maritime Organization for consideration and comments.

RESOLUTION 349 (WRC-97)

Operational procedures for cancelling false distress alerts in the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that the 1974 International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), as amended, prescribes that ships subject to that Convention shall be fitted with Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) equipment as appropriate;

b) that non-SOLAS vessels are also being equipped with GMDSS equipment;

c) that the transmission and relay of false distress alerts is a significant problem within the GMDSS,

noting

that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) has developed similar operational procedures to cancel false distress alerts,

resolves

1 to urge administrations to take all necessary measures to avoid false distress alerts and to minimize the unnecessary burden on rescue organizations which occurs;

2 to urge administrations to encourage the correct use of GMDSS equipment, with particular attention to appropriate training;

3 to urge administrations to implement the operational procedures contained in the Annex to this Resolution;

4 that administrations should take any consequential appropriate action in this respect,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of IMO.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 349 (WRC-97)

Cancelling of false distress alerts

If a distress alert is inadvertently transmitted, the following steps shall be taken to cancel the distress alert.

1 VHF digital selective calling

1) Reset the equipment immediately;

2) Set to channel 16; and

3) Transmit a broadcast message to "All Stations" giving the ship's name, call sign and maritime mobile service identity (MMSI), and cancel the false distress alert.

2 MF digital selective calling

1) Reset the equipment immediately;

2) Tune for radiotelephony transmission on 2 182 kHz; and

3) Transmit a broadcast message to "All Stations" giving the ship's name, call sign and MMSI, and cancel the false alert.

3 HF digital selective calling

1) Reset the equipment immediately;

2) Tune for radiotelephony on the distress and safety frequency in each band in which a false distress alert was transmitted (see Appendix **15**); and

3) Transmit a broadcast message to "All Stations" giving the ship's name, call sign and MMSI, and cancel the false alert on the distress and safety frequency in each band in which the false distress alert was transmitted.

4 Inmarsat ship earth station

Notify the appropriate rescue coordination centre that the alert is cancelled by sending a distress priority message by way of the same coast earth station through which the false distress alert was sent. Provide ship name, call sign and Inmarsat identity with the cancelled alert message.

5 Emergency position indicating radiobeacon (EPIRB)

If for any reason an EPIRB is activated inadvertently, contact the appropriate rescue coordination centre through a coast station or land earth station and cancel the distress alert.

6 General

Notwithstanding the above, ships may use additional appropriate means available to them to inform the appropriate authorities that a false distress alert has been transmitted and should be cancelled.

RESOLUTION 351 (Rev.WRC-07)

Review of the frequency and channel arrangements in the HF bands allocated to the maritime mobile service contained in Appendix 17 with a view to improving efficiency through the use of new digital technology by the maritime mobile service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the introduction of new digital technology in the maritime mobile service (MMS) shall not disrupt the distress and safety communications in the HF bands including those established by the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended;

b) that changes made in Appendix **17** should not prejudice the future use of these frequencies or the capabilities of systems or new applications required for use by the MMS;

c) that the need to use new digital technologies in the MMS is growing rapidly;

d) that the use of new digital technology on HF frequencies allocated to the MMS will make it possible to better respond to the emerging demand for new services;

e) that the HF bands allocated to the MMS for A1A Morse telegraphy and narrow-band direct-printing (NBDP) contained in Appendix **17** are significantly under-utilized at present;

f) that there are new HF data exchange technologies capable of delivering maritime safety information;

g) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) supports the frequencies of Appendix **15**, concerning NBDP, being retained for the foreseeable future;

h) that the ITU Radiocommunication Sector is conducting ongoing studies to improve the efficient use of these bands,

noting

a) that different digital technologies have already been developed and are in use in the HF bands in several radiocommunication services;

b) that new maritime HF data transfer protocols have already been developed and are in operation using Appendix **17** frequencies and other frequencies outside Appendix **17**,

resolves

to invite WRC-11 to consider necessary changes to Appendix **17** in order to implement the use of new technology by MMS, in accordance with *invites ITU-R*,

invites ITU-R

to finalize studies currently ongoing:

– to identify any necessary modifications to the frequency table contained within Appendix **17**;

– to identify any necessary transition arrangements for the introduction of new digital technologies and any consequential changes to Appendix **17**;

– to recommend how digital technologies can be introduced while ensuring compliance with distress and safety requirements,

encourages Member States

when contributing to the implementation of this Resolution, to take into consideration other modifications to Articles and Appendices as necessary,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of IMO, the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities (IALA), the Comité International Radio-Maritime (CIRM), and International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC).

RESOLUTION 352 (WRC-03)

Use of the carrier frequencies 12 290 kHz and 16 420 kHz for safety-related calling to and from rescue coordination centres

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that this Conference modified No. **52.221A** to allow safety-related calling to and from rescue coordination centres on the carrier frequencies 12 290 kHz and 16 420 kHz;

b) that this limited safety-related calling function on these carrier frequencies will enhance the capability of those search and rescue organizations which maintain watch on these distress and safety frequencies to call vessels not utilizing the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS),

noting

a) that regulation IV/4.8 of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, requires that SOLAS ships, while at sea, be capable of transmitting and receiving general radiocommunications to and from shore-based radio systems or networks;

b) that general communications may include safety-related communications necessary for the safe operation of vessels,

further noting

that safety-related communications require adequate, effective and immediate access and protection,

recognizing

a) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) notes that distress, urgency and safety radiocommunications include, but are not limited to:

– transmissions of maritime safety information;

– distress calls and traffic;

– acknowledgment and relaying of distress calls;

– search and rescue coordination communications;

– ship movement service communications;

– communications related to the safe operation of ships;

– communications related to navigation;

– meteorological warnings;

– meteorological observations;

– ship position reports; and

– medical emergencies (e.g. MEDICO/MEDIVAC);

b) that distress, urgency and safety communications are defined in Articles **32** and **33**,

resolves

1 that the carrier frequencies 12 290 kHz and 16 420 kHz be used only for distress, urgency and safety communications, and safety-related calling limited to that to and from rescue coordination centres;

2 that safety-related calling be initiated only after determination that other communications are not present on these frequencies;

3 that safety-related calling be minimized and not cause interference to distress, urgency and safety communications,

invites administrations

to encourage the coast and ship stations under their jurisdiction to use digital selective calling techniques,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the IMO.

RESOLUTION 354 (WRC-07)

Distress and safety radiotelephony procedures for 2 182 kHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

noting

a) that all ships subject to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, are required to be fitted for the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS);

b) that some vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended, may not be making use of the techniques and frequencies of GMDSS prescribed in Chapter **VII** and may wish to continue using radiotelephony procedures for distress and safety communications on 2 182 kHz until such time as they are able to participate in the GMDSS;

c) that some administrations may have a need to maintain shore-based radiotelephony distress and safety services on 2 182 kHz so that vessels not subject to SOLAS, 1974, as amended, and not yet using the techniques and frequencies of GMDSS will be able to obtain assistance from these services until such time as they are able to participate in GMDSS,

considering

that there needs to be some recognized guidance for the use of radiotelephony on 2 182 kHz for distress and safety communications,

resolves

1 that ships, when in distress or when engaged in urgency or safety-related communications on 2 182 kHz, use the radiotelephony procedures contained in the Annex to this Resolution;

2 that coast stations, in order to maintain communication with non-GMDSS ships that are in distress or engaged in urgency or safety related communications on 2 182 kHz, use the radiotelephony procedures contained in the Annex to this Resolution.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 354 (WRC-07)

Distress and safety radiotelephony procedures for 2 182 kHz*

PART A1 – GENERAL

§ 1 The frequencies and techniques specified in this Resolution may be used in the maritime mobile service for stations[1] not required by national or international regulation to fit GMDSS equipment and for communications between those stations and aircraft. However, stations of the maritime mobile service, when additionally fitted with any of the equipment used by stations operating in conformity with the provisions specified in Chapter **VII**, should, when using that equipment, comply with the appropriate provisions of that Chapter.

§ 2 1) No provision of this Resolution prevents the use by a mobile station or mobile earth station in distress of any means at its disposal to attract attention, make known its position, and obtain help.

2) No provision of this Resolution prevents the use by stations on board aircraft or ships engaged in search and rescue operations, in exceptional circumstances, of any means at their disposal to assist a mobile station or mobile earth station in distress.

3) No provision of this Resolution prevents the use by a land station or coast earth station, in exceptional circumstances, of any means at its disposal to assist a mobile station or mobile earth station in distress (see also No. **4.16**).

§ 3 In cases of distress, urgency or safety, communications by radiotelephony should be made slowly and distinctly, each word being clearly pronounced to facilitate transcription.

§ 4 The abbreviations and signals of Recommendation ITU-R M.1172 and the Phonetic Alphabet and Figure Code in Appendix **14** should be used where applicable[2].

§ 5 Distress, urgency and safety communications may also be made using digital selective calling and satellite techniques and/or direct-printing telegraphy, in accordance with the provisions specified in Chapter **VII** and relevant ITU-R Recommendations.

---

* Distress and safety communications include distress, urgency and safety calls and messages.

1 These stations may include rescue coordination centres. The term “Rescue Coordination Centre” as defined in the International Convention on Maritime Search and Rescue (1979) refers to a unit responsible for promoting the efficient organization of search and rescue services and for coordinating the conduct of search and rescue operations within a search and rescue region.

2 The use of the Standard Marine Communication Phrases and, where language difficulties exist, the International Code of Signals, both published by the International Maritime Organization, is also recommended.

§ 6 Mobile stations[3] of the maritime mobile service may communicate for safety purposes with stations of the aeronautical mobile service. Such communications shall normally be made on the frequencies authorized, and under the conditions specified, in Section I of Part A2 (see also § 2 1)).

§ 7 Mobile stations of the aeronautical mobile service may communicate for distress and safety purposes with stations of the maritime mobile service in conformity with the provisions of this Resolution.

§ 8 Any aircraft required by national or international regulations to communicate for distress, urgency or safety purposes with stations of the maritime mobile service shall be capable of transmitting and receiving class J3E emissions when using the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz or the carrier frequency 4 125 kHz.

PART A2 – FREQUENCIES FOR DISTRESS AND SAFETY

Section I – Availability of frequencies

A – 2 182 kHz

§ 1 1) The carrier frequency 2 182 kHz is an international distress frequency for radiotelephony; it may be used by ship, aircraft and survival craft stations when requesting assistance from the maritime services. It is used for distress calls and distress traffic, for the urgency signal and urgency messages and for the safety signal. Safety messages should be transmitted, when practicable, on a working frequency, after a preliminary announcement on 2 182 kHz. The class of emission to be used for radiotelephony on the frequency 2 182 kHz shall be J3E. Distress traffic on 2 182 kHz following the reception of a distress call using digital selective calling should take into account that some shipping in the vicinity may not be able to receive this traffic.

2) If a distress message on the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz has not been acknowledged, the distress call and message may be transmitted again on a carrier frequency of 4 125 kHz or 6 215 kHz, as appropriate.

3) However, ship stations and aircraft which cannot transmit either on the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz or on the carrier frequencies 4 125 kHz or 6 215 kHz may use any other available frequency on which attention might be attracted.

---

[3] Mobile stations communicating with the stations of the aeronautical mobile (R) service in bands allocated to the aeronautical mobile (R) service shall conform to the provisions of the Regulations which relate to that service and, as appropriate, any special arrangements between the governments concerned by which the aeronautical mobile (R) service is regulated.

4) Coast stations using the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz for distress purposes and to send navigational warnings may transmit an audible alarm signal[4] of short duration for the purpose of attracting attention to the message which follows.

B – 4 125 kHz

§ 2 1) The carrier frequency 4 125 kHz is used to supplement the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz for distress and safety purposes and for call and reply. This frequency is also used for distress and safety traffic by radiotelephony.

2) The carrier frequency 4 125 kHz may be used by aircraft to communicate with stations of the maritime mobile service for distress and safety purposes, including search and rescue.

C – 6 215 kHz

§ 3 The carrier frequency 6 215 kHz is used to supplement the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz for distress and safety purposes and for call and reply. This frequency is also used for distress and safety traffic by radiotelephony.

Section II – Protection of distress and safety frequencies

A – General

§ 4 Test transmissions on any of the distress and safety frequencies described above shall be kept to a minimum and, wherever practicable, be carried out on artificial antennas or with reduced power.

§ 5 Before transmitting on any of the frequencies identified for distress and safety communications, a station shall listen on the frequency concerned to make sure that no distress transmission is being sent (see Recommendation ITU-R M.1171). This does not apply to stations in distress.

B – 2 182 kHz

§ 6 1) Except for transmissions authorized on the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz and on the frequencies 2 174.5 kHz, 2 177 kHz, 2 187.5 kHz and 2 189.5 kHz, all transmissions on the frequencies between 2 173.5 kHz and 2 190.5 kHz are forbidden (see also Appendix **15**).

2) To facilitate the reception of distress calls, all transmissions on 2 182 kHz should be kept to a minimum.

[4] Alarm signals may consist of transmissions of sinusoidal audio frequency tones 1 300 Hz, 2 200 Hz, or both. Different tone generation patterns may be used to signal the type of message which follows, and an alarm signal ending in a 10-second continuous tone could be used to identify a transmission by a coast station.

Section III – Watch on distress frequencies

A – 2 182 kHz

§ 7 1) Coast stations may maintain a watch on the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz if so directed by their Administration. Such assignments should be indicated in the List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations.

2) Ship stations not fitted with equipment compatible with the GMDSS are encouraged to keep the maximum watch practicable on the carrier frequency 2 182 kHz.

B – 4 125 kHz, 6 215 kHz

§ 8 Coast stations may maintain additional watch, as permitted, on the carrier frequencies 4 125 kHz and 6 215 kHz. Such assignments should be indicated in the List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations.

PART A3 – DISTRESS COMMUNICATIONS

Section I – General

§ 1 The general provisions for distress communications are found in Section I of Article **32** (see Nos. **32.1**, **32.3**, and **32.4**).

Section II – Distress signal, call and message

§ 2 The radiotelephone distress signal, call and message are described in Section II of Article **32** (see Nos. **32.13BA**, **32.9**, **32.13B**, **32.13C**, and **32.13D**).

Section III – Procedures

§ 3 After the transmission by radiotelephony of its distress message, the mobile station may be requested to transmit suitable signals, followed by its call sign or other identification, to permit direction-finding stations to determine its position. This request may be repeated at frequent intervals if necessary.

§ 4 1) The distress message, preceded by the distress call, shall be repeated at intervals until an answer is received.

2) The intervals shall be sufficiently long to allow time for replying stations, in their preparations, to start their sending apparatus.

§ 5 When the mobile station in distress receives no answer to a distress message sent on the distress frequency, the message may be repeated on any other available frequency on which attention might be attracted.

Section IV – Transmission of a distress relay message by a station not itself in distress

§ 6 The radiotelephone procedures for the transmission of a distress relay message by a station not itself in distress are found in Section II of Article **32** (see Nos. **32.16** to **32.19A** and **32.19D** to **32.19F**).

Section V – Receipt and acknowledgement of a distress message

§ 7 The procedures relating to the receipt and acknowledgement of a distress message are found in Section II of Article **32** (see Nos. **32.23**, **32.26**, **32.28**, **32.29**, **32.30** and **32.35**).

Section VI – Distress traffic

§ 8 The radiotelephone procedures relating to the distress traffic are found in Section III of Article **32** (see Nos. **32.39** to **32.42**, **32.45** to **32.47**, **32.49** to **32.52** and **32.54** to **32.59**).

§ 9 1) Every mobile station acknowledging receipt of a distress message shall, on the order of the person responsible for the ship, aircraft or other vehicle, transmit the following information in the order shown as soon as possible:

– its name;

– its position;

– the speed at which it is proceeding towards, and the approximate time it will take to reach, the mobile station in distress;

– additionally, if the position of the ship in distress appears doubtful, ship stations should also transmit, when available, the true bearing of the ship in distress.

2) Before transmitting the message specified in § 9 1), the station shall ensure that it will not interfere with the emissions of other stations better situated to render immediate assistance to the station in distress.

PART A4 – URGENCY AND SAFETY COMMUNICATIONS

Section I – Urgency communications

§ 1 The radiotelephone procedures for urgency communications are found in Sections I and II of Article **33** (see Nos. **33.1** to **33.7** and **33.8**, **33.8B** to **33.9A** and **33.11** to **33.16**).

Section II – Safety communications

§ 2 The radiotelephone procedures for safety communications are found in Sections I and IV of Article **33** (see Nos. **33.31**, **33.31C**, **33.32**, **33.34** to **33.35** and **33.38B**).

RESOLUTION 355 (WRC-07)

Content, formats and periodicity of the maritime related service publications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

noting

a) that Appendix **16** specifies the documents with which stations on board ships and aircraft shall be provided;

b) that Article **20** specifies the titles, content, preparation, and amendment of service publications and on-line information systems;

c) that stations in the maritime mobile service have an increasing requirement to have up-to-date information in the publications and on-line information systems,

noting further

a) that administrations have indicated a need for establishing a functional series of service publications which will enhance safety on board ships;

b) that this Conference has modified the relevant provisions, concerning the preparation and amendments of service publications and on-line information systems in Article **20**;

c) that this Conference decided to merge certain Lists, previously mentioned in Article **20**;

d) that this Conference also decided to modify the carriage requirements as stipulated in Appendix **16**;

e) that there will be a transition period until 31 December 2010, during which the Radiocommunication Bureau will continue to issue service publications in their prior format,

recognizing

a) that this Conference has adopted modifications with regard to the titles and content of List IV as well as of List V of the service publications;

b) that administrations may exempt ships from the carriage of the documents required in Appendix **16 (Rev.WRC-07)**,

resolves to invite all administrations

1 to submit regular updates of the information for recording in the ITU maritime databases in accordance with provision **20.16**;

2 to assist in enhancing maritime safety by contributing to the continued work with regard to the content, formats and periodicity of the maritime service publications,

invites ITU-R

1 to conduct studies with the active participation of the Radiocommunication Bureau in view of developing a functional series of maritime Service Publications (Lists IV and V), which will enhance safety of life at sea;

2 to complete these studies by 31 December 2010 (see *noting further e)*);

3 to conduct studies with a view to developing a practice-oriented and user-friendly format of the current Manual for Use by the Maritime Mobile and Maritime Mobile-Satellite Services;

4 to periodically update the text of this Manual to cover the latest developments,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to publish the maritime service publications in the current format in the transition period until 31 December 2010, and after that date in the new format in the six official languages of the Union in accordance with *invites ITU-R* 2 above;

2 to report to the next World Radiocommunication Conference on further rationalization of Lists IV and V and the Manual, and to include the results of the studies on further rationalization of these documents in the Report of the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the International Maritime Organization (IMO), the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) and the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities (IALA).

RESOLUTION 356 (WRC-07)

ITU maritime service information registration

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

noting

a) that the provisions of No. **20.16** of Article **20** require administrations to notify the Radiocommunication Bureau of operational information contained in the List of Coast Stations and Special Service Stations (List IV) and List of Ship Stations and Maritime Mobile Service Identity Assignments (List V);

b) that this Conference has modified Article **19** to provide for the assignment of a maritime mobile service identity (MMSI) to search and rescue aircraft, automatic identification system (AIS) aids to navigation, and craft associated with a parent ship;

c) that the provisions of No. **20.15**, however, give the Radiocommunication Bureau authority to change the content and form of this information in consultation with administrations;

d) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) has already identified, in Resolution A.887(21) adopted on 25 November 1999, information to be included in search and rescue databases, including:

– vessel identification number (IMO number or national registration number);

– Maritime mobile service identity (MMSI);

– radio call sign;

– name, address and telephone number and, if applicable, telefax number of emergency contact person ashore;

– alternative 24-hour emergency telephone number;

– capacity for persons on board (passengers and crew),

resolves to instruct the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to maintain online information systems to allow rescue coordination centres to have immediate access to this information on a 24-hour per day, 7-day per week basis,

invites ITU-R

to consult with administrations, IMO, the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities (IALA), and the International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) to identify elements for incorporation in ITU online information systems,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to IMO, ICAO, IALA, and IHO.

RESOLUTION 357 (WRC-07)

Consideration of regulatory provisions and spectrum allocations for use by enhanced maritime safety systems for ships and ports

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that there is increasing need, on a global basis, to enhance ship and cargo identification, tracking, and surveillance as well as ship and port security and safety;

b) that the International Maritime Organization (IMO) adoption of the International Ship and Port Facility Security (ISPS) Code, specifically Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS) Convention, Chapter XI-2, on special measures to enhance maritime security, requires long-range spectrum dependent systems;

c) that the introduction of the shipborne universal automatic identification system (AIS) supports maritime safety and offers potential enhancements to ship and port security and maritime safety;

d) that studies within ITU-R indicate that additional AIS channels in the mobile-satellite service may be required to enhance and accommodate global ship tracking capabilities;

e) that advanced maritime HF data systems may be used to deliver security alerts and safety information to, and to receive similar information and long-range identification and tracking (LRIT) information from, ships in global regions not under satellite coverage;

f) that use of existing maritime mobile allocations, where practicable, for ship and port security and enhanced maritime safety would be preferable, particularly where international interoperability is required;

g) that additional studies within ITU-R on spectrum efficient radio technologies may be required to resolve these multifaceted spectrum requirements;

h) that requirements for ITU Service Publications and specific revisions of content, format and structure of those publications may be required to support maritime security and safety systems,

noting

a) Resolution **342 (Rev.WRC-2000)**: "New technologies to provide improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service";

b) Resolution **351 (Rev.WRC-07)**: "Review of the frequency and channel arrangements in the HF bands allocated to the maritime mobile service contained in Appendix **17** with a view to improving efficiency through the use of new digital technology by the maritime mobile service",

recognizing

a) that there is a global requirement to enhance maritime safety, ship and port security via spectrum dependent systems;

b) that existing and future technologies for Ship Security and Alerting Systems (SSAS), introduced as a result of the ISPS Code referred to in *considering b)*, will require long-range communication links and networks between mobile ships and shore-based stations;

c) that due to the importance of these radio links in ensuring the safe and secure operation of international shipping and commerce, they must be resilient to interference;

d) that studies will be required to provide a basis for considering regulatory changes, including additional allocations and recommendations, designed to accommodate spectrum requirements of ship and port security, consistent with the protection of incumbent services;

e) that the ITU and international standards organizations have initiated related studies on spectrum efficient technology,

resolves

1 that WRC-11 consider amendments to provisions of the Radio Regulations necessary to provide for the operation of ship and port security and maritime safety systems;

2 that WRC-11 consider additional allocations to the maritime mobile service below 1 GHz to support the requirements identified in *resolves* 1;

3 that WRC-11 consider additional allocations to the maritime mobile-satellite service in frequency bands allocated to the maritime mobile service between 156 and 162.025 MHz to support the requirements identified in *resolves* 1,

invites ITU-R

1 to conduct, as a matter of urgency, studies to determine the spectrum requirements and potential frequency bands suitable to support ship and port security and enhanced maritime safety systems;

2 that the studies referred to in *invites ITU-R* 1 should include the applicability of spectrum efficient technologies, and sharing and compatibility studies with services already having allocations in potential spectrum for ship safety and port security systems,

invites

all members of the Radiocommunication Sector, the International Maritime Organization (IMO), International Organization for Standardization (ISO), International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), and the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities (IALA) to contribute to these studies,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of IMO, ISO, IEC, IALA and other international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 405

Relating to the use of frequencies of the aeronautical mobile (R) service[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that WARC-Aer2 adopted and developed a new Frequency Allotment Plan for the use of HF channels for the aeronautical mobile (R) service (Appendix **27**);

b) that air operations are subject to continuous changes;

c) that these changes require attention by the administrations concerned; but

d) that, in seeking to satisfy new communication requirements, no decision should be taken that will prevent or handicap the coordinated utilization of those high frequency aeronautical mobile (R) band allotments as prescribed in the Plan;

e) that the families of frequencies allotted to the major world air route areas (MWARAs), regional and domestic air route areas (RDARAs) and sub-areas and VOLMET areas have been chosen considering propagation conditions which allow for the selection of the most suitable frequencies for the distances involved;

f) that specific steps should be taken to ensure that the correct order of frequency is used;

g) that it is essential to distribute the communication traffic load as uniformly as possible over the frequencies available;

h) that frequencies have been allotted for worldwide use,

resolves

that administrations, individually or in collaboration, take the necessary steps:

1 to make as great a use as possible of higher frequencies in order to lessen the load on the HF aeronautical mobile (R) bands;

2 to make as great a use as possible of antennas of appropriate directivity and efficiency in order to minimize the possibilities of mutual interference within an area or between areas;

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Resolution.

3 to coordinate the use of families of frequencies necessary for a given route segment in accordance with the technical principles in Appendix **27** and in the light of the propagation data available, to ensure that the most appropriate frequencies are used with an aircraft at a given distance from the aeronautical station providing service over the route segment concerned;

4 to improve operating techniques and procedures and to use equipment which will make it possible to attain the highest possible efficiency in handling air-ground HF communications;

5 to collect precise data on the operation of their HF communication systems, particularly data having a bearing on technical and operating standards, so as to facilitate re-examination of the Plan;

6 to establish, through regional arrangements, the best method of providing the communications required for any new long-distance international or regional air operation which is not or cannot be accommodated within the system of MWARA and RDARA, in such a manner as not to cause harmful interference to the utilization of frequencies as prescribed in the Plan.

RESOLUTION 413 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of the band 108-117.975 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) the current allocation of the frequency band 108-117.975 MHz to the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS);

b) the current requirements of FM broadcasting systems operating in the frequency band 87-108 MHz;

c) that digital sound broadcasting systems are capable of operating in the frequency band at about 87-108 MHz as described in Recommendation ITU-R BS.1114;

d) the need for the aeronautical community to provide additional services by enhancing navigation systems through a radiocommunication data link;

e) the need for the broadcasting community to provide digital terrestrial sound broadcasting services;

f) that this allocation was made by this Conference in the knowledge that studies are ongoing with respect to the technical characteristics, sharing criteria and sharing capabilities;

g) the need for the aeronautical community to provide additional services for radio-communications, relating to safety and regularity of flight, in the band 112-117.975 MHz;

h) that this Conference has modified the allocation of the band 112-117.975 MHz to the aeronautical mobile (R) services (AM(R)S) in order to make available this frequency band for new AM(R)S systems, and in doing so enabled further technical developments, investments and deployment;

i) that the frequency band 117.975-137 MHz currently allocated to the AM(R)S is reaching saturation in certain areas of the world;

j) that this new allocation is intended to support the introduction of applications and concepts in air traffic management which are data intensive, and which could support data links that carry safety-critical aeronautical data;

k) that additional information is needed about the new technologies which will be used, the amount of spectrum required, the characteristics and sharing capabilities/conditions, and that therefore studies are urgently required on which AM(R)S systems will be used, the amount of spectrum required, the characteristics and the conditions for sharing with ARNS systems,

recognizing

a) that precedence must be given to the ARNS operating in the frequency band 108-117.975 MHz;

b) that, in accordance with Annex 10 of the Convention of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) on international civil aviation, all aeronautical systems must meet standards and recommended practices (SARPs) requirements;

c) that within ITU-R, compatibility criteria between FM broadcasting systems operating in the frequency band 87-108 MHz and the ARNS operating in the frequency band 108-117.975 MHz already exist, as indicated in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R SM.1009;

d) that all compatibility issues between FM broadcasting systems and ICAO standard ground-based systems for the transmission of radionavigation-satellite differential correction signals have been addressed,

noting

a) that aeronautical systems are converging towards a radiocommunication data link environment to support aeronautical navigation and surveillance functions, which need to be accommodated in existing radio spectrum;

b) that some administrations are planning to introduce digital sound broadcasting systems in the frequency band at about 87-108 MHz;

c) that no compatibility criteria currently exist between FM broadcasting systems operating in the frequency band 87-108 MHz and the planned additional aeronautical systems in the adjacent band 108-117.975 MHz using aircraft transmission;

d) that no compatibility criteria currently exist between digital sound broadcasting systems capable of operating in the frequency band at about 87-108 MHz and aeronautical services in the band 108-117.975 MHz,

resolves

1 that any aeronautical mobile (R) service systems operating in the band 108-117.975 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from ARNS systems operating in accordance with international aeronautical standards;

2 that any AM(R)S systems planned to operate in the frequency band 108-117.975 MHz shall, as a minimum, meet the FM broadcasting immunity requirements contained in Annex 10 of the ICAO Convention on International Civil Aviation for existing aeronautical radionavigation systems operating in this frequency band;

3 that AM(R)S systems operating in the band 108-117.975 MHz shall place no additional constraints on the broadcasting service or cause harmful interference to stations operating in the bands allocated to the broadcasting service in the frequency band 87-108 MHz and No. **5.43** does not apply to systems identified in *recognizing d)*;

4 that frequencies below 112 MHz shall not be used for AM(R)S systems excluding the ICAO systems identified in *recognizing d)*;

5 that any AM(R)S operating in the frequency band 108-117.975 MHz shall meet SARPs requirements published in Annex 10 of the ICAO Convention on International Civil Aviation;

6 that WRC-11 should consider, based on the results of the ITU-R studies mentioned under *invites ITU-R,* any further regulatory measure to facilitate introduction of new AM(R)S systems,

invites ITU-R

1 to study any compatibility issues between the broadcasting and AM(R) services that may arise from the introduction of AM(R)S systems in the band 112-117.975 MHz, and to develop new or revised ITU-R Recommendations as appropriate;

2 to study any compatibility issues between the broadcasting and AM(R) services in the band 108-117.975 MHz that may arise from the introduction of appropriate digital sound broadcasting systems, described in Recommendation ITU-R BS.1114, and to develop new or revised ITU-R Recommendations as appropriate;

3 to report to WRC-11 on the results of these studies,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 416 (WRC-07)

Use of the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz by an aeronautical mobile telemetry application in the mobile service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that there is a need to provide global spectrum to the mobile service for wideband aeronautical mobile telemetry (AMT) systems;

b) that studies have been conducted within ITU-R concerning the sharing and compatibility of AMT for flight testing with other services in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz;

c) that based on the results of these studies, in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz, technical and operational measures applied to AMT for flight testing purposes facilitate sharing with other services and applications in these bands;

d) that spectrum efficiency is enhanced in situations where new applications can be implemented compatibly in bands that are heavily occupied;

e) that there is extensive deployment of fixed-satellite service (FSS) earth stations in the band 5 925-6 425 MHz and to a lesser extent in the band 6 425-6 700 MHz;

f) that there is extensive deployment of fixed service stations in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz;

g) that in certain locations, availability of spectrum will be limited due to its extensive use by the various services while in other locations, this may not be the case;

h) that there are various techniques which can enhance sharing between co-primary services such as frequency or geographic separation;

i) that WRC-07 has adopted Nos. **5.440A** and **5.457C**,

recognizing

a) that the bands 4 400-4 500 MHz and 4 800-4 940 MHz are allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis;

b) that the band 4 500-4 800 MHz is allocated to the fixed, fixed-satellite (space-to-Earth), and mobile services on a co-primary basis;

c) that the band 4 800-4 990 MHz is allocated to the radio astronomy service on a secondary basis worldwide and that No. **5.149** applies;

d) that the band 4 825-4 835 MHz referred to in *recognizing c)* is allocated on a primary basis to radio astronomy in Argentina, Australia and Canada (see No. **5.443**);

e) that No. **5.442** applies to AMT for flight testing operations in the band 4 825-4 835 MHz;

f) that the band 5 925-6 700 MHz is allocated to the fixed, fixed-satellite (Earth-to-space), and mobile services on a co-primary basis;

g) that the use of the band 4 500-4 800 MHz (space-to-Earth) by the FSS shall be in accordance with the provisions of Appendix **30B** (**Rev.WRC-07**) (see No. **5.441**);

h) that provisions for the coordination of terrestrial and space services exist in the Radio Regulations,

resolves

1 that, in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz, administrations authorizing AMT for flight test purposes per Nos **5.440A**, **5.442** and **5.457C** shall utilize the criteria set forth below:

– emissions limited to transmission from aircraft stations only, see No. **1.83**;

– in these bands, AMT in the aeronautical mobile service is not considered an application of a safety service as per No. **1.59**;

– the peak e.i.r.p. density of a telemetry transmitter antenna shall not exceed −2.2 dB(W/MHz);

– transmissions limited to designated flight test areas, where flight test areas are airspace designated by administrations for flight testing;

– if operation of AMT aircraft stations is planned within 500 km of the territory of an administration in which the band 4 825-4 835 MHz is allocated to radio astronomy on a primary basis (see No. **5.443**), consult with that administration to determine whether any special measures are needed to prevent interference to their radio astronomy observations;

– in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz, bilateral coordination of transmitting AMT aircraft stations with respect to receiving fixed or mobile stations must be effected if the AMT aircraft station will operate within 450 km of the receiving fixed or mobile stations of another administration. The following procedure should be used to establish whether a fixed or mobile service receiver within 450 km of the flight test area will receive an acceptable level of interference:

  – determine if the receiving fixed or mobile station's antenna main-beam axis, out to a distance of 450 km, passes within 12 km of the designated area used by transmitting AMT aircraft stations, where this distance is measured orthogonally from the main-beam axis projection on the Earth's surface to the nearest boundary of the projection of the flight test area on the Earth's surface;

  – if the main-beam axis does not intersect the flight test area or any point within the 12 km offset, the interference could be accepted. Otherwise, further bilateral coordination discussions would be needed;

2 that administrations authorizing AMT per Nos **5.440A**, **5.442** and **5.457C** in the bands 4 400-4 940 MHz and 5 925-6 700 MHz require the use of technical and/or operational measures on AMT where appropriate to facilitate sharing with other services and applications in these bands.

RESOLUTION 417 (WRC-07)

Use of the band 960-1 164 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that this Conference has allocated the band 960 to 1 164 MHz to the aeronautical mobile (R) service (AM(R)S) in order to make available this frequency band for new AM(R)S systems, and in doing so enabled further technical developments, investments and deployment;

b) the current allocation of the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz to the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS);

c) the use of the band 960-1 215 MHz by the ARNS is reserved on a worldwide basis for the operation and development of airborne electronic aids to air navigation and any directly associated ground-based facilities per No. **5.328**;

d) that new technologies are being developed to support communications and air navigation, including airborne and ground surveillance applications;

e) that this new allocation is intended to support the introduction of applications and concepts in air traffic management which are data intensive and which could support data links that carry safety critical aeronautical data;

f) that in countries listed in No. **5.312** the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz is also used by systems in the ARNS for which standards and recommended practices (SARPs) have not been developed nor published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO);

g) that, furthermore, the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz is also used by a non-ICAO system operating in the ARNS that has characteristics similar to those of ICAO standard distance measuring equipment;

h) that this allocation was made knowing that studies are ongoing with respect to the technical characteristics, sharing criteria and sharing capabilities;

i) that the frequency band 117.975-137 MHz currently allocated to the AM(R)S is reaching saturation within certain areas of the world, therefore that band would not be available to support additional medium- and long-range data communications;

j) that, additional information is needed on the new technologies which will be used, other than the AM(R)S system identified in *recognizing c)*, the amount of spectrum required, and the characteristics and sharing capabilities/conditions. Therefore, studies are urgently required on which AM(R)S systems will be used, the amount of spectrum required and the characteristics and conditions for sharing with ARNS systems,

recognizing

a) that precedence must be given to the ARNS operating in the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz;

b) that Annex 10 of the Convention of the ICAO contains SARPs for aeronautical radionavigation and radiocommunication systems used by international civil aviation;

c) that all compatibility issues between the ICAO Standard Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) and other systems which operate in the same frequency range, excluding the system identified in *considering f),* have been addressed;

d) that in the frequency band 1 024-1 164 MHz the sharing conditions are more complex than in the band 960-1 024 MHz,

noting

that, excluding the system identified in *recognizing c)*, no compatibility criteria currently exist between AM(R)S systems proposed for operations in the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz and the existing aeronautical systems in the band,

resolves

1 that any AM(R)S system operating in the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz shall meet SARPs requirements published in Annex 10 of the ICAO Convention on International Civil Aviation;

2 that any AM(R)S systems operating in the band 960-1 164 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, and shall not impose constraints on the operation and planned development of aeronautical radionavigation systems in the same band;

3 that compatibility studies between AM(R)S systems operating in the band 960-1 164 MHz and ARNS systems in *considering f)* and *g)* need to be conducted to develop sharing conditions to ensure that the conditions of *resolves* 2 are satisfied, and that ITU-R Recommendations are developed as appropriate;

4 that the result of the studies pursuant to *resolves* 3 shall be reported to WRC-11 and the decision should be taken by WRC-11 to review, if appropriate, regulatory provisions in *resolves* 2 taking into account protection requirements of ARNS systems identified in *considering f)* and *g)* and the need for global facilitation of AM(R)S operating in accordance with ICAO standards;

5 that frequencies in the band 960-1 164 MHz shall not be used by an AM(R)S system, except for the AM(R)S system identified in *recognizing c)*, until all potential compatibility issues with the ARNS and, as necessary, the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) in the adjacent band have been resolved, also taking into account *recognizing d)*,

invites

administrations and ICAO, for the purposes of conducting the ITU-R studies mentioned in *resolves* 3 and 5, to provide to ITU-R the technical and operational characteristics of systems involved,

invites ITU-R

1 to conduct studies in accordance with *resolves* 3 and 5 on operational and technical means to facilitate sharing between AM(R)S systems operating in the band 960-1 164 MHz and ARNS systems identified in *considering f)* and *g)*;

2 to conduct studies in accordance with *resolves* 5 on operational and technical means to facilitate sharing between AM(R)S systems operating in the band 960-1 164 MHz and the RNSS operating in the band 1 164-1 215 MHz;

3 to report the results of the studies to WRC-11,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 418 (WRC-07)

Use of the band 5 091-5 250 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service for telemetry applications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that there is a need to provide global spectrum to the mobile service for wideband aeronautical telemetry systems;

b) that the operation of aircraft stations is subject to national and international rules and regulations;

c) that the frequency band 5 030-5 150 MHz is allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis;

d) that the allocation of the 5 091-5 250 MHz band to the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service;

e) that the band 5 000-5 150 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**;

f) that this Conference allocated the band 5 091-5 150 MHz to the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis subject to No. **5.444B**;

g) that the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is also allocated to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service on a primary basis;

h) that this Conference additionally allocated the band 5 150-5 250 MHz to the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis, subject to No. **5.446C**;

i) that aeronautical mobile telemetry (AMT) in the aeronautical mobile service is not considered an application of a safety service as defined in No. **1.59**,

noting

a) that results of studies conducted in accordance with Resolution **230 (Rev.WRC-03)** show the feasibility of using the band 5 091-5 250 MHz for the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis, limited to transmissions of telemetry for flight testing, under certain conditions and arrangements;

b) that the identification by ITU-R of technical and operational requirements for aircraft stations operating in the band 5 091-5 250 MHz should prevent unacceptable interference to other services;

c) that the band 5 091-5 150 MHz is to be used for the operation of the international standard microwave landing system (MLS) for precision approach and landing;

d) that MLS can be protected through the implementation of an adequate separation distance between an aeronautical mobile service transmitter to support telemetry and MLS receivers;

e) that ITU-R studies have generated methods, described in Report ITU-R M.2118, for ensuring compatibility and sharing between the aeronautical mobile service and the fixed-satellite service operating in the band 5 091-5 250 MHz, which result in interference of no more than 1% $\Delta T_{satellite}/T_{satellite}$ from AMT aircraft station transmissions to fixed-satellite service spacecraft receivers;

f) that a method to facilitate sharing between MLS and aeronautical mobile service is contained in Recommendation ITU-R M.1829;

g) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1828 provides the technical and operational requirements for aircraft stations of the aeronautical mobile service, limited to transmissions of telemetry for flight testing;

h) that ITU-R compatibility studies have been performed for AMT, limited to flight testing; such application is for the testing of aircraft during non-commercial flights for the purpose of development, evaluation and/or certification of aircraft in airspace designated by administrations for this purpose,

recognizing

a) that precedence is to be given to MLS in accordance with No. **5.444** in the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz;

b) that studies have been performed within ITU-R concerning the sharing and compatibility of AMT for flight testing with other services in the band 5 091-5 250 MHz;

c) that Resolutions **419 (WRC-07)** and **748 (WRC-07)** also provide guidance on the use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service,

resolves

1 that administrations choosing to implement AMT shall limit AMT applications to those identified in *noting h)* in the band 5 091-5 250 MHz, and shall utilize the criteria set forth in Annex 1 to this Resolution;

2 that the pfd limits in § 3 and 4 of Annex 1 to this Resolution which protect terrestrial services may be exceeded on the territory of any country whose administration has so agreed,

invites ITU-R

to continue studying the conditions and arrangements stipulated in *noting a)*.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 418 (WRC-07)

1 In implementing aeronautical mobile telemetry (AMT), administrations shall utilize the following criteria:

– limit transmissions to those from aircraft stations only (see No. **1.83**);

– the operation of aeronautical telemetry systems within the band 5 091-5 150 MHz shall be coordinated with administrations operating microwave landing systems (MLS) and whose territory is located within a distance D of the AMT flight area, where D is determined by the following equation:

$$D = 43 + 10^{(127.55 - 20\log(f) + E)/20}$$

where:

D: separation distance (km) triggering the coordination

f: minimum frequency (MHz) used by the AMT system

E: peak equivalent isotropically radiated power density (dBW in 150 kHz) of the aircraft transmitter.

2 For the protection of the fixed-satellite service (FSS), a telemetry aircraft station in the band 5 091-5 250 MHz shall be operated in such a manner that one aircraft station transmitter power flux-density be limited to −198.9 dB(W/(m^2 · Hz)) at the FSS satellite orbit for spacecraft using Earth coverage receive antennas. Such pfd limit per aircraft transmitter has been derived under the assumptions that the FSS satellite orbit is at 1 414 km altitude and that a total of 21 co-frequency AMT transmitters operate concurrently within the field of view of the FSS satellite. In case of fewer than 21 AMT co-frequency transmitters operating simultaneously in view of the satellite, the transmitter power can be adjusted so as not to exceed an aggregate pfd at the satellite of −185.7 dB(W/(m^2 · Hz)), which corresponds to a $\Delta T_{satellite}/T_{satellite}$ of 1%.

3 For the protection of the mobile service in the 5 150-5 250 MHz frequency band, the maximum pfd produced at the surface of the Earth by emissions from an aircraft station of an aeronautical mobile service system, limited to transmissions of telemetry for flight testing, shall not exceed: −79.4 dB(W/(m^2 · 20 MHz)) – $G_r(\theta)$.

$G_r(\theta)$ represents the mobile service receiver antenna gain versus elevation angle θ and is defined as follows:

Wireless access system elevation antenna pattern

Elevation angle, θ (degrees)	**Gain $G_r(\theta)$ (dBi)**
45 < θ ≤ 90	−4
35 < θ ≤ 45	−3
0 < θ ≤ 35	0
−15 < θ ≤ 0	−1
−30 < θ ≤ −15	−4
−60 < θ ≤ −30	−6
−90 < θ ≤ −60	−5

4 For the protection of the aeronautical mobile (R) service (AM(R)S) in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz, the maximum pfd produced at the surface of the Earth, where AM(R)S may be deployed in accordance with No. **5.444B**, by emissions from an aircraft station of an aeronautical mobile service system, limited to transmissions of telemetry for flight testing, shall not exceed: −89.4 dB(W/(m^2 · 20 MHz)) – $G_r(\theta)$.

$G_r(\theta)$ represents the mobile service receiver antenna gain versus elevation angle θ and is defined as follows:

$$G_r(\theta) = \max\left[G_1(\theta), G_2(\theta)\right]$$

$$G_1(\theta) = 6 - 12\left(\frac{\theta}{27}\right)^2$$

$$G_2(\theta) = -6 + 10\log\left[\left(\max\left\{\frac{|\theta|}{27}, 1\right\}\right)^{-1.5} + 0.7\right]$$

where:

$G(\theta)$: gain relative to an isotropic antenna (dBi)

(θ): absolute value of the elevation angle relative to the angle of maximum gain (degrees).

RESOLUTION 419 (WRC-07)

Considerations for use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service for certain aeronautical applications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) the current allocation of the 5 091-5 150 MHz band to the fixed-satellite (FSS) (Earth-to-space), which is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service;

b) the current allocation of the frequency band 5 000-5 150 MHz to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, and the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS);

c) that this Conference allocated the band 5 091-5 150 MHz to the aeronautical mobile service (AMS) on a primary basis, subject to No. **5.444B**,

recognizing

a) that precedence is to be given to the microwave landing system (MLS) in accordance with No. **5.444** in the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz;

b) that Resolution **114 (Rev.WRC-03)** applies to the sharing conditions between FSS and ARNS in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz;

c) that Resolutions **418 (WRC-07)** and **748 (WRC-07)** also provide guidance on the use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by AMS,

noting

that Recommendation ITU-R M.1827 describes methods for ensuring compatibility between AMS for aeronautical security applications and FSS operating in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz,

resolves

1 that the use of AMS for aeronautical applications described in *noting* above is limited to stations providing confidential radiocommunications intended for systems used in response to interruption of aircraft operations that have not been permitted by the appropriate authorities;

2 that AMS stations for such aeronautical applications shall be designed to operate in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R M.1827;

3 that administrations, in making assignments, shall ensure that requirements for the aeronautical mobile (R) service take precedence over those of AMS for applications described in *resolves* 1 and 2 above.

RESOLUTION 420 (WRC-07)

Consideration of the frequency bands between 5 000 and 5 030 MHz for aeronautical mobile (R) service surface applications at airports

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) the current allocation of the frequency band 5 000-5 010 MHz to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service (AMS(R)S), subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS) and the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) (Earth-to-space);

b) the current allocation of the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz to AMS(R)S, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, ARNS and RNSS (space-to-Earth and space-to-space);

c) the current allocation of the frequency band 4 990-5 000 MHz to the radio astronomy service;

d) that this Conference has additionally allocated the band 5 091-5 150 MHz to the aeronautical mobile (R) service (AM(R)S), for use by systems operating in accordance with international aeronautical standards, limited to surface applications at airports;

e) that the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) is in the process of identifying the technical and operating characteristics of such AM(R)S systems, and that initial estimates for associated spectrum requirements are approximately 60-100 MHz in some portion of the band 5 000-5 150 MHz (Report ITU-R M.2120);

f) that the band 5 091-5 150 MHz may not provide sufficient spectrum capacity to satisfy the requirement identified in *considering e)*, and therefore additional spectrum may be required;

g) that the protection requirements for the radio astronomy service are given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.769,

recognizing

a) that the RNSS allocations in these bands were made at WRC-2000;

b) that RNSS currently operates in the Earth-to-space direction in the band 5 000-5 010 MHz, and needs access to the space-to-Earth allocation in 5 010-5 030 MHz for service and feeder links in the longer term;

c) that RNSS and AM(R)S systems planned in the 5 GHz range are still evolving, and that technical characteristics and operational parameters for these systems have not been fully established within ITU-R;

d) that protection of RNSS and the radio astronomy service must first be demonstrated before additional services can be allocated in the bands between 5 000-5 030 MHz;

e) that, currently, there are no agreed studies within ITU-R for AM(R)S to ensure protection of RNSS and the radio astronomy service,

resolves

1 that ITU-R investigate, with priority, AM(R)S spectrum requirements for surface applications in the 5 GHz range, in order to determine if they can be fulfilled in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz;

2 that ITU-R further investigate, if necessary, the feasibility of an allocation for AM(R)S for surface applications at airports, study the technical and operational issues relating to the protection of RNSS in the bands between 5 000 and 5 030 MHz and of the radio astronomy service in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz from AM(R)S, and develop appropriate Recommendations;

3 that WRC-11 consider results of the above studies and take appropriate actions,

invites

1 administrations and ICAO to supply technical and operational characteristics for AM(R)S necessary for compatibility studies, and to participate actively in the studies;

2 administrations to supply technical and operational characteristics and protection criteria for RNSS necessary for compatibility studies, and to participate actively in the studies,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 421 (WRC-07)

Consideration of appropriate regulatory provisions for the operation of unmanned aircraft systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that worldwide use of unmanned aircraft systems (UAS) is expected to increase significantly in the near future;

b) that unmanned aircraft need to operate seamlessly with piloted aircraft in non-segregated airspaces and that there is a need to provide globally harmonized spectrum for that purpose;

c) that the safe flight operation of UAS needs reliable communication links and associated spectrum, especially for the remote pilot to command and control the flight and to relay the air traffic control communications;

d) that the safe flight operation of UAS necessitates advanced techniques to detect and track nearby aircraft, terrain and obstacles to navigation in order to ensure the UAS avoids these objects in a manner equivalent to that achieved by manned aircraft;

e) that satellite radiocommunications are part of UAS operations, in particular to relay transmissions beyond the horizon and maintain safety of flight;

f) that there is a need to protect existing services;

g) that some applications of UAS involve high data-rate payload transmissions from the aircraft to remote stations,

recognizing

a) that UAS will operate in the same environment as manned aircraft;

b) that some UAS will operate below or above the current conventional air traffic of manned aircraft, including in specific environments not accessible to manned aircraft, such as volcanoes, hurricanes, poisonous or electromagnetic zones;

c) that studies are required to provide a basis for considering regulatory changes, including additional allocations, to accommodate spectrum requirements of UAS consistent with the protection of incumbent services;

d) that any new allocation should not place undue constraints on services to which the frequency bands are allocated;

e) that this agenda item is not intended to be used to identify bands for UAS use, but rather only to propose, as necessary, new allocations or modifications to existing allocations to accommodate UAS,

resolves

that WRC-11 consider, based on the results of ITU-R studies:

1 the spectrum requirements and possible regulatory actions, including additional allocations, to support the remote pilot in commanding and controlling the unmanned aircraft systems and in relaying the air traffic control communications, as mentioned in *considering c)*;

2 the spectrum requirements and possible regulatory actions, including additional allocations, to support the safe operation of unmanned aircraft systems not covered by *resolves* 1, as mentioned in *considering d)*,

invites ITU-R

1 to conduct in time for WRC-11 the necessary studies leading to technical, regulatory and operational recommendations to the Conference, enabling that Conference to decide on appropriate allocations for the operation of UAS;

2 that the studies referred to in *invites ITU-R* 1 should include sharing and compatibility studies with services already having allocations in those bands;

3 to produce a report or a recommendation, as appropriate, on how to accommodate the radiocommunication requirements for UAS payloads,

further invites

the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), the International Air Transport Association (IATA), administrations and other organizations concerned to participate in the studies identified in *invites ITU-R* above,

requests the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 506 (Rev.WRC-97)

Use by space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service operating in the 12 GHz frequency bands allocated to the broadcasting-satellite service of the geostationary-satellite orbit and no other

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that a Plan designating frequency assignments in the above-mentioned frequency bands and positions in the geostationary-satellite orbit was adopted by WARC SAT-77 for Regions 1 and 3;

b) that a similar Plan for Region 2 was adopted by the Regional Administrative Conference for the Planning of the Broadcasting-Satellite Service in Region 2 (Geneva, 1983);

c) that the Plans referred to in *considering a)* and *b)* above were consolidated in Appendix **30** at WARC Orb-85;

d) that the Plans in Appendices **30** and **30A** for Regions 1 and 3 have been modified by this Conference,

e) that the operation of the broadcasting-satellite service in the frequency bands concerned in orbits other than the geostationary-satellite orbit might be incompatible with the Plans referred to in *considering a), b)* and *d)* above,

resolves

that administrations shall ensure that their space stations in the broadcasting-satellite service in these frequency bands are operated in the geostationary-satellite orbit and no other.

RESOLUTION 507 (Rev.WRC-03)

Establishment of agreements and associated plans for the broadcasting-satellite service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that it is important to make the best possible use of the geostationary-satellite orbit and of the frequency bands allocated to the broadcasting-satellite service;

b) that the great number of receiving installations using such directional antennas as could be set up for a broadcasting-satellite service may be an obstacle to changing the location of space stations in that service on the geostationary-satellite orbit, as of the date of their being brought into use;

c) that satellite broadcasts may create harmful interference over a large area of the Earth's surface;

d) that the other services with allocations in the same band need to use the band before the broadcasting-satellite service is set up,

resolves

1 that stations in the broadcasting-satellite service shall be established and operated in accordance with agreements and associated plans adopted by world or regional administrative conferences, and/or world or regional radiocommunication conferences, as the case may be, in which all the administrations concerned and the administrations whose services are liable to be affected may participate;

2 that during the period before the entry into force of such agreements and associated plans the administrations and the Radiocommunication Bureau shall apply the procedure contained in Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)**,

invites the Council

to keep under review the question of world radiocommunication conferences, and/or regional radiocommunication conferences, as required, with a view to fixing suitable dates, places and agenda.

RESOLUTION 517 (Rev.WRC-07)

Introduction of digitally modulated emissions in the high-frequency bands between 3 200 kHz and 26 100 kHz allocated to the broadcasting service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that digital techniques are being introduced into many existing services;

b) that digital techniques allow more effective utilization of the frequency spectrum than double-sideband (DSB) techniques;

c) that digital techniques enable reception quality to be improved;

d) the relevant parts of Appendix **11** concerning the digital system specification in the HF broadcasting services;

e) that ITU-R, in its Recommendation ITU-R BS.1514, has recommended system characteristics for digital sound broadcasts in the broadcast bands below 30 MHz;

f) that digital modulation techniques are expected to provide the means to achieve the optimum balance between sound quality, circuit reliability and bandwidth;

g) that digitally modulated emissions can, in general, provide more efficient coverage than amplitude-modulated transmissions by using fewer simultaneous frequencies and less power;

h) that it may be economically attractive, using current technology, to convert modern conventional DSB broadcasting systems to digital operation in accordance with *considering d)*;

i) that some DSB transmitters have been used with digital modulation techniques without transmitter modifications;

j) that ITU-R is carrying out further studies on the development of broadcasting using digitally modulated emissions in the bands allocated to the broadcasting service below 30 MHz;

k) that a long period could be needed for the introduction of digital broadcasting, taking into account the cost impact of replacement of transmitters and receivers,

resolves

1 that the early introduction of digitally modulated emissions as recommended by ITU-R in the HF bands between 3 200 kHz and 26 100 kHz allocated to the broadcasting service is to be encouraged;

2 that digitally modulated emissions shall comply with the characteristics specified in the relevant parts of Appendix **11**;

3 that whenever an administration replaces a DSB emission by an emission using digital modulation techniques, it shall ensure that the level of interference is not greater than that caused by the original DSB emission, and shall use the RF protection values specified in Resolution **543 (WRC-03)** and Recommendation **517 (Rev.WRC-03)**[*];

4 that the continued use of DSB emissions may be reviewed by a future competent world radiocommunication conference based on administrations' experience with the introduction of digital HF broadcasting services,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to compile and provide to the future competent world radiocommunication conference referred to in *resolves* 4 the latest available complete statistics on the worldwide distribution of digital HF broadcasting receivers and transmitters,

invites ITU-R

to continue its studies on digital techniques in HF broadcasting with a view to assisting in the development of this technology for future use,

invites administrations

to encourage the inclusion in all new HF broadcasting transmitters put into service after 1 January 2004 of the capability to offer digital modulation,

further invites administrations

1 to assist the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau by providing the relevant statistical data and to participate in ITU-R studies on matters relating to the development and introduction of digitally modulated emissions in the HF bands between 3 200 kHz and 26 100 kHz allocated to the broadcasting service;

2 to bring to the notice of transmitter and receiver manufacturers the recent results of relevant ITU-R studies on spectrum-efficient modulation techniques suitable for use at HF as well as the information referred to in *considering d)* and *e)*, and encourage the availability of affordable low-cost digital receivers.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was suppressed by WRC-07.

RESOLUTION 525 (Rev.WRC-07)

Introduction of high-definition television systems of the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WARC-92 reallocated the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) to be implemented after 1 April 2007;

b) that until 1 April 2007 the existing services operating in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations were therefore entitled to continue operating without harmful interference from other services;

c) that as of 1 April 2007 the introduction of high-definition television (HDTV) systems in this band is to be regulated in a flexible and equitable manner until such time as a future competent world radiocommunication conference has adopted definitive provisions for this purpose in accordance with Resolution **507 (Rev.WRC-03)**;

d) that procedures are required for the circumstances envisaged in *considering c)* above,

further considering

a) that mitigation techniques for rain attenuation for the BSS have been developed and given in Recommendation ITU-R BO.1659;

b) that in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, a reference power flux-density for the BSS has been developed and given in Recommendation ITU-R BO.1776;

c) that in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, intra-service sharing criteria for geostationary BSS systems have been developed and given in Recommendation ITU-R BO.1785;

d) that in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, system parameters of BSS between 17.3 GHz and 42.5 GHz and associated feeder links have been developed and given in Report ITU-R BO.2071,

noting

a) that Recommendation ITU-R BT.1201 deals with extremely high resolution imagery (EHRI);

b) that Recommendation ITU-R BT.1769 contains parameter values for an expanded hierarchy of large screen digital imagery (LSDI) image formats for production and international programme exchange;

c) that, in future BSS systems in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz, HDTV applications may include such EHRI applications as shown in Report ITU-R BT.2042,

recognizing

that there might have been some broadcasting satellite networks that introduced operational HDTV systems in this band before 1 April 2007 without affecting the continued operation of existing services,

resolves

to adopt the interim procedures contained in the Annex hereto,

invites all administrations

to comply with the above procedures,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

to apply the above procedures.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 525 (Rev.WRC-07)

Interim procedures for the introduction of broadcasting-satellite service (HDTV) systems in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3

Section I – General provisions

1 All services other than the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations may operate subject to not causing harmful interference to BSS (HDTV) systems nor claiming protection from such systems. It shall be understood that the introduction of an operational BSS (HDTV) system in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 should be regulated by an interim procedure in a flexible and equitable manner until the date to be decided by WRC-11.

Section II – Interim procedure relating to BSS (HDTV) systems

2 For the purpose of introducing and operating BSS (HDTV) systems in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 before the next conference has taken decisions on definitive procedures, all relevant provisions of Articles **9** to **14** except No. **9.11** shall be applied.

3 Administrations shall, to the maximum extent possible, seek to ensure that operational BSS (HDTV) systems introduced in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 have characteristics which take into account the studies of the ITU-R for the preparation of WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 526 (WARC-92)

Future adoption of procedures to ensure flexibility in the use of the frequency band allocated to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) for wide RF-band high-definition television (HDTV) and to the associated feeder links[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference for Dealing with Frequency Allocations in Certain Parts of the Spectrum (Malaga-Torremolinos, 1992),

considering

a) that WARC-92 has added an allocation to the BSS in the bands 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 17.3-17.8 GHz in Region 2 for use by wide RF-band HDTV;

b) that considerable further technological development of wide RF-band HDTV is expected before it can be introduced for general operational use;

c) that this Conference has adopted interim provisions to be applied during the period before 1 April 2007 to regulate the introduction of experimental or operational BSS (HDTV) systems (see Resolution **525 (WARC-92)**[*]);

d) that in the longer term regulatory provisions designed to ensure flexible and equitable use of the BSS (HDTV) and associated feeder-link allocations will be necessary to replace these interim provisions,

resolves to urge all administrations

to study the development of future regulatory provisions for BSS (HDTV) to ensure flexibility in the use of the bands 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 and 17.3-17.8 GHz in Region 2, having regard to the interests of all countries and the state of technical development of this new service,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the Council with a view to placing an appropriate item on the agenda of a future world radiocommunication conference.

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Resolution.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

RESOLUTION 528 (Rev.WRC-03)

Introduction of the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) systems and complementary terrestrial broadcasting in the bands allocated to these services within the range 1-3 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that WARC-92 has made frequency allocations to the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) and complementary terrestrial broadcasting;

b) that it is necessary to ensure that the introduction of the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) and complementary terrestrial broadcasting proceeds in a flexible and equitable manner;

c) that efficient use of the spectrum will be enhanced by a worldwide allocation;

d) that a worldwide allocation may cause difficulties to some countries in relation to their existing services;

e) that future planning may limit the effect on other services,

resolves

1 that a competent conference should be convened, preferably not later than 1998, for the planning of the broadcasting-satellite service (sound) in the bands allocated to this service in the range 1-3 GHz; and the development of procedures for the coordinated use of complementary terrestrial broadcasting;

2 that this conference should review criteria for sharing with other services;

3 that in the interim period, broadcasting-satellite systems may only be introduced within the upper 25 MHz of the appropriate band in accordance with the procedures contained in Sections A to C of Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)**, or in Articles **9** to **14**, as appropriate (see *resolves* 1 and 2 of Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-03)**). The complementary terrestrial service may be introduced during this interim period subject to coordination with administrations whose services may be affected;

4 that the calculation methods and the interference criteria to be employed in evaluating the interference should be based upon relevant ITU-R Recommendations agreed by the administrations concerned as a result of Resolution **703 (Rev.WARC-92)**[*] or otherwise,

---

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

invites the ITU-R

to conduct the necessary studies prior to the conference,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the Council to consider including in the agenda of a radiocommunication conference to be held preferably not later than the year 1998 the matters addressed above.

RESOLUTION 533 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Implementation of the decisions of WRC-2000 relating to processing of proposed networks submitted under Articles 4, 6 and 7 of Appendices 30 and 30A to the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that this Conference revised the Appendix **30** Regions 1 and 3 Plan which, through decisions of WRC-2000, has been structured into a Regions 1 and 3 Plan and a Regions 1 and 3 List;[1]

b) that similarly, this Conference revised the 14.5-14.8 GHz and 17.3-18.1 GHz Appendix **30A** Regions 1 and 3 feeder-link Plans and structured it into Regions 1 and 3 feeder-link Plans and Regions 1 and 3 feeder-link Lists[1];

c) that the R1/R3 downlink Plan and the initial R1/R3 downlink List (and the associated R1/R3 feeder-link Plans and initial R1/R3 feeder-link Lists) were analysed and were confirmed to be compatible with each other;

d) that compatibility must be ensured between the R1/R3 downlink Plan (and the associated R1/R3 feeder-link Plans) and:

– the other services in all three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans;

– the Region 2 Plan;

e) that this Conference has adopted new sharing criteria and associated calculation methods which are included in, or referenced in, the Annexes to Appendices **30** and **30A**;

[1] Hereinafter within this Resolution the Appendix **30** Regions 1 and 3 Plan is referred to as the "R1/R3 downlink Plan" and the Appendix **30** Regions 1 and 3 List is referred as the "R1/R3 downlink List". Similarly, the Appendix **30A** Regions 1 and 3 feeder-link Plans are referred to as the "R1/R3 feeder-link Plans" and the Appendix **30A** Regions 1 and 3 feeder-link Lists are referred to as the "R1/R3 feeder-link Lists".

f) that "existing"[2] systems and "Part B"[3] systems included in the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and Lists as established by WRC-2000 have been determined to be compatible with the other services in the three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans, and with the Region 2 Plan;

g) that during WRC-2000 the R1/R3 downlink Plan (and the associated R1/R3 feeder-link Plans) were not analysed in order to identify any incompatibility with the other services in the three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans, and with the Region 2 Plan;

h) that since assignments in the initial R1/R3 downlink List (and the associated R1/R3 feeder-link Lists) have completed coordination with the other services in the three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans, and with the Region 2 Plan, using the compatibility criteria in force at the time of WRC-2000, there will be no additional compatibility requirements associated with entries in the initial R1/R3 downlink List or the R1/R3 feeder-link Lists;

i) that proposed additional assignments would only enter the evolving R1/R3 downlink List after they have satisfied all compatibility requirements with the R1/R3 downlink Plan, with the existing R1/R3 downlink List, with other Appendix **30** Article 4 submissions with prior dates of receipt, with the other services in the three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans, and with the Region 2 Plan;

j) that proposed additional assignments would only enter the evolving R1/R3 feeder-link Lists after they have satisfied all compatibility requirements with the R1/R3 feeder-link Plans, with the existing R1/R3 feeder-link Lists, with other Appendix **30A** Article 4 submissions with prior dates of receipt, with the other services in the three Regions with primary allocations in the same band, and with the Region 2 Plan,

recognizing

that the Radiocommunication Bureau needs clear instructions from this Conference on how to deal with the large number of Appendices **30** and **30A** Article 4 submissions that have either been processed or are currently being processed which might affect the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and Lists, other Appendices **30** and **30A** Article 4 submissions with

---

[2] Whenever the term "existing" is used in this Resolution, it refers to the notified assignments that are in conformity with Appendices **30** and **30A**, which have been brought into use and for which the date of bringing into use has been confirmed to the Bureau before 1700 h (Istanbul time) on 12 May 2000.

[3] Whenever the term "Part B" is used in this Resolution, it refers to the assignments for which the procedures of Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A** have been successfully completed and for which due diligence information has been provided (when required) before 1700 h (Istanbul time) on 12 May 2000, but which have not been brought into use and/or the date of bringing into use has not been confirmed to the Bureau.

prior dates of receipt, the other services in the three Regions having primary allocations in the bands used by the R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans, and the Region 2 Plan,

resolves

1 that following WRC-2000 the Bureau shall compute the reference situations of the R1/R3 downlink Plan and the R1/R3 downlink List and the R1/R3 feeder-link Plans and R1/R3 feeder-link Lists as at 3 June 2000 and publish this information in a circular letter;

2 that as from 3 June 2000 the Bureau shall use the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference in its examination of submissions received after the Conference;

3 that the Bureau shall review, in date of receipt order, all Special Sections already published[4] in order to determine the requirement for coordination with respect to the R1/R3 downlink Plan, the R1/R3 feeder-link Plans, the R1/R3 downlink List and the R1/R3 feeder-link Lists and with other Article 4 submissions which have dates of receipt prior to the date of the Special Section in question (AP30/E or AP30A/E), using the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted by this Conference;

3.1 within four months from the date of publication of the above-mentioned corrigenda, possibly affected administrations should provide comments to the Bureau and to the notifying administration and shall indicate any still valid coordination agreements;

3.2 the existing time period for bringing the modifications into use, i.e. five years plus a possible extension of three years, will continue to be counted as from the date of receipt of the modification by the Bureau of the complete Annex 2 information pertaining to the request for modification, but shall be extended by a period equal to the time between 3 June 2000 and the date of publication of the relevant corrigenda to the Special Section;

4 that as from the end of this Conference the Bureau shall process all as yet unpublished requests for modifications under Article 4 which were received prior to 3 June 2000, in the same date order of receipt by the Bureau of the complete information on the request for modification and, using the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference, identify for each as yet unpublished request for modification the list of administrations whose agreement is required and publish this list of affected administrations;

4.1 within four months from the date of the above publication, possibly affected administrations should provide comments to the Bureau and to the notifying administration and shall indicate any still valid coordination agreements;

---

[4] See also Notes 5*a)* and 6 in § 11.2 of Article 11 of Appendix **30** and Notes 5 and 6 in § 9A.2 of Article 9A of Appendix **30A** with respect to assignments in the Region 2 Plan.

4.2 the existing time period for bringing the modifications into use, i.e. five years plus a possible extension of three years, will continue to be counted as from the date of receipt of the modification by the Bureau of the complete Annex 2 information pertaining to the request for modification, but shall be extended by a period equal to the time between 3 June 2000 and the date of publication of the last relevant corrigenda to the Special Sections described in *resolves* 3;

5 that in examining the requirement for coordination of other services in all three Regions with the WRC-2000 R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and Lists in the cases described in *resolves* 3, the following methodology shall be applied in accordance with Resolution **53 (Rev.WRC-2000)**[*]**,** Article 11 of Appendix **30** and Article 9A of Appendix **30A** for:

– protection from fixed-satellite service assignments already published. The Bureau shall review all relevant Special Sections of the series (for example, AP30/C) previously published, and publish corrigenda where required;

– protection from fixed-satellite service assignments not yet processed. The Bureau shall determine the requirement for coordination and publish the request in its International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC). The administrations responsible for the fixed-satellite service assignments shall then initiate coordination with the affected assignments in the WRC-2000 R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and Lists;

– protection from terrestrial assignments already in process. The Bureau shall determine the requirement for coordination and publish the request in its BR IFIC. The administration responsible for the terrestrial assignments shall then initiate coordination with the affected assignments in the WRC-2000 R1/R3 downlink and feeder-link Plans and Lists.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was abrogated by WRC-03.

RESOLUTION 535 (Rev.WRC-03)

Information needed for the application of Article 12 of the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

that WRC-97 adopted Article **12** as a simple and flexible seasonal planning procedure for high-frequency broadcasting (HFBC) based on coordination,

considering further

that appropriate Rules of Procedure are to be developed by the Radiocommunication Bureau and adopted by the Radio Regulations Board,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to consider the information contained in the Annex to this Resolution in developing the Rules of Procedure;

2 to consider improvements to the established arrangements for the preparation, publication and dissemination of the information relating to the application of Article **12**, in consultation with administrations and regional coordination groups,

invites administrations

1 to support the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau in the preparation of these Rules of Procedure and in the development and testing of any accompanying computer software;

2 to submit their schedules in a common electronic format to be defined in the Rules of Procedure,

instructs the Secretary-General

to consider provision of the necessary funding to enable developing countries to participate fully in the application of Article **12** and relevant radiocommunications seminars.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 535 (Rev.WRC-03)

This Annex responds to the need for information in the application of Article **12**; the flowchart in Description 2 provides an overview of the Procedure.

1 Software development

The Procedure will require a number of user-friendly software modules to be developed, tested and supplied to administrations by the Bureau. This will ensure that the same software modules are used by administrations and the Bureau for the analysis of the schedules.

The Bureau should:

– develop the aforementioned software with assistance from administrations;

– distribute the software, together with user instructions and relevant documentation;

– organize training in the use of the software;

– monitor the functional performance of the software and, if required, make necessary modifications.

2 Software modules

Data capture of requirements

A new module will be required that permits the capture of all data elements detailed in Description 3. This module should also contain validation routines that prevent inconsistent data being captured and sent to the Bureau for processing.

Propagation calculation

This new module should calculate the field strength and other necessary data at all relevant test points as described in Descriptions 1 and 4.

It should also include an option that allows administrations to select the optimum frequency bands for their requirements.

The output format of the data and the medium should be such as to allow easy publication and distribution of the results to all administrations.

The results of these calculations should be displayable in a graphical format.

Compatibility analysis

This module should use the output of the propagation calculation to provide a technical analysis of a requirement both alone and in the presence of other requirements as in Description 4. This analysis would be used in the coordination process.

The values for the parameters given in Description 4 should be user selectable, but in the absence of other values the recommended default values should be used.

The results of this analysis should be capable of being displayed in a graphical format for a defined service area as in Description 4.

Data query

This module should enable the user to perform typical data query functions.

DESCRIPTION 1

Selection of suitable frequency band(s)

General

In order to assist broadcasters and administrations in the preparation of their HF broadcasting requirements, the Bureau will prepare and distribute suitable computer software. This should be easy to use and the output should be easy to understand.

User input data

The user should be able to enter:

– the name of the transmitting station (for reference purposes);

– the geographic coordinates of the transmitting station;

– the transmitter power;

– the bands which are available for use;

– hours of transmission;

– sunspot number;

– months during which a service is required;

– the available antenna types, together with the relevant directions of maximum radiation;

– the required coverage area specified as a set of CIRAF zones and quadrants (or by means of relevant geographic information).

It is desirable that the software should be able to store the above information, once it has been entered correctly, and provide the user with an easy means of recalling any previously entered information.

Methodology and data

The software should use:

– Recommendation ITU-R BS.705 for the calculation of antenna patterns;

– Recommendation ITU-R P.533 for the prediction of wanted field-strength values;

– Recommendation ITU-R P.842 for the calculation of reliability values.

The set of 911 test points (agreed at WARC HFBC-87) should be used, supplemented where necessary with test points based on a geographic grid.

The software should calculate the field strength values and the fading margins at each test point inside the required service area for each of the frequency bands declared to be available, taking account of the relevant transmitting antenna characteristics for each frequency band. The desired RF signal-to-noise ratio should be user selectable with a default value of 34 dB in the case of double sideband (DSB) or as provided in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R BS.1615, as appropriate, in the case of digital emissions.

The dates for which calculations are made should be user selectable, the default values being:

– 0.5 month after the start of the season;

– mid-point of the season;

– 0.5 month before the end of the season.

The times for which calculations are made should be user selectable, the default values being:

– 30 min past the hour in which the requirement starts;

– 30 min past each successive hour until the hour in which the requirement stops.

Software output data

For rapid assessment of suitable bands, the software should calculate:

– the basic service reliability for each available band and for the relevant test points from the set of 911 test points;

– the basic area reliability for each available band and for the relevant test points from the set of 911 test points.

In order to provide information about the geographic distribution of wanted signal values within the required service area, additional results should be available from the software:

– a listing should be available giving, for each of the available bands, the basic circuit reliability (BCR) for each of the test points (from the set of 911 test points) inside the required service area.

In some cases, a graphical display of the BCR values throughout the required service area may be desirable. These values should be calculated at test points at 2° intervals of latitude and longitude throughout the required service area.

The BCR values should be displayed graphically as a set of coloured or hatched “pixels” scaled in steps of 10%. It should be noted that:

– reliability values relate to the use of a single frequency band;

– reliability values are a function of the desired RF signal-to-noise ratio (user selectable);

– the field-strength values should be calculated by the supplied software on the user’s own computer hardware. The software supplied should calculate the relevant reliability values based on these field-strength values and the user-supplied desired RF signal-to-noise values.

DESCRIPTION 2

Time sequence for the Procedure

In the sequence outlined below, the start date for a given schedule period is defined as D and the end date for the same schedule period is defined as E.

Date	Action
D – 4 months	Closing date for administrations to send their schedules[1] to the Radiocommunication Bureau (Bureau), preferably by electronic mail or on 3.5" diskette (720 kbytes or 1.44 Mbytes). Schedule data will be made available via TIES as soon as it has been processed.
D – 2 months	Bureau to send to administrations a consolidated schedule (the first Tentative Schedule) together with a complete compatibility analysis[2].
D – 6 weeks	Closing date for receipt of amendments from administrations to correct errors and other changes resulting from the coordination process to ensure that this information appears in the second Tentative Schedule for D – 1 month.
D – 1 month	Bureau to send to administrations a consolidated schedule (the second Tentative Schedule) together with a complete compatibility analysis[2].
D – 2 weeks	Closing date for receipt of amendments from administrations to correct errors and other changes resulting from the coordination process to ensure that this information appears in the Schedule for date D.
D	Bureau to issue the High Frequency Broadcasting Schedule and compatibility analysis.
D to E – 3 months	Administrations to correct errors and coordinate in-season changes of requirements, sending information to the Bureau as it becomes available. Bureau to issue updates of the Schedule and compatibility analysis at intervals of two months.
E	Closing date for receipt of final operational schedules from administrations to Bureau. No input is needed if there have been no changes to the information previously sent.
E + 1 month	Bureau to send to administrations the final consolidated schedule (the Final Schedule) together with a compatibility analysis.

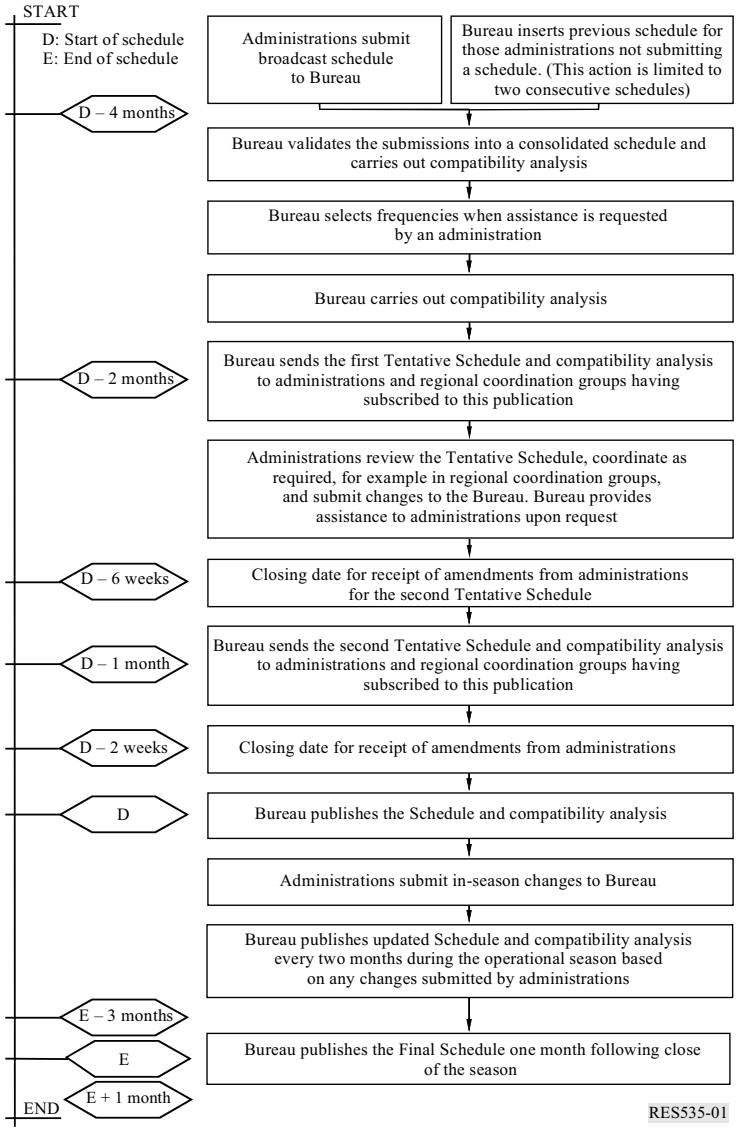
[1] See Description 3.

[2] See Description 4. The schedules and the results of the analyses should be available on CD-ROM and in TIES.

Figure 1 shows, in flow chart form, the time sequence for the Procedure.

FIGURE 1

Time sequence for the Procedure



DESCRIPTION 3

Specification of input data for a requirement

The fields needed for a given requirement and their specifications are:

– frequency in kHz, up to 5-digit integer;

– start time, as 4-digit integer;

– stop time, as 4-digit integer;

– target service area, as a set of up to 12 CIRAF zones and quadrants up to a maximum of 30 characters;

– site code, a 3-character code from a list of codes, or a site name and its geographic coordinates;

– power in kW, up to 4-digit integer;

– azimuth of maximum radiation;

– slew angle, up to 2-digit integer representing the difference between the azimuth of maximum radiation and the direction of unslewed radiation;

– antenna code, up to 3-digit integer from a list of values, or a full antenna description, as given in Recommendation ITU-R BS.705;

– days of operation;

– start date, in the case that the requirement starts after the start of the schedule;

– stop date, in the case that the requirement stops before the end of the schedule;

– modulation choice, to specify if the requirement is to use DSB, single-side band (SSB) (see Recommendation ITU-R BS.640) or digital emission (see Recommendation ITU-R BS.1514). This field may be used to identify any other type of modulation when this has been defined for use by HFBC in an ITU-R Recommendation;

– administration code;

– broadcasting organization code;

– identification number;

– identification of synchronization with other requirements.

DESCRIPTION 4

Compatibility analysis

General

In order to assess the performance of each requirement in the presence of noise and of the potential interference from other requirements using the same or adjacent channels, it is necessary to calculate the relevant reliability values. To this end, the Bureau will prepare suitable software, taking account of user requirements in terms of desired signal-to-noise and signal-to-interference ratios.

Input data

The schedule for a given season – this may be either an initial consolidated schedule (to permit assessment of those requirements which need coordination) or the High Frequency Broadcasting Schedule (to permit assessment of the likely performance of requirements during the relevant season).

Methodology and data

The software should use:

– Recommendation ITU-R BS.705 for the calculation of antenna patterns;

– Recommendation ITU-R P.533 for the prediction of the wanted field strength values at each test point for each wanted requirement;

– Recommendation ITU-R P.533 for the prediction of the potentially interfering field-strength values from all other co-channel or adjacent channel requirements at each test point for each wanted requirement;

– Recommendations **517 (Rev.WRC-03)*** and ITU-R BS.560 for adjacent channel RF protection ratios;

– Recommendation ITU-R P.842 for the calculation of reliability values.

The set of 911 test points (agreed at WARC HFBC-87) should be used, supplemented where necessary with test points based on a geographic grid.

The software should calculate the wanted and unwanted field-strength values and the fading margins at each test point inside the required service area.

The desired RF signal-to-noise and RF protection ratios should be user selectable, the default values being 34 dB and 17 dB (DSB-to-DSB co-channel case), respectively. In the case of digital emissions, the desired RF signal-to-noise ratios are as provided in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R BS.1615. The default values of RF protection ratio to be used by the Bureau for its compatibility analyses are given in Section 1 of the Annex to Resolution **543 (WRC-03)**.

The dates for which a compatibility analysis is made should be user selectable, the default values being:

– 0.5 month after the start of the season;

– mid-point of the season;

– 0.5 month before the end of the season.

These default values should be used by the Bureau for its compatibility analyses.

The times for which a compatibility analysis is made should be user selectable, the default values being:

– 30 min past the hour in which the requirement starts;

– 30 min past each successive hour until the hour in which the requirement ends.

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was abrogated by WRC-07.

These default values should be used by the Bureau for its compatibility analyses.

Software output data

For rapid assessment of the performance of a requirement, the software should calculate:

– the overall service reliability for the relevant test points from the set of 911 test points;

– the overall area reliability for the relevant test points from the set of 911 test points.

In order to provide information about the geographic distribution of wanted and unwanted signal values for a given requirement, additional results should be available from the software:

– a listing should be available giving the overall circuit reliability for each of the relevant test points from the set of 911 test points.

In some cases, a graphical display of the coverage achieved throughout a required service area may be desirable. These values will need to be calculated by the user (with the supplied software and on the user's own computer hardware) at test points at 2° intervals of latitude and longitude throughout the required service area. The values should be displayed graphically as a set of coloured or hatched pixels in steps of 10%. It should be noted that:

– reliability values relate to the use of a single frequency;

– reliability values are a function of the desired RF signal-to-noise and RF protection ratios (both user selectable);

– the field-strength values for the test points (from the set of 911 test points) inside the required service area should be calculated by the Bureau. The software supplied should calculate the relevant reliability values based on these pre-calculated field strength values and the user-supplied desired signal-to-noise and signal-to-interference values;

– the field-strength values for the test points at 2° intervals should be calculated using the supplied software on the user's own computer hardware. The software supplied should calculate the relevant reliability values based on these field strength values and the user-supplied desired signal-to-noise and signal-to-interference values.

RESOLUTION 536 (WRC-97)

Operation of broadcasting satellites serving other countries

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) the institutional nature of the ITU which is founded on an agreement between its Member States;

b) the treaty status of the Plans in Appendices **30** and **30A**;

c) that these Plans were established on the basis of planning principles which included, *inter alia*, that the Plans should be based mainly on national coverage;

d) the increasing number of applications under Article 4 of Appendices **30** and **30A** for modifications to the Plans, leading to many multinational systems;

e) that No. **23.13** requires that "In devising the characteristics of a space station in the broadcasting-satellite service, all technical means available shall be used to reduce, to the maximum, the radiation over the territory of other countries unless an agreement has been previously reached with such countries",

recognizing

a) that current technology provides opportunities to implement broadcasting-satellite systems with service areas that exceed national coverage;

b) that several such systems have been implemented and others are being planned;

c) that successful Appendices **30** and **30A** Article 4 coordination of such systems does not in any way imply licensing authorization to provide a service within the territory of a Member States,

resolves

that, in addition to observing No. **23.13**, and before providing satellite broadcasting services to other administrations, administrations originating the services should obtain the agreement of those other administrations.

RESOLUTION 539 (Rev.WRC-03)

Use of the band 2 605-2 655 MHz in certain Region 3 countries by non-geostationary satellite systems in the broadcasting-satellite service (sound)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the band 2 535-2 655 MHz is allocated under No. **5.418** to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) (sound) in certain Region 3 countries;

b) that the provisions of Resolution **528 (WARC-92)*** currently limit the use of this band by systems in the BSS (sound) to the upper 25 MHz of the band;

c) that, prior to WRC-2000, there were no coordination procedures applicable to non-geostationary (non-GSO) BSS (sound) systems in this band in relation to other non-GSO or GSO satellite networks;

d) that satellite technology has now advanced to the stage where non-GSO systems in the BSS (sound) are technically and economically feasible when operated with high elevation angles and that there are practical designs available to ensure that the radiation of the non-GSO satellite in the BSS (sound) outside the main beam is kept at low levels;

e) that satellite systems in the BSS as described in *considering d)* can be used for the delivery of high-quality, spectrally efficient BSS (sound) to portable and mobile terminals;

f) that non-GSO systems in the BSS (sound) in the band 2 630-2 655 MHz in Region 3 have been notified to ITU and are expected to be brought into use in the near future;

g) that, prior to WRC-2000, the protection of existing terrestrial services was addressed through the coordination procedures of No. **9.11**;

h) that the provision cited in *considering g)* may be inadequate to ensure the future deployment of terrestrial services in this band;

i) that a regulatory procedure is required in order to meet the dual objectives of providing adequate long-term protection to existing and planned terrestrial services while not placing undue constraints on the development and implementation of the non-GSO BSS (sound) system;

j) that there are non-GSO systems being planned for operation in the BSS (sound) in the band 2 605-2 655 MHz in Region 3 that have highly elliptical orbits;

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-03.

k) that ITU-R has undertaken studies of the likely aggregate interference from a number of co-frequency broadcasting-satellite systems sharing with the terrestrial services on a co-primary basis;

l) that ITU-R has undertaken studies that assumed there is only one satellite active at any time in a non-GSO system operating in a highly elliptical orbit,

invites

a) administrations planning to operate non-GSO BSS (sound) systems in accordance with this Resolution, to take measures to design the system to minimize interference to terrestrial services outside the non-GSO BSS (sound) service area, for example as in *considering d)* above;

b) administrations, whose territory is geographically close to the territory of an administration planning to operate a non-GSO BSS (sound) system in accordance with this Resolution, and for which there is a correspondingly high elevation angle to the active satellite, to take measures to facilitate the operation of non-GSO BSS (sound) systems,

resolves

1 that any BSS (sound) system using non-geostationary orbits brought into operation in the band 2 605-2 655 MHz in Region 3 shall be operated such that the minimum elevation angle over the service area is not less than 55°, for the purposes of sharing with terrestrial services;

2 that, before an administration notifies to the Radiocommunication Bureau or brings into use a frequency assignment for a BSS (sound) system using non-GSO satellites in the band 2 630-2 655 MHz, for which complete Appendix **4** coordination information or notification information has been received after 2 June 2000, and in the band 2 605-2 630 MHz for which complete Appendix **4** coordination information or notification information has been received after 4 July 2003, the following regulatory arrangements shall apply.

The following mask of power flux-density values at the Earth's surface produced by emissions from a space station for all conditions and for all methods of modulation shall be used as the basis of the regulatory procedures of this Resolution:

-130	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $0° \le \theta \le 5°$
$-130 + 0.4\ (\theta - 5)$	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $5° < \theta \le 25°$
-122	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $25° < \theta \le 45°$
$-122 + 0.2\ (\theta - 45)$	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $45° < \theta \le 65°$
$-118 + 0.09\ (\theta - 65)$	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $65° < \theta \le 76°$
-117	dB(W/(m^2 · MHz))	for $76° < \theta \le 90°$

where θ is the angle of arrival of the incident wave above the horizontal plane, in degrees.

These values relate to the power flux-density and angles of arrival which would be obtained under free-space propagation conditions.

Furthermore:

– for angles of arrival less than 76° in the power flux-density mask above, if the limits are exceeded, the notifying administration shall obtain the explicit agreement from any administration identified by the Bureau in its examination below;

– for angles of arrival from 76° to 90° in the power flux-density mask above, the coordination procedure with respect to those administrations identified by the Bureau in its examination below will be that of No. **9.11**;

3 that systems in the BSS (sound) using non-GSO satellites shall be limited to national services unless agreement has been reached to include the territories of other administrations in the service area;

4 that, within the context of this Resolution, an administration listed in No. **5.417A** or **5.418** shall not have simultaneously two overlapping frequency assignments, one under that provision, and the other one under provision No. **5.416**;

5 that, as from 5 July 2003, the Bureau and administrations shall apply the provisions of Articles **9** and **11** taking into account Nos. **5.417A**, **5.417B**, **5.417C**, **5.417D**, **5.418**, **5.418A**, **5.418B**, **5.418C** and this Resolution, as revised by this Conference,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 when applying *resolves* 2, to use the power flux-density mask in *resolves* 2; and

– for angles of arrival less than 76°, identify the affected administrations which have a primary allocation to terrestrial services in the same frequency band and on whose territory the power flux-density is exceeded and inform both the notifying and the affected administrations. At the notification stage the lack of any necessary agreement is considered as non-conformity with No. **11.31**;

– for angles of arrival from 76° to 90°, identify the affected administrations which have a primary allocation to terrestrial services in the same frequency band and on whose territory the power flux-density is exceeded and inform both the notifying and the affected administrations. At the notification stage each notice shall be examined in the application of No. **11.32** and, if appropriate, under No. **11.32A** with respect to the probability of harmful interference that may be caused to assignments for which coordination could not be successfully completed;

2 as from 5 July 2003, to apply *resolves* 5 in its examination of requests for coordination and notifications for any BSS (sound) systems using non-GSO satellites in the 2 630-2 655 MHz band for which complete Appendix **4** coordination information or notification information has been received after 2 June 2000.

RESOLUTION 543 (WRC-03)

Provisional RF protection ratio values for analogue and digitally modulated emissions in the HF broadcasting service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that this Conference has resolved to encourage the introduction of digitally modulated emissions in the high frequency broadcast bands allocated to the broadcasting service and has revised Resolution **517** accordingly;

b) that the current use of the spectrum is based on the use of double-sideband (DSB) emissions;

c) that Appendix **11** gives details of the system parameters and the emission characteristics of the digitally modulated emissions;

d) that ITU-R is carrying out further studies on the development of HF broadcasting using digitally modulated emissions in the bands allocated to the broadcasting service below 30 MHz;

e) that RF co-channel and adjacent channel protection ratios are among the fundamental parameters when determining compatibility;

f) that the currently available values of RF protection ratios may need to be updated in the light of future ITU-R studies;

g) that Annex 1 to Recommendation ITU-R BS.1514 describes a digital system suitable for broadcasting in the bands below 30 MHz;

h) that there is a need to compile and maintain statistics on administrations' capability to introduce digital modulation systems for their HF broadcasting services,

resolves

1 that digital modulation in accordance with Resolution **517 (Rev.WRC-03)**[*] may be used in any of the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service; this accommodation has to be made with the appropriate amounts of protection given to both analogue and digital emissions as described in the Annex to this Resolution;

2 that the protection ratio values described in the Annex be used in the coordination process under Article **12** on a provisional basis;

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

3 to invite a future competent conference to revise these provisional protection ratio values, as appropriate,

invites ITU-R

1 to continue studies on digital techniques in HF broadcasting with the purpose to revise the RF protection ratio values for analogue and digitally modulated emissions in the HF broadcasting service as described in the Annex to this Resolution;

2 to report the results of these studies to the World Radiocommunication Conference 2007.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 543 (WRC-03)

Section 1 – Standard RF protection ratio values

RF protection ratio values to be used for seasonal planning under the provisions of Article **12** are contained in Table 1 in this Section.

The values are consistent with those in Recommendation ITU-R BS.1615.

The characteristics of the digital emission are based on the 64-QAM modulation system, protection level No. 1, robustness mode B, spectrum occupancy type 3 (as contained in Recommendation ITU-R BS.1514), which will be used extensively for HF skywave broadcasting in 10 kHz channels.

The characteristics of the analogue emission are based on double-sideband modulation as summarized in Part A of Appendix **11**, with 53% modulation depth.

TABLE 1

Relative RF protection ratios (dB) associated with digitally modulated emissions in the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service

Wanted signal	**Unwanted signal**	**Frequency separation $f_{unwanted} - f_{wanted}$ (kHz)**								
		–20	**–15**	**–10**	**–5**	**0**	**5**	**10**	**15**	**20**
Amplitude modulation	Digital	–47	–42	–32	3	6	3	–32	–42	–47
Digital	Amplitude modulation	–54	–48	–40	–3	0	–3	–40	–48	–54
Digital	Digital	–53	–47	–38	–3	0	–3	–38	–47	–53

In the case of an amplitude modulation (AM) signal interfered with by a digital signal, the protection ratios are determined by adding 17 dB (audio-frequency protection ratio) to the relative RF protection ratios in Table 1.

In the case of a digital signal interfered with by an AM signal, the protection ratios are determined by adding 7 dB (signal-to-interference ratio for a bit error ratio (BER) of 10^{-4}) to the relative RF protection ratios in Table 1.

In the case of a digital signal interfered with by a digital signal, the protection ratios are determined by adding 16 dB (signal-to-interference ratio for a BER of 10^{-4}) to the RF relative protection ratios in Table 1.

Section 2 – Correction values of RF protection ratios

Correction values of RF protection ratios for different wanted signal conditions such as AM modulation depths, AM quality grades and digital modulation modes are provided in this Section.

1 AM modulation depth

RF protection ratios for a wanted AM signal interfered with by a digital signal depend on the AM modulation depth. A modulation depth of 53% is used as a default value in this Annex. If a different modulation depth is used, a correction value for RF protection ratio is required. Table 2 provides correction values for typical modulation depths.

TABLE 2

Correction values (dB) to be used for other AM modulation depths in respect of wanted AM signal

Modulation depth (%)	30	38	53	*m*
Correction value (dB)	5	3	0	20 log (53/*m*)

2 AM audio quality

RF protection ratios for a wanted AM signal interfered with by a digital signal depend on the required audio quality grade. If another quality grade is used, correction values of RF protection ratios as in Table 3 shall be added.

TABLE 3

Correction values (dB) to be used for other audio quality grades in respect of wanted AM signal

Audio quality grade	3	3.5	4
Correction value (dB)	0	7	12

3 Digital modulation scheme, protection level number and robustness mode

RF protection ratios for a wanted digital signal interfered with by an analogue or digital signal depend on the digital modulation scheme and mode. If any combination different from the default value in Section 1 is used, correction values of RF protection ratios as in Table 4 shall be added.

TABLE 4

Correction values (dB) to be used for other combinations of digital modulation scheme, protection level number and robustness mode in respect of wanted digital signal

Modulation scheme	Protection level number	Robustness mode		
		B	C	D
16-QAM	0	–7	–6	–6
	1	–5	–4	–4
64-QAM	0	–1	–1	0
	1	0	0	1

NOTE – 10 kHz nominal bandwidth.

Protection levels Nos. 2 and 3 and robustness mode A are not recommended for use in HF and are therefore not described here.

Section 3 – Explanatory examples

a) In Table 1, first row <AM interfered with by Digital>: with the AF protection ratio = 17 dB, all values of relative protection ratios entered in that row of the Table must be increased by 17 dB in order to determine the absolute value of the RF protection ratio (RF PR). As examples:

- For co-channel interference (0 kHz separation) the RF PR would be 6 + 17 = 23 dB.
- For adjacent channel interference (±10 kHz separation) the RF PR would be –32 + 17 = –15 dB.
- For the case of modulation depth = 38% and audio quality grade = 4, a correction factor of 15 dB (= 3 + 12) is added to the RF PR values described above.

b) In Table 1, second row <Digital interfered with by AM>: all values of relative protection ratios entered in that row of the Table must be increased by 7 dB in order to determine the absolute value of the RF PR. As examples:

- For co-channel interference (0 kHz separation) the RF PR would be 0 + 7 = 7 dB.
- For adjacent channel interference (±10 kHz separation) the RF PR would be –40 + 7 = –33 dB.

c) In Table 1, third row <Digital interfered with by Digital>: all values of relative protection ratios entered in that row of the Table must be increased by 16 dB in order to determine the absolute value of the RF protection ratio. As examples:

– For co-channel interference (0 kHz separation) the RF PR would be 0 + 16 = 16 dB.

– For adjacent channel interference (±10 kHz separation) the RF PR would be −38 + 16 = –22 dB.

RESOLUTION 546 (WRC-03)

Implementation of the decisions of WRC-03 relating to processing of networks under Appendices 30 and 30A of the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

that this Conference has adopted new sharing criteria and associated calculation methods which are included in, or referenced in, the Annexes to Appendices **30** and **30A**,

recognizing

that the Radiocommunication Bureau needs clear instructions from this Conference on the sharing criteria and associated calculation methods to process the Appendices **30** and **30A** submissions, which are in various stages of treatment,

further recognizing

that it will take six months for the Radiocommunication Bureau to develop and test the software to implement the new sharing criteria and associated calculation methods adopted by this Conference,

resolves

1 that the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference shall enter into force on 5 July 2003[1] with the exception of the revised Annexes referred to in *resolves* 2 and footnotes to § 4.1.5, 4.1.15, 4.2.8 and 4.2.19;

2 that the revised Annexes of these Appendices as adopted by this Conference shall enter into force on 1 January 2004[1];

3 that as from 1 January 2004[2], for requests for modifications or additional uses under Article 4 and submissions under Article 2A of Appendices **30** and **30A**, for which complete information was received prior to 1 January 2004 by the Bureau but which have not yet been published in a Special Section of the International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC), the Bureau shall apply the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference;

---

[1] The use of the new criteria applied to networks published prior to 1 January 2004 shall not result in additional coordination requirements for those networks.

[2] Pending the completion of the relevant software referred to in *further recognizing*, the Bureau will continue to use the current software for processing of notices received prior to 5 July 2003.

4 that, as from 1 January 2004[1, 2],

4.1 when applying § 4.1.11 or 4.2.15 of Appendix **30** or **30A**, the administrations and the Bureau shall apply the new criteria and associated calculation methods adopted by this Conference;

4.2 when applying § 4.1.12 or 4.2.16 of Appendix **30** or **30A**, an agreement shall be necessary with an administration having previously made a valid objection, when, using the new criteria and associated calculation methods adopted by this Conference, that administration is still considered as affected;

4.3 for notification under Article 5 of Appendices **30** and **30A** for which complete information was received prior to that date by the Bureau but not yet published in Part II or III of the BR IFIC, the Bureau shall apply the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference;

5 that, as from 1 January 2004[1, 2],

5.1 for requests for coordination under Article 7 of Appendices **30** and **30A** for which complete information was received prior to this date by the Bureau but not yet published in a Special Section of the BR IFIC, the Bureau shall apply the revised Appendices **30** and **30A** as adopted at this Conference;

5.2 in application of No. **11.32** with respect to Article 7 of Appendices **30** and **30A**, the Bureau shall apply the new criteria and associated calculation methods adopted by this Conference if changes to the characteristics published under No. **9.38** increase the probability of interference or if coordination agreements previously required are missing;

5.3 in application of No. **11.32** with respect to Article 6 of Appendices **30** and **30A**, the Bureau shall apply the new criteria and associated calculation methods adopted by this Conference.

---

[1] The use of the new criteria applied to networks published prior to 1 January 2004 shall not result in additional coordination requirements for those networks.

[2] Pending the completion of the relevant software referred to in *further recognizing*, the Bureau will continue to use the current software for processing of notices received prior to 5 July 2003.

RESOLUTION 547 (Rev.WRC-07)

Updating of the "Remarks" columns in the Tables of Article 9A of Appendix 30A and Article 11 of Appendix 30 of the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that this Conference updated the "Remarks" columns in the Tables of Article 9A of Appendix **30A** and Article 11 of Appendix **30** based on the results of studies by the Radiocommunication Bureau;

b) that this Conference updated the Tables, included in Article 9A of Appendix **30A** and Article 11 of Appendix **30**, that specify affected or affecting networks, terrestrial stations or beams of administrations based on the results of studies by the Radiocommunication Bureau;

c) that it would be appropriate to update the Tables referred to in *considering b)* to reflect the changes in status of the fixed-satellite service networks and modifications to the characteristics, contained in these Tables,

recognizing

a) that the integrity of the Region 2 Plan and its associated provisions must be preserved;

b) that the compatibility between the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) in Regions 1 and 3 and the other services in all three Regions must be ensured,

resolves

that, in order to reduce the number of affected and affecting administrations or networks, the Bureau shall carry out the required analyses following any changes in the characteristics and any suppression of assignments contained in Tables 1A and 1B of Article 9A of Appendix **30A** and in Tables 2, 3 and 4 of Article 11 of Appendix **30**,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to report to WRC-11 and subsequent world radiocommunication conferences on the results of the implementation of this Resolution, with a view to updating the "Remarks" columns in the Tables of Article 9A of Appendix **30A** and Article 11 of Appendix **30** as well as the Tables, contained in the same Articles, that specify affected or affecting networks, terrestrial stations or beams of administrations.

RESOLUTION 548 (WRC-03)

Application of the grouping concept in Appendices 30 and 30A in Regions 1 and 3[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the grouping concept as it is applied in Appendices **30** and **30A** with respect to Regions 1 and 3 was considered by this Conference;

b) that the protection of assignments in the Plan and the List in Appendices **30** and **30A** is based upon an equivalent protection margin criterion;

c) that concerns have been raised that the use of the grouping concept by one administration may reduce access to spectrum resources by others;

d) that coordination of one network[2] in a group shall not lead to a reduction of coordination requirements for other networks in the same group;

e) that WRC-2000 accepted grouping in the Regions 1 and 3 List for some networks which are separated by up to 0.2° in the geostationary arc according to their respective nominal orbital locations,

noting

a) that the 2002 Conference Preparatory Meeting considered a proposed solution in which there is a limit to the number of assignments in a group or number of groups in one orbital location;

b) that the Radio Regulations Board has developed Rules of Procedure with respect to the application of the grouping concept,

---

[1] It is noted that the application of the grouping concept in Region 2 does not require any change. Therefore, the Radiocommunication Bureau shall continue to apply the grouping concept in Region 2 as it has applied it prior to this Conference.

[2] In the application of this Resolution, a network is understood as being a submission by one administration, or one administration acting on behalf of a group of administrations, to the Bureau of a set of assignments, received on the same date (except for merged networks referred to in *resolves* 4 *f)*, with the same name for the satellite network and at the same orbital location.

resolves

1 that a grouping of networks with an overall separation of not more than 0.4° in the geostationary arc, in accordance with their respective nominal orbital locations, is regarded as a grouping at the same orbital location;

2 that the limitations referred to in *resolves* 4 do not apply to grouping of networks before the inclusion of the assignments in the List;

3 that the limitations in *resolves* 4 do not apply to grouping within one network;

4 that under Appendices **30** and **30A** in Regions 1 and 3 the following principles with respect to the application of the grouping concept between networks at the same orbital location shall apply:

a) these limitations apply for networks with overlapping frequency bands;

b) for networks for which a submission is received by the Bureau under § 4.1.3 of Appendix **30** or **30A** after 4 July 2003, not more than three networks within the same overlapping frequency bandwidth can be in a group in the List except under the provisions of *d)* or *e)* below;

c) for networks for which a submission was received by the Bureau under § 4.1.3 of Appendix **30** or **30A** but not yet processed under § 4.1.5 before 5 July 2003, not more than five networks within the same overlapping frequency bandwidth can be in a group in the List except under the provisions of *d)* or *e)* below;

d) for networks for which a submission was received by the Bureau under § 4.1.3 of Appendix **30** or **30A** and processed under § 4.1.5 before 5 July 2003, the number of networks that can be in a group in the List within the same overlapping frequency bandwidth cannot be further expanded by new networks beyond five;

e) for a group of networks in the List established prior to 5 July 2003, the number of networks within the same overlapping frequency bandwidth in the group cannot be further expanded by new networks beyond five;

ebis) if the number of networks in a group in the List reaches the maximum limit specified above, no new networks can be entered into the List in this group without removal of another overlapping part of a network from the List;

f) as a provisional measure, networks in the List may be optimized or merged to reduce the number of networks in accordance with the following principles:

– no optimization or merging of networks in a group shall lead to an increased probability of harmful interference or require more protection than was the case for those networks prior to optimization/merging;

– the associated priority date and date of bringing into use for each assignment shall be maintained;

– networks in the List can be optimized or merged as described above, before 1 January 2004;

– upon entering into the List of networks submitted to the Bureau in accordance with § 4.1.3 before 5 July 2003, the List may be optimized or merged as described above;

5 that, as from 5 July 2003, in the processing and publication by the Bureau of submissions relating to Regions 1 and 3 under Article 4 of Appendices **30** or **30A** received after 2 June 2000 and the identification of affected administrations in accordance with § 4.1.5, each network in a group is examined separately, without taking into account the other networks in the group[3],

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to implement *resolves* 1 to 5 above as from 5 July 2003;

2 by 1 September 2003, to send a notice to administrations having networks in the Regions 1 and 3 List as of 5 July 2003 to bring *resolves* 4 *f)* to their attention;

3 upon processing and publication of a network for which a submission has been received by the Bureau under § 4.1.3 prior to 5 July 2003, send a notice to the notifying administration, bringing the provisions of *resolves* 4 *f)* to its attention and allowing the administration, within 30 days from the date of the notice, to optimize or merge its networks in the List in accordance with the principles in *resolves* 4 *f)*,

instructs the Radio Regulations Board

to review and revise, as appropriate, the Rules of Procedure relating to the application of the grouping concept in Regions 1 and 3.

[3] In applying § 4.1.11, the application of the new methodology in this *resolves* to networks received before 3 June 2000 shall not result in additional coordination requirements for those networks.

RESOLUTION 549 (WRC-07)

Use of the frequency band 620-790 MHz for existing assignments to stations of the broadcasting-satellite service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the Regional Radiocommunication Conference, (Geneva, 2006) (RRC-06) has adopted an Agreement and associated Plans for digital terrestrial broadcasting for Region 1, except Mongolia, and the Islamic Republic of Iran, in the frequency bands 174-230 MHz and 470-862 MHz;

b) that a number of notices have been submitted to the Radiocommunication Bureau for satellite systems and networks in the band 620-790 MHz under No. **5.311** of the Radio Regulations (Edition of 2004);

c) that many administrations have extensive infrastructure for the transmission and reception of analogue and digital television signals between 620 MHz and 790 MHz;

d) that it is necessary to protect terrestrial services such as terrestrial television broadcasting, fixed, mobile and aeronautical radionavigation services in the band 620-790 MHz (see also Nos. **5.293**, **5.300**, **5.309** and **5.312**);

e) that, as a result of the transition from analogue to digital terrestrial television broadcasting, some countries plan to make available part of that band for applications in the mobile service,

recognizing

a) that, in accordance with No. **5.311**, two frequency assignments to BSS stations, "STATSIONAR-T" and "STATSIONAR-T2", in the band 620-790 MHz were notified and brought into use and that their date of bringing into use was confirmed before 5 July 2003;

b) that this Conference has deleted No. **5.311**, in the light of the protection requirements of the terrestrial television systems and other terrestrial systems mentioned in *considering a)* to *e)* above;

c) that, according to the records of the Bureau, there has been no complaint of any harmful interference to or request for claiming protection for these two frequency assignments from the terrestrial television systems of any administration;

d) that, by Resolution 1 (RRC-06) on the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 620-790 MHz, RRC-06 *resolves to invite the 2007 World Radiocommunication Conference* "to take appropriate and necessary measures to effectively protect the broadcasting Plans adopted by RRC-06 and their subsequent evolution from the GSO-BSS and/or non-GSO BSS networks/systems which were not brought into use prior to 5 July 2003",

further recognizing

that there is a need to authorize these two frequency assignments to the BSS stations to continue their operation in providing the broadcasting-satellite service to their intended service area,

resolves

1 that the frequency assignments to the BSS stations, "STATSIONAR-T" and "STATSIONAR-T2", as described in *recognizing a)* and recorded in the Master International Frequency Register with a favourable finding, shall be allowed to continue to operate during the period of validity of the assignments in question if so decided by the notifying administration;

2 that any submission of a frequency assignment relating to the broadcasting-satellite service in the frequency band 620-790 MHz, received by the Radiocommunication Bureau under Articles **9** and/or **11**, as the case may be, other than those referred to in *resolves* 1, shall be returned to the submitting administration,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to implement this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 550 (WRC-07)

Information relating to the high-frequency broadcasting service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that this Conference reviewed the case for relieving congestion in certain of the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service;

b) that this Conference decided to maintain the present Table of Frequency Allocations in the HF bands, in view of the rapid development and use of the bands by all services;

c) that, as part of a general transition away from analogue transmission systems, digital modulation is being introduced into the HF broadcasting bands;

d) that, in common with the other services using the HF bands, the broadcasting service has an ongoing need to review the effectiveness of its use of spectrum,

noting

that Resolution **517 (Rev.WRC-07)** deals with the introduction of digitally modulated emissions in the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service,

noting further

that ITU-R Study Group 6 has prepared a wide-ranging report, namely Report ITU-R BS.2105 "Information relating to the HF broadcasting service",

resolves to invite ITU-R

to continue studies on HF broadcasting taking into account:

– technical and operational factors,

– digital transmissions, including how the introduction of these emissions will affect HF broadcasting requirements and operations,

invites administrations and Sector Members

to participate actively in the aforementioned studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 551 (WRC-07)

Use of the band 21.4-22 GHz for broadcasting-satellite service and associated feeder-link bands in Regions 1 and 3

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WARC-92 allocated the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 to the broadcasting-satellite service and the allocation came into effect on 1 April 2007;

b) that after 1 April 2007 the introduction of BSS (HDTV) systems in this band should be regulated in a flexible and equitable manner until such time as a future competent world radiocommunication conference has adopted definitive provisions for this purpose in accordance with Resolution **507 (Rev.WRC-03)**;

c) that the interim use of this band by the broadcasting-satellite service is subject to the provisions of Resolution **525 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

d) that future BSS systems in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz may provide extremely high resolution imagery (EHRI) applications as shown in Recommendation ITU-R BT.1201 and Report ITU-R BT.2042;

e) that, based on its studies, ITU-R has established basic operating parameters of BSS systems in this band, including methods of overcoming attenuation in countries with higher rainfall (Recommendation ITU-R BO.1659 and Report ITU-R BO.2071);

f) that in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, reference power flux-density for the BSS has been developed and given in Recommendation ITU-R BO.1776;

g) that in the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, intra-service sharing criteria for GSO BSS systems have been developed and given in Recommendation ITU-R BO.1785;

h) that *a priori* planning is not necessary and should be avoided as it freezes access according to technological assumptions at the time of planning and then prevents flexible use taking account of real world demand and technical developments;

i) that interim arrangements for the use of the bands are on a first-come-first-served basis;

j) that further study is needed for the spectrum usage of the band 21.4-22.0 GHz in Regions 1 and 3,

noting

that Resolution **525 (Rev.WRC-07**) identifies interim procedures for introduction of HDTV BSS systems in the band 21.4-22 GHz in Regions 1 and 3,

resolves

1 that ITU-R continue technical and regulatory studies on harmonization of spectrum usage, including planning methodologies, coordination procedures or other procedures, and BSS technologies, in preparation for WRC-11, in the 21.4-22 GHz band and the associated feeder-link bands in Regions 1 and 3, taking into account *considering h)* and *i)*;

2 that WRC-11 review the results of the studies and decide the usage of the 21.4-22 GHz band and the associated feeder-link bands in Regions 1 and 3,

invites administrations

to participate in ITU-R studies by providing contributions.

RESOLUTION 608 (WRC-03)

Use of the frequency band 1 215-1 300 MHz by systems of the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-Earth)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that WRC-2000 introduced a new allocation for the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) in the frequency band 1 260-1 300 MHz;

b) that the frequency bands 1 215-1 240 MHz and 1 240-1 260 MHz were already allocated to the RNSS;

c) that, in the band 1 215-1 260 MHz, RNSS (space-to-Earth) systems have been successfully operating for more than 20 years without any reports of interference to the radars which operate in this frequency band;

d) the importance of the continuing need for protection for the radiodetermination systems operating in the frequency band 1 215-1 300 MHz,

noting

that the provisions of No. **5.329** as adopted by this Conference, will provide for the operation of the RNSS (space-to-Earth) in the frequency band 1 215-1 300 MHz and will protect the radiolocation systems operating in that frequency band, in addition to the protection already provided to radionavigation service systems operating in the countries listed in No. **5.331**,

recognizing

1 that ITU-R carried out studies related to the protection of the radiodetermination systems operating in the frequency band 1 215-1 300 MHz and that these studies should continue pursuant to relevant ITU-R Questions, such as Questions ITU-R 62/8 and ITU-R 217/8, so as to prepare, as appropriate, ITU-R Recommendations;

2 that up to the end of WRC-2000, use of the RNSS in the band 1 215-1 260 MHz was subject only to the constraint that no harmful interference was caused to the radionavigation service in Algeria, Germany, Austria, Bahrain, Belgium, Benin, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Burundi, Cameroon, China, Croatia, Denmark, United Arab Emirates, France, Greece, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Kenya, The Former Yugoslav Rep. of Macedonia, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Mali, Mauritania, Norway, Oman, Pakistan, Netherlands, Portugal, Qatar, Serbia and Montenegro*, Senegal, Slovenia, Somalia, Sudan, Sri Lanka, Sweden, Switzerland and Turkey, furthermore, that No. **5.43** was applied,

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* Serbia and Montenegro became independent states in 2006.

resolves

that no constraints in addition to those in place prior to WRC-2000 (see *recognizing* 2) shall be placed on the use of RNSS (space-to-Earth) frequency assignments in the band 1 215-1 260 MHz brought into use until 2 June 2000,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate the contents of this Resolution to the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) for such actions as it may consider appropriate, and to invite ICAO to participate actively in the study activity identified under *recognizing* 1.

RESOLUTION 609 (Rev.WRC-07)

Protection of aeronautical radionavigation service systems from the equivalent power flux-density produced by radionavigation-satellite service networks and systems in the 1 164-1 215 MHz frequency band

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band 960-1 215 MHz is allocated on a primary basis to the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS) in all Regions;

b) that the band 1 164-1 215 MHz is also allocated on a primary basis to the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS), subject to the condition in No. **5.328A** that operation of RNSS systems shall be in accordance with this Resolution;

c) that WRC-2000 provided for implementation of a provisional aggregate power flux-density (pfd) limit during the period between WRC-2000 and WRC-03, and requested ITU-R studies on the need for an aggregate pfd limit, and revision, if necessary, of the provisional pfd limit given in No. **5.328A**;

d) that WRC-03 determined that protection of the ARNS from harmful interference can be achieved if the value of the equivalent pfd (epfd) produced by all the space stations of all RNSS (space-to-Earth) systems in the 1 164-1 215 MHz band does not exceed the level of −121.5 dB(W/m^2) in any 1 MHz band;

e) that only a limited number of RNSS systems are expected to be deployed in the 1 164-1 215 MHz band, and only a few of these systems at most would have overlapping frequencies;

f) that ARNS systems can be protected without placing undue constraints on the development and operation of RNSS systems in this band;

g) that to achieve the objectives in *considering f)*, administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems will need to agree cooperatively through consultation meetings to equitably share the aggregate epfd in a manner to achieve the level of protection for ARNS systems that is stated in *considering d)*;

h) that it may be appropriate for representatives of administrations operating or planning to operate ARNS systems to be involved in determinations made pursuant to *considering g)*;

i) that WRC-03 decided to apply the coordination provisions of Nos. **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13** to RNSS systems and networks for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, is received by the Bureau after 1 January 2005,

noting

a) that WRC-2000 invited ITU-R to conduct the appropriate technical, operational and regulatory studies on the overall compatibility between the RNSS and the ARNS in the band 960-1 215 MHz;

b) that WRC-2000 resolved to recommend that WRC-03 review the results of the studies,

recognizing

that under No. **7.5**, interested administrations have the ability, at any time, to request the assistance of the Bureau with respect to Articles **9** and **11** and associated procedures,

resolves

1 that in order to protect ARNS systems, administrations shall ensure, pursuant to this Resolution, that the epfd level produced by all space stations of all RNSS systems does not exceed the level –121.5 dB(W/m^2) in any 1 MHz band;

2 that administrations operating or planning to operate in the 1 164-1 215 MHz frequency band RNSS systems or networks shall, in collaboration, take all necessary steps, including, if necessary, by means of appropriate modifications to their systems or networks, to ensure that the aggregate interference into ARNS systems caused by such RNSS systems or networks operating co-frequency in these frequency bands is shared equitably among the systems identified in *resolves* 3 and does not exceed the level of the aggregate protection criterion given in *resolves* 1 above;

3 that administrations, in carrying out their obligations under *resolves* 1 and 2 above, shall take into account only those RNSS systems with frequency assignments in the band 1 164-1 215 MHz that have met the criteria listed in the Annex to this Resolution through appropriate information provided to the consultation meetings referred to in *considering g)*;

4 that administrations, in developing agreements to carry out their obligations under *resolves* 1 and 2 above, shall establish mechanisms to ensure that all potential RNSS system operators and administrations are given full visibility of the process;

5 that in order to allow multiple RNSS systems to operate in the frequency band 1 164-1 215 MHz, no single RNSS system shall be permitted to use up the entire interference allowance specified in *resolves* 1 above in any 1 MHz of the 1 164-1 215 MHz band (see Recommendation **608 (Rev.WRC-07)**);

6 that to achieve the objectives in *resolves* 1 and 2 above, administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems will need to agree cooperatively through consultation meetings to achieve the level of protection for ARNS systems that is stated in *resolves* 1;

7 that administrations participating in this process of epfd calculation should hold consultation meetings on a regular basis (e.g. yearly);

8 the administrations participating in the consultation meeting shall designate one administration that shall communicate to the Bureau the results of any aggregate sharing determinations made in application of *resolves* 2 above, without regard to whether such determinations result in any modifications to the published characteristics of their respective systems or networks (see Recommendation **608 (Rev.WRC-07)**);

9 that administrations operating or planning to operate ARNS systems in the 1 164-1 215 MHz band should participate, as appropriate, in discussions and determinations relating to the *resolves* above;

10 that the methodology and the reference worst-case ARNS system antenna contained in Recommendation ITU-R M.1642-2 shall be used by administrations for calculating the aggregate epfd produced by all the space stations within all RNSS systems in the band 1 164-1 215 MHz,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to participate in consultation meetings mentioned under *resolves* 6 and to observe carefully results of the epfd calculation mentioned in *resolves* 1;

2 to determine whether the pfd level in *recommends* 1 of Recommendation **608 (Rev.WRC-07)** is exceeded by any subject space station, and to report the findings of this determination to the participants in the consultation meeting;

3 to publish in the International Frequency Information Circular (BR IFIC), the information referred to in *resolves* 8 and *instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau* 2,

invites the Radiocommunication Bureau

to examine the possibility, if needed, of developing software that can be used to calculate the epfd level mentioned under *resolves* 1,

invites administrations

1 to deal with RNSS intersystem matters, as required, as early as possible;

2 to provide the Bureau and all participants in the consultation meeting with access to appropriate software used to calculate the epfd level mentioned under *resolves* 1.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 609 (Rev.WRC-07)

Criteria for application of Resolution 609 (Rev.WRC-07)

1 Submission of appropriate Advance Publication information.

2 Entry into satellite manufacturing or procurement agreement, and entry into satellite launch agreement.

The RNSS system or network operator should possess:

i) clear evidence of a binding agreement for the manufacture or procurement of its satellites; and

ii) clear evidence of a binding agreement to launch its satellites.

The manufacturing or procurement agreement should identify the contract milestones leading to the completion of manufacture or procurement of satellites required for the service provision, and the launch agreement should identify the launch date, launch site and launch service provider. The notifying administration is responsible for authenticating the evidence of agreement.

The information required under this criterion may be submitted in the form of a written commitment by the responsible administration.

3 As an alternative to satellite manufacturing or procurement and launch agreements, clear evidence of guaranteed funding arrangements for the implementation of the project would be accepted. The notifying administration is responsible for authenticating the evidence of these arrangements and for providing such evidence to other interested administrations in furtherance of its obligations under this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 610 (WRC-03)

Coordination and bilateral resolution of technical compatibility issues for radionavigation-satellite service networks and systems in the bands 1 164-1 300 MHz, 1 559-1 610 MHz and 5 010-5 030 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that WRC-2000 decided to allocate the bands 1 164-1 215 MHz, 1 260-1 300 MHz and 5 010-5 030 MHz to the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) in addition to the bands 1 215-1 260 MHz and 1 559-1 610 MHz that have already been allocated to the RNSS;

b) that this Conference established conditions for the protection of the aeronautical radionavigation service from RNSS systems in the 1 164-1 215 MHz band, for the protection of radiodetermination services from RNSS systems in the 1 215-1 300 MHz band, and for the protection of the radio astronomy service in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz from RNSS systems in the 5 010-5 030 MHz band;

c) that to date, RNSS systems have been able to resolve intersystem technical compatibility issues on a bilateral basis under Section I of Article **9**, without the need for imposition of the coordination procedures of Section II of Article **9**, however, in recent years, there has been an increase in the number of RNSS systems and networks filed with the Radiocommunication Bureau;

d) that this Conference has decided to apply, in the bands mentioned in *considering a)*, the coordination provisions of Nos. **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13** to RNSS systems and networks for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, is received by the Radiocommunication Bureau after 1 January 2005, and the provisions of No. **9.7** already apply to geostationary-satellite networks in the RNSS;

e) that it is necessary to have a basis for administrations with RNSS systems that are not subject to Nos. **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13** to engage in bilateral coordinations to resolve intersystem technical compatibility issues within the RNSS;

f) that it is desirable, in order to reduce burdens on administrations operating or planning RNSS systems or networks, to conduct bilateral coordinations between RNSS systems and networks that are either in operation or that are actually in the process of being implemented,

resolves

1 that for administrations planning to operate RNSS systems subject to coordination under Nos. **9.7**, **9.12**, **9.12A** and/or **9.13** in the bands mentioned in *considering a)*, if an administration with which coordination is requested responds to the request under No. **9.52**, the requesting administration shall, during the process of coordination and upon request by the responding administration, inform the responding administration (with a copy to the Bureau) whether it has met the criteria listed in the Annex to this Resolution with respect to the subject network or system;

2 that administrations responding under No. **9.52** to a request for coordination under Nos. **9.7**, **9.12**, **9.12A** and/or **9.13** in the bands mentioned in *considering a)*, shall, during the process of coordination mentioned in *resolves* 1 and upon request by the requesting administration, inform the requesting administration (with a copy to the Bureau) whether it has met the criteria listed in the Annex to this Resolution with respect to the subject network or system;

3 that administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems in the bands mentioned in *considering a)*, which systems are not subject to coordination under Section II of Article **9**, shall take all practicable steps to resolve issues of intersystem compatibility on a bilateral basis;

4 that in undertaking the obligations under *resolves* 3 above, administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems or networks should first address intersystem compatibility between RNSS systems or networks that are actually in operation or are in the process of being implemented;

5 that for application of *resolves* 4 above, an RNSS system or network that has satisfied the criteria listed in the Annex to this Resolution with respect to the subject network or system would be considered to be actually in the process of being implemented;

6 that when notifying the Bureau under No. **11.47** that a frequency assignment to station(s) in the RNSS in the bands mentioned in *considering a)* has been brought into use, the notifying administration, if it has not already done so, shall inform the Bureau whether it has met the criteria listed in the Annex to this Resolution;

7 that implementation of this Resolution shall be conducted in such a way as to promote the principle of equality and fairness in ensuring access for RNSS operators and planned RNSS systems in the above-referenced bands,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

to provide, on request, assistance to administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems in the bands mentioned in *considering a)* above, which systems are not subject to coordination under Section II of Article **9**, in securing bilateral agreements with other RNSS systems as early as possible.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 610 (WRC-03)

Criteria for application of Resolution 610 (WRC-03)

1 Submission of appropriate Advance Publication information.

2 Entry into satellite manufacturing or procurement agreement, and entry into satellite launch agreement.

The RNSS system or network operator should possess:

i) clear evidence of a binding agreement for the manufacture or procurement of its satellites; and

ii) clear evidence of a binding agreement to launch its satellites.

The manufacturing or procurement agreement should identify the contract milestones leading to the completion of manufacture or procurement of satellites required for the service provision, and the launch agreement should identify the launch date, launch site and launch service provider. The notifying administration is responsible for authenticating the evidence of agreement.

The information required under this criterion may be submitted in the form of a written commitment by the responsible administration.

3 As an alternative to satellite manufacturing or procurement and launch agreements, clear evidence of guaranteed funding arrangements for the implementation of the project would be accepted. The notifying administration is responsible for authenticating the evidence of these arrangements.

RESOLUTION 611 (WRC-07)

Use of portion of the VHF band by the radiolocation service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band below 300 MHz is primarily allocated to terrestrial services;

b) that the radiolocation service has no global primary allocations in the band 30-300 MHz;

c) that the frequency band 138-144 MHz is allocated to the radiolocation service on a primary basis in Region 2, the frequency band 216-225 MHz is allocated to radiolocation service on a secondary basis in Region 2, and the frequency band 223-230 MHz is also allocated to radiolocation service on a secondary basis in Region 3;

d) the current regional allocations to radiolocation service are used on the shared basis with other services, specifically with fixed and mobile services;

e) that due to extensive development of broadcasting service in the frequency bands 174-230 MHz and 470-862 MHz there is an increasing need to accommodate the existing radiolocation service operating in these bands to different frequency bands, while improving the interference mitigation techniques and introducing modern technologies;

f) that there are emerging requirements for increased resolution and range for radars operation;

g) that VHF radiowaves propagate well through the ionosphere, thus enabling various space object detection applications including remote space sensing and asteroid detection, as well as for defining the position of natural and artificial Earth satellites, from terrestrial-based radiolocation systems;

h) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1372 identifies interference reduction techniques which enhance compatibility among radar systems;

i) that over the horizon operation of radiolocation in VHF frequency range is technically not feasible;

j) that current requirements for radiolocation systems for space-object detection from terrestrial locations in portion of the band 30-300 MHz are based on 2 MHz bandwidth systems, however allocation with a wider frequency range may provide flexibility and facilitate sharing with existing services;

k) that, to provide adequate spectrum for new radar systems, there is a need to allocate on a primary basis worldwide additional spectrum in the 30-300 MHz frequency range,

recognizing

a) that it is important to ensure radiolocation radars can be operated compatibly with the existing primary services having allocations in the portions of the VHF band;

b) that ITU-R initiated studies in response to Question ITU-R 237/8 on characteristics and protection criteria for radars operating in the radiolocation service in the frequency band 30-300 MHz,

resolves

1 to consider at WRC-11 a primary allocation to the radiolocation service in the portion of the band 30-300 MHz for the implementation of new applications in the radiolocation service, with bandwidth no larger than 2 MHz, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies;

2 that the introduction of new systems in the radiolocation service shall be avoided in the frequency bands 156.4875-156.8375 MHz and 161.9625-162.0375 MHz, which are used by distress and safety applications in the maritime mobile service,

invites ITU-R

1 to continue to study, as a matter of urgency, the technical characteristics, protection criteria, and other factors to ensure that radiolocation systems can operate compatibly with systems operating in accordance with the Table in service in the 30-300 MHz frequency range band;

2 to include the results of the above studies in one or more new or existing ITU-R Recommendations, if appropriate;

3 to complete these studies in time for WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 612 (WRC-07)

Use of the radiolocation service between 3 and 50 MHz to support high-frequency oceanographic radar operations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that there is increasing interest, on a global basis, in the operation of high-frequency oceanographic radars for measurement of coastal sea surface conditions to support environmental, oceanographic, meteorological, climatological, maritime and disaster mitigation operations;

b) that high-frequency oceanographic radars are also known in parts of the world as HF ocean radars, HF wave height sensing radars or HF surface wave radars;

c) that high-frequency oceanographic radars operate through the use of ground-wave propagation;

d) that high-frequency oceanographic radar technology has applications in global maritime domain awareness by allowing the long-range sensing of surface vessels, which provides a benefit to the global safety and security of shipping and ports;

e) that operation of high-frequency oceanographic radars provides benefits to society through environmental protection, disaster preparedness, public health protection, improved meteorological operations, increased coastal and maritime safety and enhancement of national economies;

f) that high-frequency oceanographic radars have been operated on an experimental basis around the world, providing an understanding of spectrum needs and spectrum sharing considerations, as well as an understanding of the benefits these systems provide;

g) that between 3 and 50 MHz, no radiolocation allocations exist;

h) that performance and data requirements dictate the regions of spectrum that can be used by high-frequency oceanographic radar systems for ocean observations,

recognizing

a) that high-frequency oceanographic radars have been operated on an experimental basis for more than 30 years;

b) that developers of the experimental systems have implemented techniques to make the most efficient use of the spectrum and mitigate interference to other radio services;

c) that the objective of Question ITU-R 240/8 is to study the most appropriate frequency bands for operation of high-frequency oceanographic radars considering both radar system requirements and the protection of existing services;

d) that high-frequency oceanographic radars operate with peak power levels on the order of 50 W,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to identify high-frequency oceanographic radar system applications between 3 and 50 MHz, including bandwidth requirements, appropriate portions of this band for these applications, and other characteristics necessary to conduct sharing studies;

2 to invite ITU-R to conduct sharing analyses between the radiolocation service applications identified under *resolves* 1 and incumbent services in the bands identified to be suitable for the operation of high-frequency oceanographic radar systems;

3 that, if compatibility with existing services is confirmed under *resolves* 2, to recommend that WRC-11 consider allocations to the radiolocation service in several suitable bands between 3 and 50 MHz, as determined in the ITU-R studies, each band not exceeding 600 kHz, for the operation of oceanographic radars,

invites administrations

to contribute to the sharing studies between the radiolocation service and incumbent services in portions of the 3 to 50 MHz band identified as suitable for high-frequency oceanographic radar operations,

invites ITU-R

to complete the necessary studies, as a matter of urgency, taking into account the present use of the allocated band, with a view to presenting, at the appropriate time, the technical information likely to be required as a basis for the work of WRC-11,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the International Maritime Organization (IMO), World Meteorological Organization (WMO) and other international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 613 (WRC-07)

Global primary allocation to the radiodetermination-satellite service in the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz (space-to-Earth)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that determination of position and time using satellite systems offers great societal benefits by, for example, enabling efficiencies in transport utilization, banking and location-based services;

b) that the accuracy of positions and timing determined by means of transmissions from space subject to ionospheric delays can be improved using multiple frequencies;

c) that the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz is allocated worldwide to the fixed, mobile and mobile-satellite services (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis;

d) that the band 2 400-2 500 MHz is also designated for industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications. Radiocommunication services operating within this band must accept harmful interference which may be caused by these applications. ISM equipment operating in these bands is subject to the provisions of No. **15.13**;

e) that the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz is also allocated to radiolocation on a primary basis in Regions 2 and 3 and on a secondary basis in Region 1;

f) that the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz is already allocated to the radiodetermination-satellite service on a primary basis in Region 2 and on a secondary basis in Region 3, and that in addition No. **5.371** specifies a secondary allocation in Region 1 and No. **5.400** a primary allocation in 22 countries of Regions 1 and 3;

g) that systems in the radiodetermination-satellite service (RDSS) already use the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz (space-to-Earth) in parts of Region 3 to provide position and timing determination;

h) that in Europe a radionavigation-satellite system is under development that intends to use the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz in response to the growing need of public end users for positioning and timing applications,

recognizing

a) that mobile satellite systems using the 2 483.5-2 500 MHz band provide telecommunication services in many remote areas;

b) that other bands are available for radiodetermination- and radionavigation-satellite services,

noting

that the proposed allocation is not intended to prevent the development of other services in the same frequency band but for this to be done in a regulated manner. ITU-R may need to develop the appropriate sharing criteria, taking into account other in-band services,

resolves to invite ITU-R

to conduct, and complete in time for WRC-11, the appropriate technical, operational and regulatory studies leading to technical and procedural recommendations to the Conference enabling it to decide whether a global primary allocation for the radiodetermination-satellite service in the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz (space-to-Earth) is compatible with other services in the band,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 614 (WRC-07)

Use of the band 15.4-15.7 GHz by the radiolocation service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS) has an allocation on a primary basis in the frequency range 15.4-15.7 GHz;

b) that the radionavigation service is a safety service used permanently or temporarily for the safeguarding of human life (No. **1.59**);

c) that in accordance with No. **4.10** Member States are to recognize that the safety aspects of radionavigation and other safety services require special measures to ensure their freedom from harmful interference; it is necessary therefore to take this factor into account in the assignment and use of frequencies;

d) that the mobile aspect of the aeronautical radionavigation service may require the stations of this service to be used in unspecified points;

e) that the fixed-satellite service has an allocation on a primary basis in the frequency range 15.43-15.63 GHz taking into account the constraints of No. **5.511A**, as well as the bands 15.4-15.43 and 15.63-15.7 GHz taking into account constraints of No. **5.511D**;

f) that there are no ICAO-standard ARNS systems operating in this band and that those ARNS systems that do use this band are radars that have similar technical and operational characteristics as radiolocation systems;

g) that, to provide adequate spectrum for new radar systems, there is a need to allocate on a primary basis worldwide additional spectrum in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz for the radiolocation service;

h) that emerging requirements for increased resolution and range accuracy necessitate wider emission bandwidths;

i) that radiolocation services using system low duty cycle emissions, scanning beams and interference reduction have demonstrated compatible operations with radionavigation radars in several bands (2 900-3 100 MHz, 9 000-9 200 MHz and 9 300-9 500 MHz) over many years;

j) that radars in the radiolocation service operate on a primary basis worldwide in the band 15.7-17.3 GHz;

k) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1372 identifies interference reduction techniques which enhance compatibility among radar systems;

l) that Report ITU-R M.2076 contains further mitigation factors for radiolocation interference to radionavigation radars in the 9 GHz band, many of which apply to the band 15.4-15.7 GHz;

m) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1730 provides information on the technical characteristics and protection criteria for the radiolocation service in the band 15.7-17.3 GHz,

recognizing

a) that it is important to ensure radiolocation radars can be operated compatibly with the existing primary services having allocations in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz and with the radio astronomy service (RAS) in the adjacent band 15.35-15.40 GHz;

b) that a primary allocation worldwide may be required to give developers of radar systems operating in the radiolocation service, manufacturers and investors confidence that their systems will have the regulatory assurance to operate globally;

c) that the safety aspects of the radionavigation service in No. **1.59** require special measures to ensure the freedom of harmful interference in accordance with No. **4.10**,

resolves

to consider at WRC-11 a primary allocation to the radiolocation service in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies,

invites ITU-R

1 to study, as a matter of urgency, the technical characteristics, protection criteria, and other factors to ensure that radiolocation systems can operate compatibly with systems in the aeronautical radionavigation and fixed-satellite services in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz, taking account of the safety nature of the aeronautical radionavigation service;

2 to study, as a matter of urgency, the compatibility between the radiolocation service in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz and RAS in the adjacent band 15.35-15.40 GHz;

3 to include the results of the above studies in one or more new or existing ITU-R Recommendations;

4 to complete these studies in time for WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 641 (Rev.HFBC-87)

Use of the frequency band 7 000-7 100 kHz

The World Administrative Radio Conference for the Planning of the HF Bands Allocated to the Broadcasting Service (Geneva, 1987),

considering

a) that the sharing of frequency bands by the amateur and broadcasting services is undesirable and should be avoided;

b) that it is desirable to have world-wide exclusive allocations for these services in band 7;

c) that the band 7 000-7 100 kHz is allocated on a world-wide basis exclusively to the amateur service,

resolves

that the broadcasting service shall be prohibited in the band 7 000-7 100 kHz and that the broadcasting stations operating on frequencies in this band shall cease such operation,

urges

the administrations responsible for the broadcasting stations operating on frequencies in the band 7 000-7 100 kHz to take the necessary steps to ensure that such operation ceases immediately,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of administrations.

RESOLUTION 642

Relating to the bringing into use of earth stations in the amateur-satellite service

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

recognizing

that the procedures of Articles **9** and **11** are applicable to the amateur-satellite service,

recognizing further

a) that the characteristics of earth stations in the amateur-satellite service vary widely;

b) that space stations in the amateur-satellite service are intended for multiple access by amateur earth stations in all countries;

c) that coordination among stations in the amateur and amateur-satellite services is accomplished without the need for formal procedures;

d) that the burden of terminating any harmful interference is placed upon the administration authorizing a space station in the amateur-satellite service pursuant to the provisions of No. **25.11**,

notes

that certain information specified in Appendix **4** cannot reasonably be provided for earth stations in the amateur-satellite service,

resolves

1 that when an administration (or one acting on behalf of a group of named administrations) intends to establish a satellite system in the amateur-satellite service and wishes to publish information with respect to earth stations in that system it may:

1.1 communicate to the Radiocommunication Bureau all or part of the information listed in Appendix **4**; the Bureau shall publish such information in a Special Section of its BR IFIC requesting comments to be communicated within a period of four months after the date of publication;

1.2 notify under Nos. **11.2** to **11.8** all or part of the information listed in Appendix **4**; the Bureau shall record it in a special list;

2 that this information shall include at least the characteristics of a typical amateur earth station in the amateur-satellite service having the facility to transmit signals to the space station to initiate, modify, or terminate the functions of the space station.

RESOLUTION 644 (Rev.WRC-07)

Radiocommunication resources for early warning, disaster mitigation and relief operations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that administrations have been urged to take all practical steps to facilitate the rapid deployment and effective use of telecommunication resources for early warning, disaster mitigation and disaster relief operations by reducing and, where possible, removing regulatory barriers and strengthening global, regional and transborder cooperation between States;

b) the potential of modern telecommunication technologies as an essential tool for disaster mitigation and relief operations and the vital role of telecommunications and ICT for the safety and security of relief workers in the field;

c) the particular needs of developing countries and the special requirements of the inhabitants living in high risk areas exposed to disasters, as well as those living in remote areas;

d) the work carried out by the Telecommunication Standardization Sector in standardizing the common alerting protocol (CAP), through the approval of the relevant CAP Recommendation;

e) that, under the Strategic Plan of the Union 2008-2011, "encouraging the effective use of telecommunications/ICTs and modern technologies during critical emergencies, as a crucial part of disaster early warning, mitigation, management and relief strategies, in light of the accelerating pace of change in the global environment and of the action lines of WSIS", is considered one of the three major priorities for ITU in this period;

f) that the majority of terrestrial networks in affected areas were damaged during recent disasters,

recognizing

a) Article 40 of the Constitution, on priority of telecommunications concerning safety of life;

b) Article 46 of the Constitution, on distress calls and messages;

c) No. 91 of the Tunis Agenda for the Information Society adopted by the second phase of the World Summit on the Information Society and in particular provision c): "Working expeditiously towards the establishment of standards-based monitoring and worldwide early-warning systems linked to national and regional networks and facilitating emergency disaster response all over the world, particularly in high-risk regions";

d) Resolution 34 (Rev. Doha, 2006) of the World Telecommunication Development Conference on the role of telecommunications/ICT in early warning and mitigation of disasters and humanitarian assistance, as well as ITU-D Question 22/2 "Utilization of ICT for disaster management, resources and active and passive space-based sensing systems as they apply to disaster and emergency relief situations";

e) Resolution 36 (Rev. Antalya, 2006) of the Plenipotentiary Conference on telecommunications/information and communication technology in the service of humanitarian assistance;

f) Resolution 136 (Antalya, 2006) of the Plenipotentiary Conference on the use of telecommunications/information and communication technologies for monitoring and management in emergency and disaster situations for early warning, prevention, mitigation and relief;

g) Resolution ITU-R 53 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), on the use of radiocommunications in disaster response and relief;

h) Resolution ITU-R 55 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), on the ITU-R studies of disaster prediction, detection, mitigation and relief,

noting

the close relation of this Resolution with Resolution **646 (WRC-03)** on public protection and disaster relief and Resolution **647 (WRC-07)** on spectrum management guidelines for emergency and disaster relief radiocommunication, and the need to coordinate activities under these Resolutions in order to prevent any possible overlap,

resolves

1 that the ITU Radiocommunication Sector (ITU-R) continue to study, as a matter of urgency, those aspects of radiocommunications/ICT that are relevant to early warning, disaster mitigation and relief operations, such as decentralized means of telecommunications that are appropriate and generally available, including amateur terrestrial and satellite radio facilities, mobile and portable satellite terminals, as well as the use of passive space-based sensing systems;

2 to urge the ITU-R Study Groups, taking into account the scope of ongoing studies/activities appended to Resolution ITU-R 55 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), to accelerate their work, particularly in the areas of disaster prediction, detection, mitigation and relief,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to support administrations in their work towards the implementation of both Resolutions 36 (Rev. Antalya, 2006) and 136 (Antalya, 2006), as well as the Tampere Convention;

2 to collaborate, as appropriate, with the United Nations Working Group on Emergency Telecommunications (WGET);

3 to participate actively in, and contribute to, the ITU Global Forum on Effective Use of Telecommunications/ICT for Disaster Management: Saving Lives (Geneva, 10-12 December 2007);

4 to participate in, and contribute to, Telecommunications for Disaster Relief and Mitigation – Partnership Coordination Panel (PCP-TDR);

5 to synchronize activities between this Resolution, Resolution **646 (WRC-03)** and Resolution **647 (WRC-07)** to prevent a possible overlap.

RESOLUTION 646 (WRC-03)

Public protection and disaster relief

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the term "public protection radiocommunication" refers to radiocommunications used by responsible agencies and organizations dealing with maintenance of law and order, protection of life and property and emergency situations;

b) that the term "disaster relief radiocommunication" refers to radiocommunications used by agencies and organizations dealing with a serious disruption of the functioning of society, posing a significant widespread threat to human life, health, property or the environment, whether caused by accident, natural phenomena or human activity, and whether developing suddenly or as a result of complex, long-term processes;

c) the growing telecommunication and radiocommunication needs of public protection agencies and organizations, including those dealing with emergency situations and disaster relief, that are vital to the maintenance of law and order, protection of life and property, disaster relief and emergency response;

d) that many administrations wish to promote interoperability and interworking between systems used for public protection and disaster relief, both nationally and for cross-border operations in emergency situations and for disaster relief;

e) that current public protection and disaster relief applications are mostly narrow-band supporting voice and low data-rate applications, typically in channel bandwidths of 25 kHz or less;

f) that, although there will continue to be narrow-band requirements, many future applications will be wideband (indicative data rates in the order of 384-500 kbit/s) and/or broadband (indicative data rates in the order of 1-100 Mbit/s) with channel bandwidths dependent on the use of spectrally efficient technologies;

g) that new technologies for wideband and broadband public protection and disaster relief applications are being developed in various standards organizations[1];

h) that continuing development of new technologies such as IMT-2000 and systems beyond IMT-2000 and Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) may be able to support or supplement advanced public protection and disaster relief applications;

i) that some commercial terrestrial and satellite systems are complementing the dedicated systems in support of public protection and disaster relief, that the use of commercial solutions will be in response to technology development and market demands and that this may affect the spectrum required for those applications and for commercial networks;

j) that Resolution 36 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference urges Member States to facilitate use of telecommunications for the safety and security of the personnel of humanitarian organizations;

k) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1637 offers guidance to facilitate the global circulation of radiocommunication equipment in emergency and disaster relief situations;

l) that some administrations may have different operational needs and spectrum requirements for public protection and disaster relief applications depending on the circumstances;

m) that the Tampere Convention on the Provision of Telecommunications Resources for Disaster Mitigation and Relief Operations (Tampere, 1998), an international treaty deposited with the United Nations Secretary-General and related United Nations General Assembly Resolutions and Reports are also relevant in this regard,

---

[1] For example, a joint standardization programme between the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) and the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA), known as Project MESA (Mobility for Emergency and Safety Applications) has commenced for broadband public protection and disaster relief. Also, the Working Group on Emergency Telecommunications (WGET), convened by the United Nations Office for Humanitarian Affairs (OCHA), is an open forum to facilitate the use of telecommunications in the service of humanitarian assistance comprising United Nations entities, major non-governmental organizations, the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC), ITU and experts from the private sector and academia. Another platform for coordination and to foster harmonized global Telecommunication for Disaster Relief (TDR) standards is the TDR Partnership Coordination Panel, which has just been established under the coordination of ITU with participation of international telecommunication service providers, related government departments, standards development organizations, and disaster relief organizations.

recognizing

a) the benefits of spectrum harmonization such as:

– increased potential for interoperability;

– a broader manufacturing base and increased volume of equipment resulting in economies of scale and expanded equipment availability;

– improved spectrum management and planning; and

– enhanced cross-border coordination and circulation of equipment;

b) that the organizational distinction between public protection activities and disaster relief activities are matters for administrations to determine at the national level;

c) that national spectrum planning for public protection and disaster relief needs to have regard to cooperation and bilateral consultation with other concerned administrations, which should be facilitated by greater levels of spectrum harmonization;

d) the benefits of cooperation between countries for the provision of effective and appropriate humanitarian assistance in case of disasters, particularly in view of the special operational requirements of such activities involving multinational response;

e) the needs of countries, particularly the developing countries[2], for low-cost communication equipment;

f) that the trend is to increase the use of technologies based on Internet Protocols;

g) that currently some bands or parts thereof have been designated for existing public protection and disaster relief operations, as documented in Report ITU-R M.2033[3];

h) that for solving future bandwidth requirements, there are several emerging technology developments such as software-defined radio, advanced compression and networking techniques that may reduce the amount of new spectrum required to support some public protection and disaster relief applications;

i) that in times of disasters, if most terrestrial-based networks are destroyed or impaired, amateur, satellite and other non-ground-based networks may be available to provide communication services to assist in public protection and disaster relief efforts;

---

[2] Taking into account, for example, the ITU-D Handbook on disaster relief.

[3] 3-30, 68-88, 138-144, 148-174, 380-400 MHz (including CEPT designation of 380-385/390-395 MHz), 400-430, 440-470, 764-776, 794-806 and 806-869 MHz (including CITEL designation of 821-824/866-869 MHz).

j) that the amount of spectrum needed for public protection on a daily basis can differ significantly between countries, that certain amounts of spectrum are already in use in various countries for narrow-band applications, and that in response to a disaster, access to additional spectrum on a temporary basis may be required;

k) that in order to achieve spectrum harmonization, a solution based on regional frequency ranges[4] may enable administrations to benefit from harmonization while continuing to meet national planning requirements;

l) that not all frequencies within an identified common frequency range will be available within each country;

m) that the identification of a common frequency range within which equipment could operate may ease the interoperability and/or inter-working, with mutual cooperation and consultation, especially in national, regional and cross-border emergency situations and disaster relief activities;

n) that when a disaster occurs, the public protection and disaster relief agencies are usually the first on the scene using their day-to-day communication systems, but that in most cases other agencies and organizations may also be involved in disaster relief operations,

noting

a) that many administrations use frequency bands below 1 GHz for narrow-band public protection and disaster relief applications;

b) that applications requiring large coverage areas and providing good signal availability would generally be accommodated in lower frequency bands and that applications requiring wider bandwidths would generally be accommodated in progressively higher bands;

c) that public protection and disaster relief agencies and organizations have an initial set of requirements, including but not limited to interoperability, secure and reliable communications, sufficient capacity to respond to emergencies, priority access in the use of non-dedicated systems, fast response times, ability to handle multiple group calls and the ability to cover large areas as described in Report ITU-R M.2033;

d) that, while harmonization may be one method of realizing the desired benefits, in some countries, the use of multiple frequency bands can contribute to meeting the communication needs in disaster situations;

---

[4] In the context of this Resolution, the term “frequency range” means a range of frequencies over which a radio equipment is envisaged to be capable of operating but limited to specific frequency band(s) according to national conditions and requirements.

e) that many administrations have made significant investments in public protection and disaster relief systems;

f) that flexibility must be afforded to disaster relief agencies and organizations to use current and future radiocommunications, so as to facilitate their humanitarian operations,

emphasizing

a) that the frequency bands identified in this Resolution are allocated to a variety of services in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Radio Regulations and are currently used intensively by the fixed, mobile, mobile satellite and broadcasting services;

b) that flexibility must be afforded to administrations:

– to determine, at national level, how much spectrum to make available for public protection and disaster relief from the bands identified in this Resolution in order to meet their particular national requirements;

– to have the ability for bands identified in this Resolution to be used by all services having allocations within those bands according to the provisions of the Radio Regulations, taking into account the existing applications and their evolution;

– to determine the need and timing of availability as well as the conditions of usage of the bands identified in this Resolution for public protection and disaster relief in order to meet specific national situations,

resolves

1 to strongly recommend administrations to use regionally harmonized bands for public protection and disaster relief to the maximum extent possible, taking into account the national and regional requirements and also having regard to any needed consultation and cooperation with other concerned countries;

2 to encourage administrations, for the purposes of achieving regionally harmonized frequency bands/ranges for advanced public protection and disaster relief solutions, to consider the following identified frequency bands/ranges or parts thereof when undertaking their national planning:

– in Region 1: 380-470 MHz as the frequency range within which the band 380-385/ 390-395 MHz is a preferred core harmonized band for permanent public protection activities within certain countries of Region 1 which have given their agreement;

– in Region 2 [5]: 746-806 MHz, 806-869 MHz, 4 940-4 990 MHz;

– in Region 3 [6]: 406.1-430 MHz, 440-470 MHz, 806-824/851-869 MHz, 4 940-4 990 MHz and 5 850-5 925 MHz;

3 that the identification of the above frequency bands/ranges for public protection and disaster relief does not preclude the use of these bands/frequencies by any application within the services to which these bands/frequencies are allocated and does not preclude the use of nor establish priority over any other frequencies for public protection and disaster relief in accordance with the Radio Regulations;

4 to encourage administrations, in emergency and disaster relief situations, to satisfy temporary needs for frequencies in addition to what may be normally provided for in agreements with the concerned administrations;

5 that administrations encourage public protection and disaster relief agencies and organizations to utilize both existing and new technologies and solutions (satellite and terrestrial), to the extent practicable, to satisfy interoperability requirements and to further the goals of public protection and disaster relief;

6 that administrations may encourage agencies and organizations to use advanced wireless solutions taking into account *considering h)* and *i)* for providing complementary support to public protection and disaster relief;

7 to encourage administrations to facilitate cross-border circulation of radiocommunication equipment intended for use in emergency and disaster relief situations through mutual cooperation and consultation without hindering national legislation;

8 that administrations encourage public protection and disaster relief agencies and organizations to utilize relevant ITU-R Recommendations in planning spectrum use and implementing technology and systems supporting public protection and disaster relief;

9 to encourage administrations to continue to work closely with their public protection and disaster relief community to further refine the operational requirements for public protection and disaster relief activities;

10 that manufacturers should be encouraged to take this Resolution into account in future equipment designs, including the need for administrations to operate within different parts of the identified bands,

---

[5] Venezuela has identified the band 380-400 MHz for public protection and disaster relief applications.

[6] Some countries in Region 3 have also identified the bands 380-400 MHz and 746-806 MHz for public protection and disaster relief applications.

invites ITU-R

1 to continue its technical studies and to make recommendations concerning technical and operational implementation, as necessary, for advanced solutions to meet the needs of public protection and disaster relief radiocommunication applications, taking into account the capabilities, evolution and any resulting transition requirements of the existing systems, particularly those of many developing countries, for national and international operations;

2 to conduct further appropriate technical studies in support of possible additional identification of other frequency ranges to meet the particular needs of certain countries in Region 1 which have given their agreement, especially in order to meet the radiocommunication needs of public protection and disaster relief agencies.

RESOLUTION 647 (WRC-07)

Spectrum management guidelines for emergency and disaster relief radiocommunication[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) the Tampere Convention on the Provision of Telecommunications Resources for Disaster Mitigation and Relief Operations (Tampere, 1998)[2], an international treaty deposited with the United Nations Secretary-General, calls on the States Parties, when possible, and in conformity with their national law, to develop and implement measures to facilitate the availability of telecommunication resources for such operations;

b) that some administrations may have different operational needs and spectrum requirements for emergency and disaster-relief applications, depending on the circumstances;

c) that the immediate availability of pre-identified and pre-coordinated frequencies, and/or spectrum-flexible technologies to allow near-instantaneous decisions to make use of available spectrum, are important for successful telecommunications in the very early stages of humanitarian assistance intervention for disaster relief,

recognizing

a) Resolution 36 (Rev. Antalya, 2006) of the Plenipotentiary Conference on telecommunications/information and communication technologies (ICTs) in the service of humanitarian assistance;

b) Resolution 136 (Antalya, 2006) of the Plenipotentiary Conference on the use of telecommunications/information and communication technologies for monitoring and management in emergency and disaster situations for early warning, prevention, mitigation and relief;

---

1 The term “emergency and disaster relief radiocommunication” refers to radiocommunications used by agencies and organizations dealing with a serious disruption of the functioning of society, posing a significant widespread threat to human life, health, property or the environment, whether caused by accident, natural phenomena or human activity, and whether occurring suddenly or as a result of complex, long-term processes.

2 However, a number of countries have not ratified the Tampere Convention.

c) Resolution 34 (Rev.Doha, 2006) of the World Telecommunication Development Conference (WTDC) on the role of telecommunications/ICT in early warning and mitigation of disasters and humanitarian assistance, as well as ITU-D Question 22/2 "Utilization of ICT for disaster management, resources, and active and passive space-based sensing systems as they apply to disaster and emergency relief situations";

d) Resolution 48 (Doha, 2006) of WTDC on strengthening cooperation among telecommunication regulators;

e) Resolution **644 (Rev.WRC-07)** on radiocommunication resources for early warning, disaster mitigation and relief operations;

f) Programme 6 (Least developed countries and small island developing states, and emergency communications), a revised version of which was adopted by WTDC (Doha, 2006);

g) Resolution **646 (WRC-03)** on public protection and disaster relief;

h) Recommendation ITU-R M.1637, which offers guidance to facilitate the global circulation of radiocommunication equipment in emergency and disaster relief situations;

i) Report ITU-R M.2033, which contains information on some bands or parts thereof which have been designated for disaster relief operations,

aware

of the progress made in regional organizations around the world, and in particular in regional telecommunication organizations, on matters related to emergency communications planning and response,

recognizing further

a) Resolution ITU-R 55 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), which invites the ITU-R Study Groups to take into consideration the scope of ongoing studies/activities outlined in the annex to the Resolution, and to develop guidelines related to the management of radiocommunications in disaster prediction, detection, mitigation and relief, collaboratively and cooperatively, within ITU and with organizations external to the Union, in order to avoid duplication of effort;

b) Resolution ITU-R 53 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), which instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau to assist Member States with their emergency radiocommunication preparedness activities such as the listing of currently available frequencies for use in emergency situations for inclusion in a database maintained by the Bureau,

noting

a) that when a disaster occurs, the disaster relief agencies are usually the first on the scene using their day-to-day communication systems, but that in most cases other agencies and organizations may also be involved in disaster relief operations;

b) that there is a critical requirement to perform immediate spectrum management actions, including frequency coordination, sharing and spectrum reuse, within a disaster area;

c) that national spectrum planning for emergency and disaster relief should take into account the need for cooperation and bilateral consultation with other concerned administrations, which can be facilitated by spectrum harmonization and/or spectrum-flexible technology, as well as agreed spectrum management guidelines pertaining to disaster relief and emergency planning;

d) that in times of disasters, radiocommunication facilities may be destroyed or impaired and the national regulatory authorities may not be able to provide the necessary spectrum management services for the deployment of radio systems for relief operations;

e) that the identification of frequency availability within individual administrations within which equipment could operate, or the use of spectrum-flexible equipment that allows for operation in various spectrum-access scenarios, may ease the interoperability and/or interworking, with mutual cooperation and consultation, especially in national, regional and cross-border emergency situations and disaster relief activities,

noting further

a) that flexibility must be afforded to disaster relief agencies and organizations to use current and future radiocommunications, so as to facilitate their humanitarian operations;

b) that it is in the interest of administrations and disaster relief agencies and organizations to have access to updated information on national spectrum planning for emergency and disaster relief,

resolves

1 to encourage administrations to consider global and/or regional frequency bands/ranges for emergency and disaster relief when undertaking their national planning and to communicate this information to the Bureau;

2 to encourage administrations to maintain available frequencies for use in the very early stages of humanitarian assistance intervention for disaster relief,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to assist Member States with their emergency communication preparedness activities by establishing a database of currently available frequencies for use in emergency situations, which are not limited to those listed in Resolution **646 (WRC-03)**, and by issuing an appropriate listing, taking into account Resolution ITU-R 53 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007);

2 to maintain the database and facilitate online access thereto by administrations, national regulatory authorities, disaster relief agencies and organizations, in particular the United Nations Emergency Relief Coordinator, in accordance with the operating procedures developed for disaster situations;

3 to collaborate with the United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs and other organizations, as appropriate, in the development and dissemination of standard operating procedures and relevant spectrum management practices for use in the event of a disaster situation;

4 to take into consideration all relevant activities in ITU's other two Sectors and General Secretariat;

5 to report on the progress on this Resolution to subsequent World Radiocommunication Conferences,

invites ITU-R

to conduct studies as necessary, and as a matter of urgency, in support of the establishment of appropriate spectrum management guidelines applicable in emergency and disaster relief operations,

urges administrations

1 to participate in the emergency communication preparedness activities described above and to provide the relevant information to the Bureau concerning their national frequency allocations and spectrum management practices for emergency and disaster relief radiocommunications, taking into account Resolution ITU-R 53 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007);

2 to assist in keeping the database up to date by advising the Bureau on an ongoing basis of any modifications to the information requested above.

RESOLUTION 671 (WRC-07)

Recognition of systems in the meteorological aids service in the frequency range below 20 kHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that lightning detection systems used by meteorological organizations are long-established, passive applications which have operational, safety-of-life considerations providing warnings of extreme weather events to a range of organizations and customers including emergency services, aviation, defence, the utilities and the public;

b) that although lightning strikes emit electromagnetic waves over a range of frequencies, the propagation characteristics below 20 kHz make the frequency range of about 9 kHz to 20 kHz the most suitable for detection;

c) that to avoid interference in certain parts of the world, the centre frequency of a current international network of lightning detection stations, which had been centred on 9.765625 kHz since 1939, has recently had to be moved to 13.733 kHz;

d) that other lightning detection systems often use a combination of UHF and LF frequencies, but these provide more limited coverage than systems operating at VLF frequencies;

e) that it is expected that between 30 and 40 reception stations would be needed at VLF frequencies to provide global coverage;

f) that these systems have coexisted with services already having allocations in potential spectrum for systems in the meteorological aid service for a considerable period of time without interference,

recognizing

a) that the accurate location of lightning is important to public safety. As well as the dangers of the lightning strike itself, thunderstorms can result in intense precipitation with consequent flooding, severe icing, wind shear, turbulence and gusting winds;

b) that recent instances of interference have increased concerns that lightning detection systems may not be able to maintain the quality of service or to provide global coverage unless recognition is afforded to these systems in the Radio Regulations, and coordination with other services is carried out properly;

c) that this passive use is poorly protected at present;

d) that it is desirable to allocate frequencies to the meteorological aids service for lightning detection systems in spectrum which is not shared with high-power systems,

noting

a) that the 3 dB bandwidth of existing lightning detection systems is approximately 2.5 kHz and hence an allocation of between 3 and 5 kHz bandwidth would be required;

b) that the proposed allocation is not intended to prevent the development of other services in the same frequency band but for this to be done in a regulated manner. ITU-R may need to develop the appropriate sharing criteria, taking into account both in-band and adjacent band services,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to conduct, and complete in time for WRC-11, the required studies leading to technical and procedural recommendations to the Conference enabling it to decide on an appropriate method of providing recognition to long-established systems, including the possibility of making an allocation to the meteorological aids service in the frequency range below 20 kHz;

2 that the studies referred to in *resolves* 1, without placing constraints on existing services operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations, shall include sharing and compatibility studies with services already having allocations in potential spectrum for systems in the meteorological aids service taking into account the needs of other services,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 672 (WRC-07)

Extension of the allocation to the meteorological-satellite service in the band 7 750-7 850 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band 7 750-7 850 MHz is allocated to the fixed, the meteorological-satellite (space-to-Earth) and the mobile services;

b) that this band is currently used by non-geostationary polar orbiting meteorological satellites transmitting typically in data dump modes to large earth stations;

c) the maximum contact times between satellites and corresponding earth stations occur at high latitudes resulting in optimum deployment of such earth stations at high latitudes in the northern and the southern hemispheres;

d) that the bandwidth requirements for transmission of data from high-resolution sensors on the next-generation non-geostationary meteorological satellites planned to be launched in the time-frame 2017-2020 are in excess of 100 MHz;

e) that an extension of the current allocation by 50 MHz would be necessary to accommodate future data transmission requirements;

f) that the band 7 850-7 900 MHz is allocated to exactly the same services as the band 7 750-7 850 MHz and would be a prime candidate for extension of the current allocation to the meteorological-satellite service;

g) that ITU-R studies conducted prior to WRC-97 concluded that sharing between the meteorological-satellite service and the fixed service is possible with ample margins resulting to the allocation of the band 7 750-7 850 MHz,

recognizing

1 that the data obtained by these meteorological satellites are essential for global weather forecast, climate changes and hazard predictions;

2 that existing systems need to be duly protected,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to conduct sharing analyses between non-geostationary meteorological satellites operating in the space-to-Earth direction and the fixed and mobile services in the band 7 850-7 900 MHz with a view to extending the current allocation in the space-to-Earth direction to this band;

2 to recommend that WRC-11 review the results of the studies under *resolves* 1;

3 to make appropriate modifications to the Table of Frequency Allocations with respect to *resolves* 1, based on proposals from administrations,

invites administrations

to contribute to the sharing studies between the meteorological-satellite service and the fixed and mobile services in the frequency range 7 850-7 900 MHz,

invites ITU-R

to complete the necessary studies, taking into account the present use of allocated bands, with a view to presenting its results to WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 673 (WRC-07)

Radiocommunications use for Earth observation applications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that *in situ* and remote Earth observation capabilities depend on the availability of radio frequencies under a number of radio services, allowing for a wide range of passive and active applications on satellite- or ground-based platforms;

b) that the collection and exchange of Earth observation data are essential for maintaining and improving the accuracy of weather forecasts that contribute to the protection of life, preservation of property and sustainable development throughout the world;

c) that Earth observation data are also essential for monitoring and predicting climate changes, for disaster prediction, monitoring and mitigation, for increasing the understanding, modelling and verification of all aspects of climate change, and for related policy-making;

d) that Earth observations are also used to obtain pertinent data regarding natural resources, this being particularly crucial for the benefit of developing countries;

e) that Earth observations are performed for the benefit of the whole international community and all mankind, are shared among all countries and are generally available at no cost,

recognizing

a) that § 20 c) of the Plan of Action of the World Summit on Information Society (Geneva, 2003), on e-environment, calls for the establishment of monitoring systems, using information and communication technologies (ICT), to forecast and monitor the impact of natural and man-made disasters, particularly in developing countries, least developed countries and small economies;

b) Resolution 34 (Rev. Doha, 2006) of the World Telecommunication Development Conference, on the role of telecommunications/ICT in early warning and mitigation of disasters and humanitarian assistance;

c) ITU-D Question 22/2 “Utilization of ICT for disaster management, resources and active and passive space-based sensing systems as they apply to disaster and emergency relief situations”,

noting

a) that Earth observation applications are conducted under the Earth exploration-satellite (active and passive), meteorological satellite, meteorological aids and radiolocation services;

b) that some essential passive frequency bands are covered by No. **5.340**,

noting further

a) that the importance of Earth observation radiocommunications applications has been stressed by a number of international bodies such as the Group on Earth Observation (GEO), the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) and that collaboration of ITU-R with these bodies could be important;

b) that, in particular, GEO is leading a worldwide effort to build a Global Earth Observation System of Systems (GEOSS) to provide comprehensive and coordinated Earth observations from thousands of instruments worldwide, transforming the collected data into vital information for society and mankind;

c) that GEOSS provides a broad range of societal benefits, including disaster management and aspects related to human health, energy, climate, water, weather, ecosystems, agriculture and biodiversity;

d) that more than 90 per cent of natural disasters are climate- or weather-related;

e) that some essential passive Earth observation operations currently suffer radio interference resulting in erroneous data or even complete loss of data;

f) that, although meteorological and Earth observation satellites are currently only operated by a limited number of countries, the data and/or related analyses resulting from their operation are distributed and used globally, in particular by national weather services in developed and developing countries and by climate-change-related organizations,

resolves to invite ITU-R

to carry out studies on possible means to improve the recognition of the essential role and global importance of Earth observation radiocommunications applications and the knowledge and understanding of administrations regarding the utilization and benefits of these applications,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to include the results of these studies in his Report to WRC-11 for the purposes of considering adequate actions in response to *resolves to invite ITU-R* above, noting that neither new allocations nor additional protection would be objectives of such studies,

invites administrations

to participate actively in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 703 (Rev.WRC-07)

Calculation methods and interference criteria recommended by ITU-R for sharing frequency bands between space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services or between space radiocommunication services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that, in frequency bands shared with equal rights by space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services, it is necessary to impose certain technical limitations and coordination procedures on each of the sharing services for the purpose of limiting mutual interference;

b) that, in frequency bands shared by space stations located on geostationary satellites, it is necessary to impose coordination procedures for the purpose of limiting mutual interference;

c) that the calculation methods and interference criteria relating to coordination procedures referred to in *considering a)* and *b)* are based upon ITU-R Recommendations;

d) that, in recognition of the successful sharing of the frequency bands by space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services, and the continuing improvements in space technology and that of the Earth segment, each Radiocommunication Assembly has improved upon some of the technical criteria recommended by the preceding Assembly;

e) that the ITU Radiocommunication Assembly has approved a procedure for approving Recommendations between Radiocommunication Assemblies;

f) that the Constitution recognizes the right of Member States to make special arrangements on telecommunication matters; however, such arrangements shall not be in conflict with the terms of the Constitution, Convention or of the Regulations annexed thereto as far as harmful interference to the radio services of other countries is concerned;

g) that the use of this Resolution may reduce the need for incorporation by reference of some ITU-R Recommendations,

is of the opinion

a) that future decisions of ITU-R are likely to make further changes in the recommended calculation methods and interference criteria;

b) that the administrations should whenever possible apply the current ITU-R Recommendations on sharing criteria when planning systems for use in frequency bands shared with equal rights between space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services, or between space radiocommunication services,

invites administrations

to submit contributions to the Radiocommunication Study Groups, providing information on practical results and experience of sharing between terrestrial and space radiocommunication services or between space services, which help to bring about significant improvements in coordination procedures, calculation methods and harmful interference thresholds, and thereby to optimize the available orbit/spectrum resources,

resolves

1 that the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau, in consultation with Study Group Chairmen, shall annually prepare a list identifying the relevant newly approved ITU-R Recommendations relating to sharing between space radiocommunication and terrestrial radiocommunication services, or between space radiocommunication services;

2 that the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau shall, once a year, publish this list electronically for the information of all administrations.

RESOLUTION 705 (Mob-87)

Mutual protection of radio services operating in the band 70-130 kHz

The World Administrative Radio Conference for the Mobile Services (Geneva, 1987),

considering

a) that various radio services, including radionavigation systems used by maritime and aeronautical services, operate in frequency bands between 70 and 130 kHz;

b) that, radionavigation being a safety service, all practical steps consistent with the Radio Regulations should be taken to prevent harmful interference to any radionavigation system;

c) that the ITU-R has noted that users of phased pulse radionavigation systems in the band 90-110 kHz receive no protection outside the band, yet may receive benefit from their signals outside the occupied bandwidth,

noting

that ITU-R studies show:

– that for continuous wave radionavigation systems in the frequency bands 70-90 kHz and 110-130 kHz, the protection ratio should be 15 dB within the receiver passband of ±7 Hz at 3 dB;

– that phased pulse radionavigation systems require a 15 dB protection ratio within the band 90-110 kHz;

– that these pulse radionavigation systems would be aided by protection ratios of 5 dB and 0 dB for frequency separations between wanted and interfering signal of 10-15 kHz and 15-20 kHz, respectively,

further noting

that the ITU-R has recommended the exchange of information between authorities operating radionavigation systems in the band 90-110 kHz and those operating other systems in the band 70-130 kHz employing emissions of very high stability,

recognizing

a) that radio services other than radionavigation operating in the bands 70-90 kHz and 110-130 kHz fulfil essential functions that may be affected;

b) the provisions of Nos. **4.5**, **4.10**, **5.60** and **5.62**,

resolves that administrations

1 in assigning frequencies to services in the bands 70-90 kHz, 90-110 kHz and 110-130 kHz, consider the potential mutual impairment to other stations operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations and apply protective measures;

2 use the relevant ITU-R Recommendations and encourage the exchange of information between authorities operating radionavigation systems in the band 90-110 kHz and those operating other systems in the band 70-130 kHz employing emissions of very high stability, to assist in preventing potential interference problems;

3 encourage consultation, both nationally and internationally, between operators of radionavigation systems using the band 90-110 kHz and of other systems using the band 70-130 kHz,

requests the ITU-R

to continue studies in this matter, particularly the development of technical criteria and standards to permit compatible operations within the allocated bands and to assist in developing the list of contacts of system operators,

invites

1 the Council to place this matter on the agenda of the next competent world radiocommunication conference, in order to establish technical criteria for the harmonious operation of the services in the bands between 70-130 kHz;

2 the International Maritime Organization (IMO), the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities (IALA), the Bureau international de l'heure (BIH)* and national authorities to provide the Union with information pertaining to the potential impairment of systems operating in the bands 70-90 kHz, 90-110 kHz and 110-130 kHz, together with their views and proposals resulting therefrom.

---

* *Note by the General Secretariat:* The 18th General Conference of the "Bureau international des poids et des mesures (BIPM)", 12-15 October 1987, adopted a Resolution transferring the responsibility of establishing the International Atomic Time (TAI) from the BIH to the BIPM.

RESOLUTION 716 (Rev.WRC-2000)

Use of the frequency bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 by the fixed and mobile-satellite services and associated transition arrangements

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that WARC-92 allocated the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz for the mobile-satellite service (MSS) with a date of entry into force of 1 January 2005, these allocations being co-primary with fixed and mobile service allocations;

b) that the use of the frequency bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 by the MSS, in accordance with the provisions of Nos. **5.389A**, **5.389C** and **5.389D*** of the Radio Regulations, as adopted by WRC-95 and WRC-97, is subject to a date of entry into force of 1 January 2000, 1 January 2002 (for Region 2) or 1 January 2005;

c) that these bands are shared with the fixed and mobile[1] services on a primary basis and that they are widely used by the fixed service in many countries;

d) that the studies made have shown that, while sharing of the MSS with the fixed service in the short to medium term would be generally feasible, in the long term sharing will be complex and difficult in both bands, so that it would be advisable to transfer the fixed service stations operating in the bands in question to other segments of the spectrum;

e) that for many developing countries, the use of the 2 GHz band offers a substantial advantage for their radiocommunication networks and that it is not attractive to transfer these systems to higher frequency bands because of the economic consequences that this would entail;

f) that ITU-R has developed a new frequency plan for the fixed service in the 2 GHz band, set out in Recommendation ITU-R F.1098 which will facilitate the introduction of new fixed service systems in band segments that do not overlap with the above-mentioned MSS allocations at 2 GHz;

g) that sharing between fixed service systems using tropospheric scatter and Earth-to-space links in the MSS in the same frequency band segments is generally not feasible;

h) that some countries utilize these bands in application of Article 48 of the Constitution (Geneva, 1992),

---

[1] This Resolution does not apply to the mobile service. In this respect, the use of these bands by the MSS is subject to coordination with the mobile service under the provisions of Resolution **46 (Rev.WRC-97)**** or No. **9.11A**, as applicable.

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This provision was abrogated by WRC-03.

** *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was abrogated by WRC-03.

recognizing

a) that WARC-92 identified the bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz for worldwide use by International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000), the satellite component being limited to the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz, and that the development of IMT-2000 can offer great potential in helping the developing countries develop more rapidly their telecommunication infrastructure;

b) that WARC-92 resolved to request the Telecommunication Development Bureau, when formulating its immediate plans for assistance to the developing countries, to consider the introduction of specific modifications in the radiocommunication networks of the developing countries and that a future world development conference should examine the needs of developing countries and should assist them with the resources needed to implement the required modifications to their radiocommunication networks,

resolves

1 to request administrations to notify to the Radiocommunication Bureau the basic characteristics of frequency assignments to existing or planned fixed stations requiring protection, or those typical[2] of existing and planned fixed stations brought into use before 1 January 2000 in the frequency bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2;

2 that administrations proposing to bring an MSS system into service must take account of the fact that, when coordinating their system with administrations having terrestrial services, such administrations may have existing or planned installations covered by Article 48 of the Constitution;

3 that in respect of stations of the fixed service taken into account in the application of Resolution **46 (Rev.WRC-97)***/No. **9.11A**, administrations responsible for MSS networks operating in the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 shall ensure that unacceptable interference is not caused to fixed service stations notified and brought into use before 1 January 2000;

4 that to facilitate the introduction and future use of the 2 GHz bands by the MSS:

4.1 administrations are urged to ensure that frequency assignments to new fixed service systems, to be brought into operation after 1 January 2000, do not overlap with the 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 MSS allocations, for example by using the channel plans of Recommendation ITU-R F.1098;

---

[2] With respect to the notification of frequency assignments to stations in the fixed and mobile services, it was possible to notify the characteristics of typical stations in the fixed service in accordance with No. **11.17** without restriction up until 1 January 2000.

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was abrogated by WRC-03.

4.2 administrations are urged to take all practicable steps to phase out troposcatter systems operating in the band 1 980-2 010 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz in Region 2 by 1 January 2000. New troposcatter systems shall not be brought into operation in these bands;

4.3 administrations are encouraged, where practicable, to draw up plans for the gradual transfer of the frequency assignments to their fixed service stations in the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz in Region 2 to non-overlapping bands, giving priority to the transfer of their frequency assignments in the band 1 980-2 010 MHz in all three Regions and 2 010-2 025 MHz in Region 2, considering the technical, operational and economical aspects;

5 that administrations responsible for the introduction of mobile-satellite systems should take into account and address the concerns of affected countries, especially developing countries, to minimize the possible economic impact of transition measures in respect to existing systems;

6 to invite the Bureau to provide assistance to developing countries requesting it for the introduction of specific modifications to their radiocommunication networks that will facilitate their access to the new technologies being developed in the 2 GHz band as well as in all coordination activities;

7 that administrations responsible for the introduction of mobile-satellite systems urge their mobile-satellite system operators to participate in the protection of terrestrial fixed services especially in the least developed countries,

invites ITU-R

to conduct, as a matter of urgency, further studies, in conjunction with the Bureau, to:

– develop and provide to administrations the necessary tools in a timely manner and not later than WRC-03 to assess the impact of interference in the detailed coordination of mobile-satellite systems;

– develop the necessary planning tools as soon as possible to assist those administrations considering a replanning of their terrestrial fixed networks in the 2 GHz range not later than WRC-03,

invites ITU-D

to evaluate, as a matter of urgency, the financial and economic impact on the developing countries of the transfer of fixed services, and to present its results to a future competent world radiocommunication conference and/or world telecommunication development conference,

invites the Director of the Telecommunication Development Bureau

to implement *invites ITU-D* by encouraging joint activities between the relevant study groups of both ITU-D and ITU-R,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to submit a report on the implementation of this Resolution to world radiocommunication conferences.

RESOLUTION 729 (Rev.WRC-07)

Use of frequency adaptive systems in the MF and HF bands*

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the efficiency of spectrum use will be improved by the use of frequency adaptive systems in the MF and HF bands shared by the fixed and the mobile services;

b) that trials and deployment of frequency adaptive systems have been under way during the past 30 years and have demonstrated the effectiveness of such systems and improved spectrum efficiency;

c) that such improved efficiency is attained through:

– shorter call set-up and improved transmission quality by selection of the most suitable assigned channels;

– reduced channel occupancy, permitting the same channels to be used by different networks, yet decreasing the probability of harmful interference;

– minimization of the transmitter power required for each transmission;

– continued optimization of the emissions owing to the sophistication of the systems;

– simple operation by the use of intelligent peripheral equipment;

– reduced need for skilled radio operators;

d) that following WRC-95, the Radiocommunication Bureau no longer undertakes examination with respect to the probability of harmful interference caused by new assignments recorded in the Master International Frequency Register (MIFR) in the non-planned bands below 28 MHz;

e) that WRC-97 introduced a means for notification of block assignments;

f) that frequency adaptive systems will actively contribute to the avoidance of interference since, when other signals are observed on the channel, the frequency adaptive system will move to another frequency,

* This Resolution should be brought to the attention of ITU-D Study Group 2.

resolves

1 that, in authorizing the operation of frequency adaptive systems in the fixed and mobile services for the MF and HF bands, administrations shall:

1.1 not make assignments in those bands:

- governed by the Appendix **25** frequency allotment Plan for the maritime mobile service or the Appendix **27** frequency allotment Plan for the aeronautical mobile (R) service;
- shared on a co-primary basis with the broadcasting service, radiodetermination service or the amateur services;
- allocated to the radio astronomy service;

1.2 avoid use which may affect frequency assignments involving safety services made in accordance with Nos. **5.155**, **5.155A** and **5.155B**;

1.3 take into account any footnotes applicable to the proposed bands and the implications regarding compatibility;

2 that frequency adaptive systems shall automatically limit simultaneous use of frequencies to the minimum necessary for communication requirements;

3 that, with a view to avoiding harmful interference, frequency adaptive systems should evaluate the channel occupancy prior to and during operation;

4 that assignments for frequency adaptive systems shall be notified to the Bureau in accordance with the provisions of Article **11** and Appendix **4**.

RESOLUTION 731 (WRC-2000)

Consideration by a future competent world radiocommunication conference of issues dealing with sharing and adjacent-band compatibility between passive and active services above 71 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that the changes made to the Table of Frequency Allocations by this Conference in bands above 71 GHz were based on the requirements known at the time of the Conference;

b) that the passive service spectrum requirements above 71 GHz are based on physical phenomena and therefore are well known, and are reflected in the changes made to the Table of Frequency Allocations by this Conference;

c) that several bands above 71 GHz are already used by Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) and space research service (passive) because they are unique bands for the measurement of specific atmospheric parameters;

d) that there is currently only limited knowledge of requirements and implementation plans for the active services that will operate in bands above 71 GHz;

e) that, in the past, technological developments have led to viable communication systems operating at increasingly higher frequencies, and that this can be expected to continue so as to make communication technology available in the future in the frequency bands above 71 GHz;

f) that, in the future, alternative spectrum needs for the active and passive services should be accommodated when the new technologies become available;

g) that, following the revisions to the Table of Frequency Allocations by this Conference, sharing studies may be required for services in some bands above 71 GHz;

h) that interference criteria for passive sensors have been developed and are given in Recommendation ITU-R RS.1029;

i) that protection criteria for radio astronomy have been developed and are given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.769;

j) that several satellite downlink allocations have been made in bands adjacent to those allocated to the radio astronomy service;

k) that, sharing criteria for active and passive services in bands above 71 GHz have not yet been fully developed within ITU-R;

l) that, in order to ensure protection of passive services above 71 GHz, this Conference avoided making allocations to both active and passive services in some bands such as 100-102 GHz, 148.5-151.5 GHz and 226-231.5 GHz, so as to prevent potential sharing problems,

recognizing

that, to the extent practicable, the burden of sharing among active and passive services should be equitably distributed among the services to which allocations are made,

resolves

that a future competent conference should consider the results of ITU-R studies with a view to revising the Radio Regulations, as appropriate, in order to accommodate the emerging requirements of active services, taking into account the requirements of the passive services, in bands above 71 GHz,

urges administrations

to note the possibility of changes to Article **5** to accommodate emerging requirements for active services, as indicated in this Resolution, and to take this into account in the development of national policies and regulations,

invites ITU-R

1 to continue its studies to determine if and under what conditions sharing is possible between active and passive services in the bands above 71 GHz, such as, but not limited to, 100-102 GHz, 116-122.25 GHz, 148.5-151.5 GHz, 174.8-191.8 GHz, 226-231.5 GHz and 235-238 GHz;

2 to study means of avoiding adjacent-band interference from space services (down-links) into radio astronomy bands above 71 GHz;

3 to take into account the principles of burden-sharing to the extent practicable in their studies;

4 to complete the necessary studies when the technical characteristics of the active services in these bands are known;

5 to develop Recommendations specifying sharing criteria for those bands where sharing is feasible,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 732 (WRC-2000)

Consideration by a future competent world radiocommunication conference of issues dealing with sharing between active services above 71 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) that this Conference has made changes to the Table of Frequency Allocations above 71 GHz, following consideration of science service issues;

b) that there are several co-primary active services in some bands above 71 GHz in the Table of Frequency Allocations as revised by this Conference;

c) that there is limited knowledge of characteristics of active services that may be developed to operate in bands above 71 GHz;

d) that sharing criteria for sharing between active services in bands above 71 GHz have not yet been fully developed within ITU-R;

e) that sharing between multiple co-primary active services may hinder the development of each active service in bands above 71 GHz;

f) that the technology for some active services may be commercially available earlier than for some other active services;

g) that adequate spectrum should be available for the active services for which the technology is available at a later time,

noting

that sharing criteria need to be developed, to be used by a future competent conference, for determining to what extent sharing between multiple co-primary active services is possible in each of the bands,

resolves

1 that appropriate measures should be taken to meet the spectrum requirements for active services for which the technology will be commercially available at a later time;

2 that sharing criteria be developed for co-primary active services in bands above 71 GHz;

3 that the sharing criteria developed should form the basis for a review of active service allocations above 71 GHz at a future competent conference, if necessary,

urges administrations

to note the possibility of changes to Article **5** to accommodate emerging requirements for active services, as indicated in this Resolution, and to take this into account in the development of national policies and regulations,

invites ITU-R

to complete the necessary studies with a view to presenting, at the appropriate time, the technical information likely to be required as a basis for the work of a future competent conference,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 734 (Rev.WRC-07)

Studies for spectrum identification for gateway links for high-altitude platform stations in the range from 5 850 to 7 075 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that ITU has among its purposes "to promote the extension of the benefit of the new telecommunication technologies to all the world's inhabitants" (No. 6 of the Constitution);

b) that systems based on new technologies using high altitude platform stations (HAPS) can potentially be used for various applications such as the provision of high-capacity services to urban and rural areas;

c) that provision has been made in the Radio Regulations for the deployment of HAPS in specific bands, including as base stations to serve IMT-2000 networks (Article **11**);

d) that it is desirable to have adequate provision for gateway links to serve HAPS operations;

e) that ITU-R has studied spectrum sharing between HAPS as a fixed service with other fixed services and with fixed-satellite services in much higher bands, as well as the regulatory considerations to avoid interference to services in neighbouring countries,

recognizing

a) that ITU-R has studied the sharing of HAPS with fixed services in part of the 6 GHz band resulting in Recommendation ITU-R F.1764, which provides a methodology for interference evaluation that could be used for sharing studies between fixed services systems and HAPS;

b) that as in some areas the bands may be saturated with other fixed service use and it would be desirable to have greater flexibility in the choice of spectrum for gateway operations in support of HAPS networks;

c) that the World Summit on the Information Society has encouraged the development and application of emerging technologies to facilitate infrastructure and network development worldwide with special focus on underserved regions and areas;

d) that the allocations to the fixed-satellite service in the band 5 925-6 425 MHz are heavily used for Earth-to-space links providing telecommunication services, and that are particularly important for the development of infrastructure in developing countries through the deployment of VSAT capabilities;

e) that more than 160 geostationary satellites currently in operation use frequencies in the range 5 850-6 725 MHz and such use will continue to grow in the future;

f) that the band 6 725-7 025 MHz is used by uplinks in the FSS Plan of Appendix **30B** of the Radio Regulations (see No. **5.441**), while the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is used by uplinks on non-geostationary-satellite systems (see No. **5.447A**);

g) that the Earth-to-space transmissions in the FSS described in "*recognizing*" *d)*, *e)* and *f)* above will have levels much higher than those in HAPS systems and have therefore the potential for causing interference to HAPS receivers either on the ground or on the platform;

h) that in view of *recognizing g)*, HAPS use of frequencies around 6 GHz may be limited by current FSS transmit earth stations while protection of HAPS receivers may limit future deployment of these FSS earth stations,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to extend the sharing studies, with a view to identifying two channels of 80 MHz each for gateway links for HAPS in the range from 5 850 to 7 075 MHz, in bands already allocated to the fixed service, while ensuring the protection of existing services;

2 to recommend to WRC-11 to review the results of these studies, with a view to taking an appropriate decision for the deployment of HAPS gateway links to service the relevant stratospheric base station operations and support for these networks,

encourages administrations

to contribute actively to the sharing studies in accordance with this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 739 (Rev.WRC-07)

Compatibility between the radio astronomy service and the active space services in certain adjacent and nearby frequency bands

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that adjacent or nearby primary service allocations have been made to the radio astronomy service, and to various space services, such as the fixed-satellite service (FSS), radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS), mobile-satellite service (MSS) and broadcasting-satellite service (BSS), hereafter referred to as "active space services";

b) that, in many cases, the frequencies used by the radio astronomy service (RAS) are chosen to study natural phenomena producing radio emissions at frequencies fixed by the laws of nature, so shifting frequency to avoid or mitigate interference problems may not be possible;

c) that Report ITU-R SM.2091 provides a methodology for conducting, and a framework for documenting the results of, compatibility studies between active space service and the radio astronomy service band-pairs;

d) that Report ITU-R SM.2091 also provides the results of compatibility studies between the radio astronomy service and an active space service in certain adjacent and nearby bands;

e) that appropriate consultation between administrations has the potential to lead to the development of innovative solutions and to the rapid deployment of systems;

f) that, for technical or operational reasons, more stringent spurious emission limits than the general limits in Appendix **3** may be required to protect the RAS from active services in specific bands,

noting

a) that the additional burden of undertaking any technical examination should not be placed on the Radiocommunication Bureau;

b) that a consultation procedure, as contained in this Resolution, would not place an additional burden on the Bureau;

c) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1583 provides a methodology based on the equivalent power flux-density (epfd) concept for calculation of interference resulting from unwanted emissions from non-geostationary (non-GSO) satellite systems of the MSS or RNSS into radio astronomy stations;

d) that Recommendation ITU-R S.1586 provides a methodology based on the epfd concept for calculation of interference resulting from unwanted emissions from non-GSO systems of the FSS into radio astronomy stations;

e) that the methodology described in these Recommendations may also be used to study the case of non-GSO systems in the BSS;

f) that Recommendation ITU-R RA.1631 provides antenna patterns to be used for compatibility analyses between non-GSO systems and RAS stations, based on the epfd concept;

g) that Recommendation ITU-R RA.1513 provides acceptable levels of data loss to radio astronomy observations, stating in particular that the percentage of data loss caused by any system should be lower than 2%;

h) that some of the results documented in Report ITU-R SM.2091 may be used as threshold levels to initiate the consultation procedure;

i) that the results of successful consultation between concerned administrations would ensure that the interests of both the active and radio astronomy services are considered;

j) that measures taken by active space services to protect radio astronomy stations from interference may result in increased costs and/or reduced capabilities for those services;

k) that conversely, not taking such measures may result in additional operating costs and reduced operational effectiveness for the radio astronomy stations concerned;

l) that the implementation of additional interference mitigation measures at the radio astronomy station may increase operating costs and reduce observational effectiveness;

m) that conversely, not implementing such measures may impose upon the active space services an additional cost burden and reduction in service capability,

recognizing

a) that unwanted emissions produced by stations of the active space services may cause unacceptable interference to stations of the RAS;

b) that, although some unwanted emissions from transmitters on space stations can be controlled through careful design methods and appropriate testing procedures, other unwanted emissions, such as narrow-band spurious emissions, generated by uncontrollable and/or unpredictable physical mechanisms, may only be detected after the spacecraft is launched;

c) that there is an uncertainty in the pre-launch assessment of the levels of unwanted emissions;

d) that it is necessary to ensure an equitable sharing of burden for achieving compatibility between the active space services and the RAS;

e) that for those cases where difficulties are encountered in meeting the values in Annex 1, a consultation procedure could be used to resolve the difficulties,

resolves

1 that an administration takes all reasonable steps to ensure that any space station or satellite system being designed and constructed to operate in the bands in Annex 1 meets the values given therein at any radio astronomy station operating in the corresponding bands identified in this Annex;

2 that in the event that during construction and prior to launch it is determined that, after having considered all reasonable means, the unwanted emissions from the space station or satellite system cannot meet the values given in Annex 1, the administration that notified the space station or satellite system contacts, as soon as possible, the administration operating the radio astronomy station to confirm that *resolves* 1 has been fulfilled, and the concerned administrations enter into a consultation process in order to achieve a mutually acceptable solution;

3 that in the event, following the space station launch, an administration operating a radio astronomy station determines that, due to unexpected circumstances, a space station or satellite system does not meet the values for unwanted emissions given in Annex 1 at that radio astronomy station, it contacts the administration that notified the space station or satellite system so that the administration that notified the space station or satellite system confirms that *resolves* 1 has been fulfilled, and the concerned administrations enter into a consultation process in order to identify further steps with a view to achieving a mutually acceptable solution;

4 that the radio astronomy stations to be taken into account in applying *resolves* 1, 2 and 3 are those which are operating in the frequency band(s) identified in Annex 1 and which are notified before the date of reception of the advance publication information of the space station or satellite system to which this Resolution applies;

5 that the space stations or satellite systems to be considered in the application of *resolves* 1 to 4 above are those designed to operate in the space service frequency bands listed in the tables of Annex 1 for which advance publication information (API) is received by the Bureau following the entry into force of the Final Acts of the appropriate conference, as specified in these tables;

6 that the objective of the consultation process in *resolves* 1, 2 and 3 is to achieve a mutually acceptable solution, using as guidance Report ITU-R SM.2091 and any other ITU-R Recommendations deemed relevant by the concerned administrations;

7 that the Bureau shall make no examination or finding with respect to this Resolution under either Article **9** or **11**,

invites administrations

1 to take all appropriate and practicable steps, from the design phase onward, to ensure that unwanted emissions are minimized from space stations that are planned to operate in one or more space service allocations, in order to avoid exceeding the threshold levels of unwanted emissions identified in Annex 1 at any radio astronomy station;

2 to take all practicable steps, from the design phase onward, to minimize the sensitivity of radio astronomy stations to interference and to take into account the need to implement interference mitigation measures.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 739 (Rev.WRC-07)

Unwanted emission threshold levels

The unwanted emission threshold levels applicable to geostationary space stations are given in Table 1-1 in terms of power flux-density (pfd) in a reference bandwidth produced at a radio astronomy station.

In Table 1-1 the unwanted emission threshold levels given in the fourth, sixth and eighth columns (associated with the reference bandwidth contained in the adjacent columns) should be met by any geostationary space station operating in the bands indicated in the second column at the radio astronomy station operating in the band mentioned in the third column.

The unwanted emission threshold levels applicable to space stations of a non-geostationary system are given in Table 1-2 in terms of the equivalent power flux-density (epfd), produced at a radio astronomy station in a reference bandwidth by all the space stations in a non-geostationary satellite system that are visible to the radio astronomy station considered, not to be exceeded during a given percentage of time, over the whole sky.

In Table 1-2 the epfd value given in the fourth, sixth and eighth columns (associated with the reference bandwidths contained in the adjacent column) should be met by all the space stations of a non-geostationary satellite system operating in the bands indicated in the second column at the radio astronomy station operating in the band mentioned in the third column. The epfd value at a given radio astronomy station shall be evaluated by using the antenna pattern and the RAS maximum antenna gain given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.1631. Guidance on the calculation of epfd can be found in Recommendations ITU-R S.1586 and ITU-R M.1583. The elevation angles of the radio astronomy stations to be taken into account in the epfd calculation are those higher than the minimum elevation angle θ_{min} of the radio telescope. In the absence of such information a value of 5° shall be taken. The percentage of time during which the epfd level shall not be exceeded is mentioned in Note (1) of Table 1-2.

Some sections of Report ITU-R SM.2091 indicate levels of unwanted emissions in radio astronomy bands that certain satellite systems, by design, do not exceed.

TABLE 1-1

pfd thresholds for unwanted emissions from any geostationary space station at a radio astronomy station

Space service	Space service band	Radio astronomy band	Single dish, continuum observations		Single dish, spectral line observations		VLBI		Condition of application: the API is received by the Bureau following the entry into force of the Final Acts of:
			pfd[1]	Reference bandwidth	pfd[1]	Reference bandwidth	pfd[1]	Reference bandwidth	
	(MHz)	(MHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(MHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(kHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(kHz)	
MSS (space-to-Earth)	387-390	322-328.6	–189	6.6	–204	10	–177	10	WRC-07
BSS MSS (space-to-Earth)	1 452-1 492 1 525-1 559	1 400-1 427	–180	27	–196	20	–166	20	WRC-03
MSS (space-to-Earth) MSS (space-to-Earth)	1 525-1 559 1 613.8-1 626.5	1 610.6-1 613.8	NA	NA	–194	20	–166	20	WRC-03
RNSS (space-to-Earth)	1 559-1 610	1 610.6-1 613.8	NA	NA	–194	20	–166	20	WRC-07
BSS FSS (space-to-Earth)	2 655-2 670	2 690-2 700	–177	10	NA	NA	–161	20	WRC-03
FSS (space-to-Earth)	2 670-2 690	2 690-2 700 (in Regions 1 and 3)	–177	10	NA	NA	–161	20	WRC-03
	(GHz)	**(GHz)**	–	–	–	–	–	–	
BSS	21.4-22.0	22.21-22.5	–146	290	–162	250	–128	250	WRC-03 for VLBI, and WRC-07 for other types of observation

NA: Not applicable, measurements of this type are not made in this band.

(1) Integrated over the reference bandwidth with an integration time of 2 000 s.

TABLE 1-2

epfd thresholds[1] for unwanted emissions from all space stations of a non-GSO satellite system at a radio astronomy station

Space service	Space service band	Radio astronomy band	Single dish, continuum observations		Single dish, spectral line observations		VLBI		Condition of application: the API is received by the Bureau following the entry into force of the Final Acts of:
			epfd[2]	Reference bandwidth	epfd[2]	Reference bandwidth	epfd[2]	Reference bandwidth	
	(MHz)	(MHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(MHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(kHz)	(dB(W/m^2))	(kHz)	
MSS (space-to-Earth)	137-138	150.05-153	–238	2.95	NA	NA	NA	NA	WRC-07
MSS (space-to-Earth)	387-390	322-328.6	–240	6.6	–255	10	–228	10	WRC-07
MSS (space-to-Earth)	400.15-401	406.1-410	–242	3.9	NA	NA	NA	NA	WRC-07
MSS (space-to-Earth)	1 525-1 559	1 400-1 427	–243	27	–259	20	–229	20	WRC-07
RNSS (space-to-Earth)[3]	1 559-1 610	1 610.6-1 613.8	NA	NA	−258	20	−230	20	WRC-07
MSS (space-to-Earth)	1 525-1 559	1 610.6-1 613.8	NA	NA	–258	20	–230	20	WRC-07
MSS (space-to-Earth)	1 613.8-1 626.5	1 610.6-1 613.8	NA	NA	–258	20	–230	20	WRC-03

NA: Not applicable, measurements of this type are not made in this band.

(1) These epfd thresholds should not be exceeded for more than 2% of time.

(2) Integrated over the reference bandwidth with an integration time of 2 000 s.

(3) This Resolution does not apply to current and future assignments of the radionavigation-satellite system GLONASS/GLONASS-M in the band 1 559-1 610 MHz, irrespective of the date of reception of the related coordination or notification information, as appropriate. The protection of the radio astronomy service in the 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz band is ensured and will continue to be in accordance with the bilateral agreement between the Russian Federation, the notifying administration of the GLONASS/GLONASS-M system, and IUCAF, and subsequent bilateral agreements with other administrations.

RESOLUTION 741 (WRC-03)

Protection of the radio astronomy service in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz from unwanted emissions of the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-Earth) operating in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that unwanted emissions from space stations of the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) operating in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz may cause interference to the radio astronomy service (RAS) in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz;

b) that WRC-2000 decided to introduce a provisional power flux-density (pfd) limit in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz to protect the RAS, and invited ITU-R to conduct studies to review this limit;

c) that protection requirements for the RAS are given in Recommendations ITU-R RA.769 and ITU-R RA.1513, and are different for geostationary (GSO) and non-GSO satellite systems,

noting

a) that Recommendation ITU-R M.1583 provides a methodology based on the equivalent pfd (epfd) concept for calculation of interference resulting from unwanted emissions from non-GSO systems of the mobile-satellite service or RNSS into radio astronomy stations;

b) that Recommendation ITU-R RA.1631 provides antenna patterns and maximum antenna gain to be used for compatibility analyses between non-GSO systems and RAS stations based on the epfd concept;

c) that Recommendation ITU-R RA.1513 recommends acceptable levels of data loss to radio astronomy observations, stating in particular that the percentage of data loss caused by any system should be lower than 2%,

resolves

1 that in order not to cause harmful interference to the RAS in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz, the pfd produced in this band by any GSO RNSS network operating in the 5 010-5 030 MHz band shall not exceed –171 dB(W/m^2) in a 10 MHz band at any radio astronomy station;

2 that in order not to cause harmful interference to the RAS in the band 4 990-5 000 MHz, over the whole sky, for elevations higher than the minimum operating elevation angle θ_{min} [1] specified for the radio telescope, the epfd produced in this band by all space stations within any non-GSO RNSS system operating in the 5 010-5 030 MHz band shall not exceed –245 dB(W/m^2) in a 10 MHz band at any radio astronomy station for more than 2% of the time, using the methodology in Recommendation ITU-R M.1583 and a reference antenna with a radiation pattern and maximum antenna gain given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.1631;

3 that the limits referred to in *resolves* 1 and 2 shall apply to RNSS systems as from 3 June 2000;

4 that administrations planning to operate a GSO or a non-GSO RNSS system in the band 5 010-5 030 MHz, for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, has been received by the Bureau after 2 June 2000, shall send to the Bureau the value of the maximum level of pfd as referred to in *resolves* 1 or the value of the maximum level of epfd as referred to in *resolves* 2, as appropriate,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

as from the end of this Conference, to review all RNSS systems for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, has been received by the Bureau before the end of this Conference for the band 5 010-5 030 MHz, and, if appropriate, to revise its findings regarding compliance with No. **5.443B**, taking into account additional information received under *resolves* 4.

[1] Until adoption of a definition of θ_{min} by ITU-R, and publication of notified radio astronomy observatory data, a value of 5° should be assumed in appropriate calculations.

RESOLUTION 743 (WRC-03)

Protection of single-dish radio astronomy stations in Region 2 in the 42.5-43.5 GHz band

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the band 42.5-43.5 GHz is allocated to the radio astronomy service (RAS) on a primary basis, and that both continuum and spectral line observations are conducted in this band;

b) that there are primary allocations to the fixed-satellite service (FSS) (space-to-Earth) and to the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) in the 42-42.5 GHz band;

c) that a geostationary (GSO) FSS or BSS satellite operating in the 42-42.5 GHz band could encounter great difficulty in meeting the values given in No. **5.551I** for single-dish radio telescope observations in the 42.5-43.5 GHz band for 100% of the time;

d) that an FSS or BSS satellite or system operating in the 42-42.5 GHz band would encounter great difficulty in meeting the power flux-density (pfd) level of −153 dB(W/m^2) in any 500 kHz for GSO satellites or the equivalent pfd (epfd) level of −246 dB(W/m^2) in any 500 kHz for any non-GSO system for single-dish radio telescope spectral-line observations near the 42.5 GHz band edge of the 42.5-43.5 GHz band, even when all practicable technical or operational measures to reduce the potential for interference detrimental to the RAS stations are employed;

e) that because there are relatively few RAS stations operating single-dish telescopes in the band 42.5-43.5 GHz, and because there are expected to be relatively few FSS or BSS earth stations operating in the 42-42.5 GHz band, it may be feasible for both services to employ technical or operational measures, including but not limited to such interference mitigation techniques as geographical isolation, time sharing, etc., in order to reduce the potential for interference detrimental to the RAS stations operating in this band;

f) that, taking into account the above *considerings*, it should be feasible to rely on arrangements between concerned RAS and FSS/BSS administrations to ensure that the unwanted emissions from FSS or BSS satellites and systems in the 42-42.5 GHz band do not cause interference detrimental to RAS stations in Region 2 conducting spectral-line observations in the 42.5-42.77 GHz band,

resolves

1 that a GSO FSS or BSS satellite in the band 42-42.5 GHz shall not exceed the values given in No. **5.551I** for more than 2% of the time at any radio astronomy station in Region 2 registered as a single-dish radio telescope in the 42.5-43.5 GHz band;

2 that an administration that plans to operate a GSO FSS or BSS satellite or a non-GSO FSS or BSS system in the 42-42.5 GHz band shall take all practicable steps to avoid exceeding the pfd value of −153 dB(W/m^2) in any 500 kHz for a GSO satellite, and the epfd value of −246 dB(W/m^2) in any 500 kHz for any non-GSO system in the 42.5-42.77 GHz band, for more than 2% of the time, at the site of a radio astronomy station registered as a single-dish radio telescope in Region 2;

3 that in the event that an administration planning to operate a GSO FSS or BSS satellite or a non-GSO FSS or BSS system in the band 42-42.5 GHz has taken all practicable steps to avoid exceeding the values and percentage of time criterion in *resolves* 2 in the 42.5-42.77 GHz band, but that nevertheless would not meet them, the administration planning to operate such a satellite or systems shall enter into discussions with the administration operating the affected radio astronomy station in Region 2 to arrive at a mutually satisfactory arrangement with respect to the unwanted emissions produced into the band 42.5-42.77 GHz;

4 that *resolves* 1, 2 and 3 shall apply with respect to any radio astronomy station in Region 2 registered as a single-dish radio telescope in the band 42.5-43.5 GHz that was in operation prior to 5 July 2003 and that has been notified to the Radiocommunication Bureau before 4 January 2004, or that was notified before the date of receipt of the complete Appendix **4** information for coordination or notification, as appropriate, for an FSS or BSS satellite or system to which this Resolution applies (see Note 1);

5 that an administration notifying a radio astronomy station in Region 2 as a single-dish radio telescope after the dates provided in *resolves* 4 may seek an agreement with administrations that have authorized FSS or BSS satellites or systems to which this Resolution applies,

invites ITU-R

to conduct studies and develop Recommendations to establish the appropriate balance between the percentage of time that GSO satellites operating in the 42-42.5 GHz band exceed the single-dish values in No. **5.551I** at the site of a radio astronomy station and the associated impact on radio astronomy observations.

NOTE 1 – For purposes of No. **5.551H**, No. **5.551I** and *resolves* 4 of this Resolution, the radio astronomy stations currently under construction in Sierra Negra, Mexico, 18° 59' N/97° 18' W (station Volcan Sierra Negra) and San Pedro de Atacama, Chile, 23° 20' S/67° 44' W (station Atacama Large Millimeter Array) to conduct observations in the 42.5-43.5 GHz band, shall be considered to have been in operation prior to 5 July 2003 if they are notified to the Radiocommunication Bureau before 1 January 2005.

RESOLUTION 744 (Rev.WRC-07)

Sharing between the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and the fixed and mobile services in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WRC-03 made a global allocation to the mobile-satellite service (MSS) (Earth-to-space) in the band 1 668-1 675 MHz and a global allocation to the MSS (space-to-Earth) in the band 1 518-1 525 MHz;

b) that the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services;

c) that due to sharing conditions between MSS (space-to-Earth) and the aeronautical mobile service for telemetry in the band 1 518-1 525 MHz (see No. **5.348B**), MSS operation in the United States of America is unlikely to be feasible;

d) that the above constraints on the MSS in the band 1 518-1 525 MHz therefore limit the possible use of the band 1 668-1 675 MHz by the MSS in the United States of America;

e) that the band 1 670-1 675 MHz is used in Canada and the United States of America for the fixed and mobile services;

f) that some administrations operate transportable radio-relay systems in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz which could operate as part of the fixed or mobile service allocations;

g) that sharing between the mobile service and the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz has been studied in Recommendation ITU-R M.1799,

resolves

1 that the use of the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz by systems in the mobile service is limited to transportable radio-relay systems;

2 that administrations operating transportable radio-relay systems should take into account Recommendation ITU-R M.1799, which states that, to adequately protect MSS networks, the e.i.r.p. of transportable radio-relay stations should not exceed −27 dB(W/4 kHz) in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz in the direction of the geostationary orbit;

3 that from 1 January 2015 administrations operating such systems in the mobile service shall limit the e.i.r.p. spectral density radiated in the direction of the geostationary orbit by these systems to −27 dB(W/4 kHz) in the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz;

4 that, in the band 1 670-1 675 MHz, stations in the MSS shall not claim protection from stations in the fixed and mobile services operating in Canada and the United States of America;

5 that *resolves* 1, 2 and 3 do not apply to stations in the fixed and mobile services operating in Canada and the United States of America.

RESOLUTION 748 (WRC-07)

Compatibility between the aeronautical mobile (R) service and the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the allocation of the 5 091-5 150 MHz band to the fixed-satellite service (FSS) (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary-satellite (non-GSO) systems in the mobile-satellite service (MSS);

b) that the frequency band 5 000-5 150 MHz is currently allocated to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service (AMS(R)S), subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, and to the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS);

c) that this Conference has allocated the band 5 091-5 150 MHz to the aeronautical mobile service (AMS) on a primary basis subject to No. **5.444B**;

d) that the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) is in the process of identifying the technical and operating characteristics of new systems operating in the AM(R)S in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz;

e) that the compatibility of one AM(R)S system, to be used by aircraft operating on the airport surface, and the FSS has been demonstrated in the 5 091-5 150 MHz band;

f) that ITU-R studies have examined potential sharing among AMS applications and have shown that the aggregate interference from aeronautical security, aeronautical telemetry and AM(R)S should total no more than 3% $\Delta T_s / T_s$;

g) that the frequency band 117.975-137 MHz currently allocated to the AM(R)S is reaching saturation in certain areas of the world, and therefore that band would not be available to support additional surface applications at airports;

h) that this new allocation is intended to support the introduction of applications and concepts in air traffic management which are data intensive, and which will support data links that carry safety-critical aeronautical data,

recognizing

a) that in the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz precedence is to be given to the microwave landing system (MLS) in accordance with No. **5.444**;

b) that ICAO publishes recognized international aeronautical standards for AM(R)S systems;

c) that Resolution **114 (Rev.WRC-03)** applies to the sharing conditions between the FSS and ARNS in the 5 091-5 150 MHz band,

noting

a) that the number of FSS transmitting stations required may be limited;

b) that the use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the AM(R)S needs to ensure protection of the current or planned use of this band by the FSS (Earth-to-space);

c) that ITU-R studies describe methods for ensuring compatibility between the AM(R)S and FSS operating in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz, and compatibility has been demonstrated for the AM(R)S system referred to in *considering e)*,

resolves

1 that any AM(R)S systems operating in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, systems operating in the ARNS;

2 that any AM(R)S systems operating in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz shall meet the SARPs requirements published in Annex 10 of the ICAO Convention on International Civil Aviation and the requirements of Recommendation ITU-R M.1827, to ensure compatibility with FSS systems operating in that band;

3 that, in part to meet the provisions of No. **4.10**, the coordination distance with respect to stations in the FSS operating in the band 5 091-5 150 MHz shall be based on ensuring that the signal received at the AM(R)S station from the FSS transmitter does not exceed −143 dB(W/MHz), where the required basic transmission loss shall be determined using the methods described in Recommendations ITU-R P.525-2 and ITU-R P.526-10,

invites

1 administrations to supply technical and operational criteria necessary for sharing studies for the AM(R)S, and to participate actively in such studies;

2 ICAO and other organizations to actively participate in such studies,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of ICAO.

RESOLUTION 749 (WRC-07)

Studies on the use of the band 790-862 MHz by mobile applications and by other services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the favourable propagation characteristics of the band 470-806/862 MHz are beneficial to provide cost-effective solutions for coverage, including large areas of low population density;

b) that the operation of broadcasting stations and base stations in the same geographical area may create incompatibility issues;

c) that, according to Resolution **646 (WRC-03)**, the bands 764-776 MHz and 794-806 MHz are currently used in some countries for Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR); and the bands 806-866 MHz (in Region 2) and 806-824 MHz and 851-869 MHz (in Region 3) are currently identified for PPDR;

d) that many communities are particularly underserved compared to urban centres;

e) that applications ancillary to broadcasting are sharing the band 470-862 MHz with the broadcasting service in all three Regions, and are expected to continue their operations in this band;

f) that it is necessary to adequately protect, *inter alia*, terrestrial television broadcasting and other systems in this band,

recognizing

a) that, in Article **5** of the Radio Regulations, the band 790-862 MHz, or parts of that band, is allocated, and is used on a primary basis for services other than broadcasting;

b) that the frequency band 470-806/862 MHz is allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis in all three Regions and used predominantly by this service, and that the GE06 Agreement applies in all Region 1 countries except Mongolia and one country in Region 3;

c) that the transition from analogue to digital television is expected to result in situations where the band 790-862 MHz will be used for both analogue and digital terrestrial transmission; and the demand for spectrum during the transition period may be even greater than the stand-alone usage of analogue broadcasting systems;

d) the switch-over to digital may result in spectrum opportunities for new applications;

e) the timing of the switch-over to digital is likely to vary from country to country;

f) that the use of spectrum for different services should take into account the need for sharing studies;

g) that the Radio Regulations provide that the identification of a given band for IMT does not preclude the use of that band by any application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations;

h) that the GE06 Agreement contains provisions for the terrestrial broadcasting service and other terrestrial services, a Plan for digital TV, and the List of other primary terrestrial services,

noting

that Resolution ITU-R 57 provides principles for the process of development of IMT-Advanced and this process is planned to start after this Conference,

emphasizing

a) that the use of the band 470-862 MHz by broadcasting and other primary services is also covered by the GE06 Agreement;

b) that the requirements of the different services to which the band is allocated, including mobile and broadcasting services, shall be taken into account,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to conduct sharing studies for Regions 1 and 3 in the band 790-862 MHz between the mobile service and other services in order to protect the services to which the frequency band is currently allocated;

2 to invite ITU-R to report the results of the studies referred to in *resolves* 1 for consideration by WRC-11 to take appropriate action,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

invites the Director of the Telecommunication Development Bureau

to draw the attention of the Telecommunication Development Sector to this Resolution.

RESOLUTION 750 (WRC-07)

Compatibility between the Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) and relevant active services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that primary allocations have been made to various space services such as the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space), the space operation service (Earth-to-space) and the inter-satellite service and/or to terrestrial services such as the fixed service, the mobile service and the radiolocation service, hereinafter referred to as "active services", in bands adjacent or nearby to bands allocated to the Earth exploration-satellite service (EESS) (passive) subject to No. **5.340**;

b) that unwanted emissions from active services have the potential to cause unacceptable interference to EESS (passive) sensors;

c) that, for technical or operational reasons, the general limits in Appendix **3** may be insufficient in protecting the EESS (passive) in specific bands;

d) that, in many cases, the frequencies used by EESS (passive) sensors are chosen to study natural phenomena producing radio emissions at frequencies fixed by the laws of nature, and therefore shifting frequency to avoid or mitigate interference problems is not possible;

e) that the band 1 400-1 427 MHz is used for measuring soil moisture, and also for measuring sea-surface salinity and vegetation biomass;

f) that long-term protection of the EESS in the bands 23.6-24 GHz, 31.3-31.5 GHz, 50.2-50.4 GHz and 52.6-54.25 GHz is vital to weather prediction and disaster management, and measurements at several frequencies must be made simultaneously in order to isolate and retrieve each individual contribution;

g) that, in many cases, the bands adjacent or nearby to passive service bands are used and will continue to be used for various active service applications;

h) that it is necessary to ensure equitable burden sharing for achieving compatibility between active and passive services operating in adjacent or nearby bands,

noting

a) that the compatibility studies between relevant active and passive services operating in adjacent and nearby bands are documented in Report ITU-R SM.2092;

b) that Recommendation ITU-R RS.1029 provides the interference criteria for satellite passive remote sensing,

noting further

that, for the purpose of this Resolution:

– point-to-point communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by a link, for example a radio-relay link, between two stations located at specified fixed points;

– point-to-multipoint communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by links between a single station located at a specified fixed point (also called “hub station”) and a number of stations located at specified fixed points (also called “customer stations”),

recognizing

that studies documented in Report ITU-R SM.2092 do not consider point-to-multipoint communication links in the fixed service in the bands 1 350-1 400 MHz and 1 427-1 452 MHz,

resolves

1 that unwanted emissions of stations brought into use in the bands and services listed in Table 1-1 below shall not exceed the corresponding limits in that table, subject to the specified conditions;

2 to urge administrations to take all reasonable steps to ensure that unwanted emissions of active service stations in the bands and services listed in Table 1-2 below do not exceed the recommended maximum levels contained in that table, noting that EESS (passive) sensors provide worldwide measurements that benefit all countries, even if these sensors are not operated by their country;

3 that the Radiocommunication Bureau shall not make any examination or finding with respect to compliance with this Resolution under either Article **9** or **11**.

TABLE 1-1

EESS (passive) band	Active service band	Active service	Limits of unwanted emission power from active service stations in a specified bandwidth within the EESS (passive) band[1]
23.6-24.0 GHz	22.55-23.55 GHz	Inter-satellite	−36 dBW in any 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for non-geostationary (non-GSO) inter-satellite service (ISS) systems for which complete advance publication information is received by the Bureau before 1 January 2020, and −46 dBW in any 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for non-GSO ISS systems for which complete advance publication information is received by the Bureau on or after 1 January 2020
31.3-31.5 GHz	31-31.3 GHz	Fixed (excluding HAPS)	For stations brought into use after 1 January 2012: −38 dBW in any 100 MHz of the EESS (passive) band. This limit does not apply to stations that have been authorized prior to 1 January 2012
50.2-50.4 GHz	49.7-50.2 GHz	Fixed-satellite (E-to-s)[2]	For stations brought into use after the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-07: −10 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain greater than or equal to 57 dBi −20 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain less than 57 dBi
50.2-50.4 GHz	50.4-50.9 GHz	Fixed-satellite (E-to-s)[2]	For stations brought into use after the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-07: −10 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain greater than or equal to 57 dBi −20 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain less than 57 dBi
52.6-54.25 GHz	51.4-52.6 GHz	Fixed	For stations brought into use after the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-07: −33 dBW in any 100 MHz of the EESS (passive) band

[1] The unwanted emission power level is to be understood here as the level measured at the antenna port.

[2] The limits apply under clear-sky conditions. During fading conditions, the limits may be exceeded by earth stations when using uplink power control.

TABLE 1-2

EESS (passive) band	Active service band	Active service	Recommended maximum level of unwanted emission power from active service stations in a specified bandwidth within the EESS (passive) band [1]
1 400-1 427 MHz	1 350-1 400 MHz	Radiolocation[2]	−29 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band
		Fixed	−45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for point-to-point
		Mobile	−60 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for mobile service stations except transportable radio-relay stations −45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for transportable radio-relay stations
	1 427-1 429 MHz	Space operation (E-to-s)	−36 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band
	1 427-1 429 MHz	Mobile except aeronautical mobile	−60 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for mobile service stations except transportable radio-relay stations[3] −45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for transportable radio-relay stations
		Fixed	−45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for point-to-point
	1 429-1 452 MHz	Mobile	−60 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for mobile service stations except transportable radio-relay stations[3] −45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for transportable radio-relay stations −28 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for aeronautical telemetry stations[4]
		Fixed	−45 dBW in the 27 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for point-to-point
31.3-31.5 GHz	30.0-31.0 GHz	Fixed-satellite (E-to-s)[5]	−9 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain greater than or equal to 56 dBi −20 dBW into the 200 MHz of the EESS (passive) band for earth stations having an antenna gain less than 56 dBi

[1] The unwanted emission power level is to be understood here as the level measured at the antenna port.

[2] The mean power is to be understood here as the total power measured at the antenna port (or an equivalent thereof) in the band 1 400-1 427 MHz, averaged over a period of the order of 5 s.

[3] Stations of the mobile service for cellular systems, including those complying with Recommendation ITU-R M.1457 or IMT standards, are likely to meet this unwanted emission power level.

[4] The band 1 429-1 435 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile service in eight Region 1 administrations on a primary basis exclusively for the purposes of aeronautical telemetry within their national territory (No. **5.342**).

[5] The recommended maximum levels apply under clear-sky conditions. During fading conditions, these levels may be exceeded by earth stations when using uplink power control.

RESOLUTION 751 (WRC-07)

Use of the frequency band 10.6-10.68 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the frequency band 10.6-10.7 GHz is allocated to the Earth exploration-satellite service (EESS) (passive) and to the space research service (passive) on a primary basis;

b) that the band 10.6-10.7 GHz is of primary interest for the measurement of rain, snow, sea state, ocean wind and soil moisture;

c) that this frequency band is used by passive sensors to study natural phenomena producing radio emissions at frequencies fixed by the laws of nature, and therefore shifting frequency to avoid or mitigate interference problems may not be possible;

d) that any limitation of the operation of passive sensors in the band 10.68-10.7 GHz covered by No. **5.340** would degrade the sensitivity of those sensors;

e) that the frequency band 10.6-10.68 GHz is also allocated to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, and the fixed services on a primary basis;

f) that experience has shown that EESS (passive) sensors currently operating in the band 10.6-10.68 GHz are facing high interference levels from the emissions of systems of active services in some parts of the world;

g) that studies have concluded that appropriate sharing criteria applicable to both passive and active services would reduce this interference to a level that would permit passive sensors to operate successfully, while allowing continuing operation of active services in the same band,

noting

that, for the purpose of this Resolution:

– point-to-point communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by a link, for example a radio-relay link, between two stations located at specified fixed points;

– point-to-multipoint communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by links between a single station located at a specified fixed point (also called “hub station”) and a number of stations located at specified fixed points (also called “customer stations”);

– automatic transmit-power control (ATPC) is a technique in which the output power of a microwave transmitter is automatically varied to compensate for path propagation conditions; in normal propagation conditions, ATPC maintains the transmitter output power at a reduced level; ATPC is characterized by its range, which is defined as the difference between the maximum and minimum values of transmitted power, and has no impact on the design of the related link,

resolves

1 to urge administrations to take all reasonable steps to comply with the sharing criteria in Tables 1 to 4 contained in Annex 1 to this Resolution when bringing into use stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (passive), the fixed service and the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service, noting that EESS (passive) sensors provide worldwide measurements that benefit all countries, even if these sensors are not operated by their country;

2 that the Radiocommunication Bureau shall not make any examination or finding with respect to compliance with this Resolution under either Article **9** or **11**.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 751 (WRC-07)

Sharing criteria in the band 10.6-10.68 GHz

TABLE 1

Earth exploration-satellite service (passive)

Parameter	Value
Incidence angle (defined as the angle at the Earth's surface between the local vertical and the direction of the passive sensor)	≤ 60°
Spatial resolution (defined as the maximum cross-section of the passive sensor −3 dB contour on the Earth's surface)	≤ 50 km (See Note 1)
Main-beam efficiency (defined as the energy of main and cross-polarization components within 2.5 times the −3 dB beamwidth region, relative to the total energy within all angles)	≥ 85% (See Note 1)

NOTE 1 – These parameters only apply to real-aperture EESS (passive) systems.

TABLE 2

Stations of point-to-point systems in the fixed service

Parameter	Value
Maximum elevation angle	20°
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−15 dBW (See Notes 2 and 3)

NOTE 2 – In the case of point-to-point systems using ATPC, the maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased by a value corresponding to the ATPC range, up to a maximum of −3 dBW.

NOTE 3 – In the case of point-to-point fixed service used for unidirectional transmissions for broadcasting applications, the maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased up to −3 dBW. For such applications, administrations are urged to limit the off-axis e.i.r.p. above 20° elevation to a level of −10 dBW.

TABLE 3

Stations of point-to-multipoint systems in the fixed service

Parameter	Value
Hub stations (See Note 4)	
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−7 dBW
Maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. above 20° from the horizontal plane	−6 dBW
Maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. above 45° from the horizontal plane	−11 dBW
Maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. at 90° from the horizontal plane	−13 dBW
Customer stations (See Note 4)	
Maximum elevation angle	20°
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−8 dBW
Maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. above 45° from the horizontal plane	−18 dBW (See Note 5)

NOTE 4 – Administrations planning point-to-multipoint deployment in the band 10.6-10.68 GHz, paired with another frequency band, are encouraged to only deploy return links (i.e. emissions from customer stations) in the 10.6-10.68 GHz band.

NOTE 5 – In the case of point-to-multipoint systems using ATPC, the maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased by a value corresponding to the ATPC range, up to a maximum of −3 dBW.

TABLE 4

Stations in the mobile service

Parameter	Value
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−17 dBW (See Note 6)

NOTE 6 – In the case of mobile service systems used for broadcasting applications, the maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased up to −3 dBW. For such applications, administrations are urged to limit the off-axis e.i.r.p. above 20° elevation to a level of −10 dBW.

RESOLUTION 752 (WRC-07)

Use of the frequency band 36-37 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the frequency band 36-37 GHz is allocated to the Earth exploration-satellite service (EESS) (passive) and to the space research service (passive) on a primary basis;

b) that the band 36-37 GHz is of primary interest for the measurement of rain, snow, ocean ice and water vapour;

c) that this frequency band is used by passive sensors to study natural phenomena producing radio emissions at frequencies fixed by the laws of nature, and therefore shifting frequency to avoid or mitigate interference problems may not be possible;

d) that the frequency band 36-37 GHz is also allocated to the fixed service and to the mobile service on a primary basis;

e) that the EESS (passive) operating in the band 36-37 GHz may suffer from interference from the emissions of systems of active services;

f) that studies have concluded that appropriate sharing criteria applicable to both passive and active services would reduce this interference to a level that would permit passive sensors to operate successfully in this band, while allowing continuing operation of active services in the same band,

noting

that, for the purpose of this Resolution:

– point-to-point communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by a link, for example a radio-relay link, between two stations located at specified fixed points;

– point-to-multipoint communication is defined as radiocommunication provided by links between a single station located at a specified fixed point (also called “hub station”) and a number of stations located at specified fixed points (also called “customer stations”);

– automatic transmit-power control (ATPC) is a technique in which the output power of a microwave transmitter is automatically varied to compensate for path propagation conditions; in normal propagation conditions, ATPC maintains the transmitter output power at a reduced level; ATPC is characterized by its range, which is defined as the difference between the maximum and minimum values of transmitted power,

resolves

1 that, in order to facilitate sharing between active and passive services in the band 36-37 GHz, EESS (passive) stations brought into use after the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-07 shall comply with the sharing criteria contained in Table 1 of Annex 1 to this Resolution;

2 that, in order to facilitate sharing between active and passive services in the band 36-37 GHz, stations of point-to-point systems in the fixed service brought into use after 1 January 2012 shall comply with the sharing criteria contained in Table 2 of Annex 1 to this Resolution;

3 that, in order to facilitate sharing between active and passive services in the band 36-37 GHz, stations of point-to-multipoint systems in the fixed service brought into use after the date of entry into force of Final Acts of WRC-07 shall comply with the sharing criteria contained in Table 2 of Annex 1 to this Resolution;

4 that, in order to facilitate sharing between active and passive services in the band 36-37 GHz, stations in the mobile service brought into use after the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-07 shall comply with the sharing criteria contained in Table 3 of Annex 1 to this Resolution;

5 that the Radiocommunication Bureau shall not make any examination or finding with respect to compliance with this Resolution under either Article **9** or **11**.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 752 (WRC-07)

Sharing criteria in the band 36-37 GHz

TABLE 1

Earth exploration-satellite service (passive)

Parameter	Value
Incidence angle (defined as the angle at the Earth's surface between the local vertical and the direction of the passive sensor)	≤ 60°
Spatial resolution (defined as the maximum cross-section of the passive sensor −3 dB contour on the Earth's surface)	≤ 50 km (See Note 1)
Main-beam efficiency (defined as the energy of main and cross-polarization components within 2.5 times the −3 dB beamwidth region, relative to the total energy within all angles)	≥ 92% (See Note 1)

NOTE 1 – These parameters only apply to real-aperture EESS (passive) systems.

TABLE 2

Fixed service

Parameter	Value
Maximum elevation angle	20°
Point-to-point systems	
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−10 dBW (See Note 2)
Point-to-multipoint systems	
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port of hub stations	−5 dBW
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port of customer stations	−10 dBW (See Note 2)

NOTE 2 – In the case of fixed service systems using ATPC, the maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased by a value corresponding to the ATPC range, up to a maximum of −7 dBW.

TABLE 3

Mobile service

Parameter	Value
Maximum transmitter power at the antenna port	−10 dBW (See Note 3)

NOTE 3 – The maximum transmitter power at the antenna port may be increased up to −3 dBW for stations used for public safety and disaster management.

RESOLUTION 753 (WRC-07)

Use of the band 22.55-23.15 GHz by the space research service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that there is growing interest around the world in the comprehensive space exploration in particular around the Moon;

b) that the lunar exploration missions, examining the terrain, environment and potential landing sites, will be robotic for the foreseeable future and manned in the long term;

c) that a primary space research service (space-to-Earth) allocation in the band 25.5-27.0 GHz was added to the Table of Frequency Allocations to support a wide range of space research missions;

d) that space research service (space-to-Earth) transmissions in the 25.5-27.0 GHz band will be used to support space research service missions in near-Earth orbit, including missions in transit to the Moon and at or near the Moon;

e) that the space research service (space-to-Earth) transmissions in the 25.5-27.0 GHz band will be used for both scientific data retrieval and voice/videocommunication with the Earth;

f) that there is a need for a companion uplink space research service (Earth-to-space) band to provide the mission data, command and control links for the lunar exploration missions;

g) that due to the potential for many concurrent exploration-related systems and the large bandwidth requirements of these systems, especially those supporting manned missions, it is envisaged that a total uplink bandwidth of at least several hundred MHz will be needed;

h) that the 22.55-23.15 GHz band is far enough from the 25.5-27.0 GHz band to provide adequate frequency separation;

i) that the 22.55-23.55 GHz band is used by data relay satellite systems to communicate with user satellites (forward links) in the existing primary inter-satellite service allocation;

j) that the 22.55-23.15 GHz band is the logical companion band to provide the necessary uplink bandwidth and by using the same band as data relay satellite systems in *considering i)* for radiocommunication in the Earth-to-space direction, it provides a degree of redundancy and coverage that may prove vital for future missions,

recognizing

1 that the band 22.55-23.55 GHz is allocated to the fixed, inter-satellite and mobile services;

2 that the inter-satellite forward links in the 22.55-23.55 GHz band are paired with inter-satellite return links in the 25.25-27.5 GHz band;

3 that non-GSO inter-satellite service links have been operating for several years and are expected to continue to operate in the 23.183-23.377 GHz band and that these links are increasingly being used in situations of emergencies and natural disasters;

4 that systems referred to in *recognizing* 1 need to be protected and their future requirements be taken into account,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to conduct sharing studies between space research service systems operating in the Earth-to-space direction and the fixed, inter-satellite and mobile services in the band 22.55-23.15 GHz, and to recommend appropriate sharing criteria for an allocation to the space research service in the Earth-to-space direction;

2 to invite WRC-11 to review the results of the studies under *resolves* 1 and consider the inclusion of the sharing criteria within the Radio Regulations and appropriate modifications to the Table of Frequency Allocations,

invites administrations

to contribute to the sharing studies between the space research service and the fixed, inter-satellite and mobile services in the 22.55-23.15 GHz band,

invites ITU-R

to complete the necessary studies, as a matter of urgency, taking into account the present use of the allocated band, with a view to presenting, at the appropriate time, the technical information likely to be required as a basis for the work of the conference,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 754 (WRC-07)

Consideration of modification of the aeronautical component of the mobile service allocation in the 37-38 GHz band for protection of other primary services in the band

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the band 37-38 GHz is allocated on a primary basis to the fixed, mobile and space research (space-to-Earth) services, and the 37.5-38 GHz portion of this band is also allocated on a primary basis to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth);

b) that an aeronautical mobile station can cause unacceptable interference to receivers in the fixed service (including high-density applications), as well as land mobile, maritime mobile and fixed-satellite (space-to-Earth) receivers within line-of-sight;

c) that an aeronautical mobile station can cause unacceptable interference to receivers in the space research service whenever it is within line-of-sight of the receiver, as indicated in Recommendation ITU-R SA.1016;

d) that interference from the emissions of an aeronautical mobile station to a space research service earth station receiver may significantly exceed the permissible interference levels for extended periods of time, thus jeopardizing the success of a space mission,

recognizing

a) that the Table of Frequency Allocations already excludes the operation of aeronautical mobile stations in the bands 2.29-2.3 GHz, 8.4-8.5 GHz and 22.21-22.5 GHz where the mobile service is co-allocated on a primary basis with the space research service (space-to-Earth), and in the 31.5-31.8 GHz band where the mobile service is allocated on a secondary basis;

b) that the Table of Frequency Allocations also already excludes the operation of aeronautical mobile stations in many bands where the mobile service is co-allocated on a primary basis with the fixed service, such as in the band 11.7-12.5 GHz and the fixed service and the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth), such as 7 300-7 750 MHz;

c) that No. **5.547** indicates that the 37-38 GHz band is available for high-density applications in the fixed service;

d) that use of the 37-38 GHz band is required to support the increased data requirements of planned manned and scientific missions,

noting

a) that aeronautical mobile service systems are currently neither deployed nor planned in the 37-38 GHz band;

b) that sharing studies between the space research service (space-to-Earth) and the aeronautical mobile service have already begun,

resolves

1 to invite ITU-R to conduct appropriate studies involving the aeronautical mobile service and the affected primary services in the band 37-38 GHz in order to determine the compatibility of the aeronautical mobile service with these other services;

2 to invite WRC-11 to review the results of the studies under *resolves* 1 and consider the inclusion of any appropriate compatibility criteria within the Radio Regulations or appropriate modifications to the Table of Frequency Allocations,

invites ITU-R

to complete the necessary studies, as a matter of urgency, taking into account the present use of the allocated band, with a view to presenting, at the appropriate time, the technical information likely to be required as a basis for the work of the Conference,

invites administrations

to contribute to the compatibility studies between the aeronautical mobile service and the other services in the 37-38 GHz band,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 804 (WRC-07)

Principles for establishing agendas for world radiocommunication conferences

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that, in accordance with No. 118 of the ITU Convention, the general scope of the agendas for world radiocommunication conferences (WRCs) should be established four to six years in advance;

b) Article 13 of the ITU Constitution relating to the competence and scheduling of WRCs and Article 7 of the Convention relating to their agendas;

c) that No. 92 of the Constitution and Nos. 488 and 489 of the Convention require conferences to be fiscally responsible;

d) that in Resolution 71 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002), concerning the strategic plan of the Union, the Plenipotentiary Conference noted the increasingly complex and lengthy agendas for world radiocommunication conferences;

e) that Resolution 80 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference and Resolution **72 (Rev.WRC-07)** recognize the positive contribution of regional and informal groups and the need for improved efficiency and fiscal prudence;

f) the relevant Resolutions of previous WRCs,

noting

a) that the number of issues addressed in agendas for WRCs has been growing, and that some issues could not be resolved adequately in the time allotted to the Conference, including conference preparations;

b) that some agenda items may have a greater impact on the future of radiocommunications than others;

c) that the human and financial resources of ITU are limited;

d) that there is a need to limit the agenda of conferences, taking account of the needs of developing countries, in a manner that allows the major issues to be dealt with equitably and efficiently,

resolves

that the principles in Annex 1 should be used when developing future WRC agendas,

resolves to invite administrations

1 to use the template in Annex 2 in proposing agenda items for WRCs;

2 to participate in regional activities for the preparation of future WRC agendas.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 804 (WRC-07)

Principles for establishing agendas for WRCs

A conference agenda shall include:

1) items assigned to it by the ITU Plenipotentiary Conference;

2) items on which the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau has been requested to report;

3) items concerning instructions to the Radio Regulations Board and the Radiocommunication Bureau regarding their activities, and concerning the review of those activities.

In general, a conference may include on a future conference agenda an item proposed by a group of administrations or an administration, if all the following conditions are met:

1) it addresses issues of a worldwide or regional character;

2) it is expected that changes in the Radio Regulations, including WRC Resolutions and Recommendations, may be necessary;

3) it is expected that required studies can be completed (e.g. that appropriate ITU-R Recommendations will be approved) prior to that conference;

4) resources associated with the subject are kept within a range which is manageable for Member States and Sector Members, the Radiocommunication Bureau and ITU-R Study Groups, Conference Preparatory Meeting (CPM) and the Special Committee.

To the extent possible, agenda items arising from previous conferences, normally reflected in Resolutions, and which have been considered by two successive conferences, should not be considered, unless justified.

In developing the conference agenda, efforts should be made to:

a) encourage regional and interregional coordination on the subjects to be considered in the preparatory process for the WRC, in accordance with Resolution **72 (Rev.WRC-07)** and Resolution 80 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference;

b) include, to the extent possible, agenda items that are prepared within regional groups, taking into account the equal right of individual administrations to submit proposals for agenda items;

c) ensure that proposals are submitted with an indication of priority;

d) include in proposals an assessment of their financial and other resource implications (with the assistance of the Radiocommunication Bureau) to ensure that they are within the agreed budgetary limits for ITU-R;

e) ensure that the objectives and scope of proposed agenda items are complete and unambiguous;

f) take into account the status of the ITU-R studies related to the potential agenda items before considering them as possible candidates for future agendas;

g) distinguish between items intended to result in changes to the Radio Regulations and those dealing solely with the progress of studies.

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 804 (WRC-07)

Template for the submission of proposals for agenda items

Subject:

Origin:

Proposal:

Background/reason:

Radiocommunication services concerned:

Indication of possible difficulties:

Previous/ongoing studies on the issue:

Studies to be carried out by:	***with the participation of:***

ITU-R Study Groups concerned:

ITU resource implications, including financial implications (refer to CV126):

Common regional proposal: Yes/No ***Multicountry proposal:*** Yes/No
Number of countries:

Remarks

RESOLUTION 805 (WRC-07)

Agenda for the 2011 World Radiocommunication Conference

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that, in accordance with No. 118 of the ITU Convention, the general scope of the agenda for a world radiocommunication conference should be established four to six years in advance and a final agenda shall be established by the Council two years before the conference;

b) Article 13 of the ITU Constitution relating to the competence and scheduling of world radiocommunication conferences and Article 7 of the Convention relating to their agendas;

c) the relevant resolutions and recommendations of previous world administrative radio conferences (WARCs) and world radiocommunication conferences (WRCs),

recognizing

a) that this Conference has identified a number of urgent issues requiring further examination by WRC-11;

b) that, in preparing this agenda, many items proposed by administrations could not be included and have had to be deferred to future conference agendas,

resolves

to recommend to the Council that a world radiocommunication conference be held in 2011 for a period of four weeks, with the following agenda:

1 on the basis of proposals from administrations, taking account of the results of WRC-07 and the Report of the Conference Preparatory Meeting, and with due regard to the requirements of existing and future services in the bands under consideration, to consider and take appropriate action with respect to the following items:

1.1 to consider and take appropriate action on requests from administrations to delete their country footnotes or to have their country name deleted from footnotes, if no longer required, taking into account Resolution **26 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

1.2 taking into account the ITU-R studies carried out in accordance with Resolution **951 (Rev.WRC-07)**, to take appropriate action with a view to enhancing the international regulatory framework;

1.3 to consider spectrum requirements and possible regulatory actions, including allocations, in order to support the safe operation of unmanned aircraft systems (UAS), based on the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **421 (WRC-07)**;

1.4 to consider, based on the results of ITU-R studies, any further regulatory measures to facilitate introduction of new aeronautical mobile (R) service (AM(R)S) systems in the bands 112-117.975 MHz, 960-1 164 MHz and 5 000-5 030 MHz in accordance with Resolutions **413 (Rev.WRC-07)**, **417 (WRC-07)** and **420 (WRC-07)**;

1.5 to consider worldwide/regional harmonization of spectrum for electronic news gathering (ENG), taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **954 (WRC-07)**;

1.6 to review No. **5.565** of the Radio Regulations in order to update the spectrum use by the passive services between 275 GHz and 3 000 GHz, in accordance with Resolution **950 (Rev.WRC-07)**, and to consider possible procedures for free-space optical-links, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **955 (WRC-07)**;

1.7 to consider the results of ITU-R studies in accordance with Resolution **222 (Rev.WRC-07)** in order to ensure long-term spectrum availability and access to spectrum necessary to meet requirements for the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service, and to take appropriate action on this subject, while retaining unchanged the generic allocation to the mobile-satellite service in the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz;

1.8 to consider the progress of ITU-R studies concerning the technical and regulatory issues relative to the fixed service in the bands between 71 GHz and 238 GHz, taking into account Resolutions **731 (WRC-2000)** and **732 (WRC-2000)**;

1.9 to revise frequencies and channelling arrangements of Appendix **17** to the Radio Regulations, in accordance with Resolution **351 (Rev.WRC-07)**, in order to implement new digital technologies for the maritime mobile service;

1.10 to examine the frequency allocation requirements with regard to operation of safety systems for ships and ports and associated regulatory provisions, in accordance with Resolution **357 (WRC-07)**;

1.11 to consider a primary allocation to the space research service (Earth-to-space) within the band 22.55-23.15 GHz, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **753 (WRC-07)**;

1.12 to protect the primary services in the band 37-38 GHz from interference resulting from aeronautical mobile service operations, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **754 (WRC-07)**;

1.13 to consider the results of ITU-R studies in accordance with Resolution **551 (WRC-07)** and decide on the spectrum usage of the 21.4-22 GHz band for the broadcasting-satellite service and the associated feeder-link bands in Regions 1 and 3;

1.14 to consider requirements for new applications in the radiolocation service and review allocations or regulatory provisions for implementation of the radiolocation service in the range 30-300 MHz, in accordance with Resolution **611 (WRC-07)**;

1.15 to consider possible allocations in the range 3-50 MHz to the radiolocation service for oceanographic radar applications, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **612 (WRC-07)**;

1.16 to consider the needs of passive systems for lightning detection in the meteorological aids service, including the possibility of an allocation in the frequency range below 20 kHz, and to take appropriate action, in accordance with Resolution **671 (WRC-07)**;

1.17 to consider results of sharing studies between the mobile service and other services in the band 790-862 MHz in Regions 1 and 3, in accordance with Resolution **749 (WRC-07)**, to ensure the adequate protection of services to which this frequency band is allocated, and take appropriate action;

1.18 to consider extending the existing primary and secondary radiodetermination-satellite service (space-to-Earth) allocations in the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz in order to make a global primary allocation, and to determine the necessary regulatory provisions based upon the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **613 (WRC-07)**;

1.19 to consider regulatory measures and their relevance, in order to enable the introduction of software-defined radio and cognitive radio systems, based on the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **956 (WRC-07)**;

1.20 to consider the results of ITU-R studies and spectrum identification for gateway links for high altitude platform stations (HAPS) in the range 5 850-7 075 MHz in order to support operations in the fixed and mobile services, in accordance with Resolution **734 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

1.21 to consider a primary allocation to the radiolocation service in the band 15.4-15.7 GHz, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies, in accordance with Resolution **614 (WRC-07)**;

1.22 to examine the effect of emissions from short-range devices on radiocommunication services, in accordance with Resolution **953 (WRC-07)**;

1.23 to consider an allocation of about 15 kHz in parts of the band 415-526.5 kHz to the amateur service on a secondary basis, taking into account the need to protect existing services;

1.24 to consider the existing allocation to the meteorological-satellite service in the band 7750-7850 MHz with a view to extending this allocation to the band 7850-7900 MHz, limited to non-geostationary meteorological satellites in the space-to-Earth direction, in accordance with Resolution **672 (WRC-07)**;

1.25 to consider possible additional allocations to the mobile-satellite service, in accordance with Resolution **231 (WRC-07)**;

2 to examine the revised ITU-R Recommendations incorporated by reference in the Radio Regulations communicated by the Radiocommunication Assembly, in accordance with Resolution **28 (Rev.WRC-03)**, and to decide whether or not to update the corresponding references in the Radio Regulations, in accordance with principles contained in the Annex 1 to Resolution **27 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

3 to consider such consequential changes and amendments to the Radio Regulations as may be necessitated by the decisions of the Conference;

4 in accordance with Resolution **95 (Rev.WRC-07)**, to review the resolutions and recommendations of previous conferences with a view to their possible revision, replacement or abrogation;

5 to review, and take appropriate action on, the Report from the Radiocommunication Assembly submitted in accordance with Nos. 135 and 136 of the Convention;

6 to identify those items requiring urgent action by the Radiocommunication Study Groups in preparation for the next world radiocommunication conference;

7 to consider possible changes in response to Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference: “Advance publication, coordination, notification and recording procedures for frequency assignments pertaining to satellite networks”, in accordance with Resolution **86 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

8 in accordance with Article 7 of the Convention:

8.1 to consider and approve the Report of the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau:

8.1.1 on the activities of the Radiocommunication Sector since WRC-07;

8.1.2 on any difficulties or inconsistencies encountered in the application of the Radio Regulations; and

8.1.3 on action in response to Resolution **80 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

8.2 to recommend to the Council items for inclusion in the agenda for the next WRC, and to give its views on the preliminary agenda for the subsequent conference and on possible agenda items for future conferences, taking into account Resolution **806 (WRC-07)**,

resolves further

to activate the Conference Preparatory Meeting and the Special Committee on Regulatory/ Procedural Matters,

invites the Council

to finalize the agenda and arrange for the convening of WRC-11, and to initiate as soon as possible the necessary consultations with Member States,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to make the necessary arrangements to convene meetings of the Conference Preparatory Meeting and to prepare a report to WRC-11,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 806 (WRC-07)

Preliminary agenda for the 2015 World Radiocommunication Conference

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that, in accordance with No. 118 of the ITU Convention, the general scope of the agenda for WRC-15 should be established four to six years in advance;

b) Article 13 of the ITU Constitution relating to the competence and scheduling of world radiocommunication conferences and Article 7 of the Convention relating to their agendas;

c) the relevant resolutions and recommendations of previous world administrative radio conferences (WARCs) and world radiocommunication conferences (WRCs),

resolves to give the view

that the following items should be included in the preliminary agenda for WRC-15:

1 to take appropriate action in respect of those urgent issues that were specifically requested by WRC-11;

2 on the basis of proposals from administrations and the Report of the Conference Preparatory Meeting, and taking account of the results of WRC-11, to consider and take appropriate action in respect of the following items:

2.1 to consider spectrum requirements and possible additional spectrum allocations in the radiodetermination service to support the operation of unmanned aerial systems (UAS) in non-segregated airspace;

2.2 to review the use of the band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) (limited to feeder links of the non-GSO mobile-satellite service) in accordance with Resolution **114 (Rev.WRC-03)**;

3 to examine the revised ITU-R Recommendations incorporated by reference in the Radio Regulations communicated by the Radiocommunication Assembly, in accordance with Resolution **28 (Rev.WRC-03)**, and to decide whether or not to update the corresponding references in the Radio Regulations, in accordance with the principles contained in Annex 1 to Resolution **27 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

4 to consider such consequential changes and amendments to the Radio Regulations as may be necessitated by the decisions of the Conference;

5 in accordance with Resolution **95 (Rev.WRC-07)**, to review the resolutions and recommendations of previous conferences with a view to their possible revision, replacement or abrogation;

6 to review, and take appropriate action on, the Report from the Radiocommunication Assembly submitted in accordance with Nos. 135 and 136 of the Convention;

7 to identify those items requiring urgent action by the Radiocommunication Study Groups;

8 to consider possible changes in response to Resolution 86 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference: "Advance publication, coordination, notification and recording procedures for frequency assignments pertaining to satellite networks", in accordance with Resolution **86 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

9 in accordance with Article 7 of the Convention:

9.1 to consider and approve the Report of the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau on the activities of the Radiocommunication Sector since WRC-11;

9.2 to recommend to the Council items for inclusion in the agenda for the following WRC,

invites the Council

to consider the views given in this Resolution,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to make the necessary arrangements to convene meetings of the Conference Preparatory Meeting and to prepare a report to WRC-15,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Resolution to international and regional organizations concerned.

RESOLUTION 900 (WRC-03)

Review of the Rule of Procedure for No. 9.35 of the Radio Regulations

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the existence of the backlog of satellite filings is a significant problem that has the potential of adversely affecting the rights of all administrations;

b) that the Board, at its 25th meeting, adopted a provisional Rule of Procedure partially suspending the examination of satellite network filings under No. **9.35**,

recognizing

a) that there was no agreement regarding this provisional Rule of Procedure on its conformity with the Radio Regulations;

b) that the Radiocommunication Bureau is facing severe financial restraints,

resolves

1 that the Bureau shall henceforth resume full examination of satellite network filings under No. **9.35** for those filings considered as received from 1 May 2002;

2 that, for those satellite coordination filings having been subjected to the provisional Rule of Procedure mentioned in *considering b)* above, the Bureau shall carry out the process described in the Annex and inform administrations of the results;

3 that, when the Bureau examines the assignments under Article **11** (No. **11.31**) for satellite networks covered by *resolves* 2, for which the full examination under No. **9.35** was not carried out and which were identified in step *c)* of the Annex referred to in *resolves* 2, if the Bureau determines that assignments in the coordination request submitted under No. **9.30** exceed the limits in force at the date of receipt of this coordination information as contained in Articles **21** and **22** and relevant Resolutions, these assignments will receive an unfavourable finding;

4 that those assignments for which the findings are favourable under *resolves* 3 shall also be examined under Article **11** (No. **11.31**) with respect to their notification information submitted in accordance with No. **11.15**,

invites administrations

1 to take into account, in their bilateral and multilateral negotiations with the concerned administrations, the results of the Bureau's actions referred to under *resolves* 2 above;

2 to inform the Bureau, if they so wish, of their comments on the published information referred to in the Annex,

instructs the Radiocommunication Bureau

to provide the necessary assistance to requesting administrations,

instructs the Radio Regulations Board

to suppress the current Rule of Procedure on No. **9.35**.

ANNEX TO RESOLUTION 900 (WRC-03)

Procedure to be used by the Radiocommunication Bureau for networks examined under the Rule of Procedure on No. 9.35

The Bureau shall calculate the power flux-density (pfd)/e.i.r.p. for those networks that were subject to the Rule of Procedure on No. **9.35** and make these results available to administrations without re-establishment of findings, with no publication of modifications to CR/C Special Sections, and no update of the satellite network system database.

The procedure to be used by the Bureau for those networks that were subject to the Rule of Procedure on No. **9.35** shall be as follows:

a) Identify networks that were examined at the coordination stage under the Rule of Procedure and which were given qualified favourable (B) findings.

b) Run the pfd calculation program for each frequency assignment in the network to generate pfd/e.i.r.p. results. These results may be further refined by the Bureau, to the extent practicable, using a process applicable to all networks. This process will be developed and adopted by the Bureau prior to undertaking this procedure.

c) Format the results of the pfd calculation program for readability to identify those assignments that may not be in conformity with the appropriate limits.

d) Convert these results to an appropriate format.

e) Place these results on the ITU website and publish them all on CD-ROM to be sent to all administrations.

RESOLUTION 901 (Rev.WRC-07)

Determination of the orbital arc separation for which coordination would be required between two satellite networks operating in a space service not subject to a Plan

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WRC-2000 adopted a coordination arc concept in Appendix **5** to simplify the coordination between fixed-satellite service (FSS) networks in certain frequency bands between 3.4 GHz and 30 GHz;

b) that in frequency bands below 3.4 GHz, mobile-satellite service (MSS) satellite networks normally have to coordinate with other networks with overlapping service areas operating anywhere in the visible arc;

c) that the application of such a concept was limited to the frequency ranges where very large numbers of FSS satellite filings had been received by ITU-R;

d) that many satellite networks and systems are now proposing to use higher frequency bands for which the coordination arc does not yet apply;

e) that the Radio Regulations Board (RRB) adopted a Rule of Procedure on No. **9.36** that extended the coordination arc concept to the FSS and broadcasting-satellite service (BSS), not subject to a Plan, and in all bands above 3.4 GHz until a review by WRC-03;

f) that the use of the coordination arc considerably reduces the volume of data that needs to be supplied to the Radiocommunication Bureau under Section D of Annex 2 to Appendix **4**;

g) that application of the coordination arc concept has the potential to reduce the workload of the Bureau in identifying affected administrations;

h) that the coordination arc concept may be valid for all geostationary space stations operating in any space radiocommunication service above 3.4 GHz that is not subject to a Plan, but may require different values for different services and frequency bands;

i) that the ITU-R studies for other services and for frequency bands above 17.3 GHz, except for the 17.7-20.2 GHz and 29.5-30 GHz ranges for the FSS, have not been completed;

j) that application of the coordination arc concept could facilitate the introduction of satellite services above 17.3 GHz after the studies conclude on the appropriate value(s) of the coordination arc,

recognizing

that there have been no difficulties resulting from the application of the coordination arc concept in the bands where it applies,

noting

that this Conference has incorporated part of the Rule of Procedure referred to in *considering e)* and extended the coordination arc of ±8° for the FSS in bands above 17.3 GHz on a provisional basis, and has adopted an alternative value of ±16° on a provisional basis for the coordination arc applicable for the BSS in these bands in Table 5-1 of Appendix **5**,

resolves

to recommend that a future competent conference review the results of ITU-R studies on the application of the coordination arc value(s) to other frequency bands and other services, as applicable, and consider their inclusion in Appendix **5**,

invites ITU-R

1 to conduct studies on the applicability of the coordination arc concept for space radiocommunication services not yet covered by these Regulations;

2 to recommend, as appropriate, the orbital separation required for triggering inter-service and intra-service coordination concerning the satellite services in frequency bands above 3.4 GHz for geostationary-satellite (GSO) networks not subject to a Plan and not already covered by the coordination arc concept specified in No. **9.7** (GSO/GSO) of Table 5-1 (Appendix **5**), under items 1) to 8) of the frequency band column, and subject to Section II of Article **9**,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to report the results of these studies to the RRB once Recommendations are approved, and to the next competent conference,

instructs the Radio Regulations Board

1 to suppress the Rules of Procedure adopted at its 25th meeting relating to the application of the coordination arc;

2 to consider the results of the studies included in ITU-R Recommendations and, as appropriate, develop a provisional Rule of Procedure, until a decision by the next world radiocommunication conference, to apply the coordination arc value(s) to those services and frequency bands identified in *invites ITU-R* 2.

RESOLUTION 902 (WRC-03)

Provisions relating to earth stations located on board vessels which operate in fixed-satellite service networks in the uplink bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that there is a demand for global wideband satellite communication services on vessels;

b) that the technology exists that enables earth stations on board vessels (ESVs) to use fixed-satellite service (FSS) networks operating in the uplink bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz;

c) that ESVs are currently operating through FSS networks in the bands 3 700-4 200 MHz, 5 925-6 425 MHz, 10.7-12.75 GHz and 14-14.5 GHz under No. **4.4**;

d) that ESVs have the potential to cause unacceptable interference to other services in the bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz;

e) that, with respect to the bands considered in this Resolution, global coverage is only available in the band 5 925-6 425 MHz and that only a limited number of geostationary FSS systems can provide such global coverage;

f) that, without special regulatory provisions, ESVs could place a heavy coordination burden on some administrations, especially those in developing countries;

g) that, in order to ensure the protection and future growth of other services, ESVs need to operate under certain technical and operational limitations;

h) that, within ITU-R studies, based on agreed technical assumptions, minimum distances from the low-water mark as officially recognized by the coastal State have been calculated, beyond which an ESV will not have the potential to cause unacceptable interference to other services in the bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz;

i) that, in order to limit the interference into other networks in the FSS, it is necessary to establish maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. density limits on ESV emissions;

j) that establishing a minimum antenna diameter for ESVs has an impact on the number of ESVs that will ultimately be deployed, hence it will reduce interference into the fixed service,

noting

a) that ESVs may be assigned frequencies to operate in FSS networks in the bands 3 700-4 200 MHz, 5 925-6 425 MHz, 10.7-12.75 GHz and 14-14.5 GHz pursuant to No. **4.4** and shall not claim protection from, nor cause interference to, other services having allocations in these bands;

b) that the regulatory procedures of Article **9** apply for ESVs operating at specified fixed points,

resolves

that ESVs transmitting in the 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz bands shall operate under the regulatory and operational provisions contained in Annex 1 and the technical limitations in Annex 2 of this Resolution,

encourages concerned administrations

to cooperate with administrations which license ESVs while seeking agreement under the above-mentioned provisions, taking into consideration the provisions of Recommendation **37 (WRC-03)**,

instructs the Secretary-General

to bring this Resolution to the attention of the Secretary-General of the International Maritime Organization (IMO).

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 902 (WRC-03)

Regulatory and operational provisions for ESVs transmitting in the 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz bands

1 The administration that issues the licence for the use of ESVs in these bands (licensing administration) shall ensure that such stations follow the provisions of this Annex and thus do not present any potential to cause unacceptable interference to the services of other concerned administrations.

2 ESV service providers shall comply with the technical limitations listed in Annex 2 and, when operating within the minimum distances as identified in item 4 below, with the additional limitations agreed by the licensing and other concerned administrations.

3 In the 3 700-4 200 MHz band and 10.7-12.75 GHz range, ESVs in motion shall not claim protection from transmissions of terrestrial services operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations.

4 The minimum distances from the low-water mark as officially recognized by the coastal State beyond which ESVs can operate without the prior agreement of any administration are 300 km in the 5 925-6 425 MHz band and 125 km in the 14-14.5 GHz band, taking into account the technical limitations in Annex 2. Any transmissions from ESVs within the minimum distances shall be subject to the prior agreement of the concerned administration(s).

5 The potentially concerned administrations referred to in the previous item 4 are those where fixed or mobile services are allocated on a primary basis in the Table of Frequency Allocations of the Radio Regulations:

Frequency bands	Potentially concerned administrations
5 925-6 425 MHz	All three Regions
14-14.25 GHz	Countries listed in No. **5.505**, except those listed in No. **5.506B**
14.25-14.3 GHz	Countries listed in Nos. **5.505**, **5.508** and **5.509**, except those listed in No. **5.506B**
14.3-14.4 GHz	Regions 1 and 3, except countries listed in No. **5.506B**
14.4-14.5 GHz	All three Regions, except countries listed in No. **5.506B**

6 The ESV system shall include means of identification and mechanisms to immediately cease emissions, whenever the station does not operate in compliance with the provisions of items 2 and 4 above.

7 Cessation of emissions as referred to in item 6 above shall be implemented in such a way that the corresponding mechanisms cannot be bypassed on board the vessel, except under the provisions of No. **4.9**.

8 ESVs shall be equipped so as to:

– enable the licensing administration under the provisions of Article **18** to verify earth station performance; and

– enable the cessation of ESV emissions immediately upon request by an administration whose services may be affected.

9 Each licence-holder shall provide a point of contact to the administration with which agreements have been reached for the purpose of reporting unacceptable interference caused by the ESV.

10 When ESVs operating beyond the territorial sea but within the minimum distance (as referred to in item 4 above) fail to comply with the terms required by the concerned administration pursuant to items 2 and 4, then that administration may:

– request the ESV to comply with such terms or cease operation immediately; or

– request the licensing administration to require such compliance or immediate cessation of the operation.

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 902 (WRC-03)

Technical limitations applicable to ESVs transmitting in the bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz

	5 925-6 425 MHz	14-14.5 GHz
Minimum diameter of ESV antenna	2.4 m	1.2 m[1]
Tracking accuracy of ESV antenna	±0.2° (peak)	±0.2° (peak)
Maximum ESV e.i.r.p. spectral density toward the horizon	17 dB(W/MHz)	12.5 dB(W/MHz)
Maximum ESV e.i.r.p. towards the horizon	20.8 dBW	16.3 dBW
Maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. density[2]	See below	See below

[1] While operations within the minimum distances are subject to specific agreement with concerned administrations, licensing administrations may authorize the deployment of smaller antenna sizes down to 0.6 m at 14 GHz provided that the interference to the terrestrial services is no greater than that which would be caused with an antenna size of 1.2 m, taking into account Recommendation ITU-R SF.1650. In any case, the use of smaller antenna size shall be in compliance with the tracking accuracy of ESV antenna, maximum ESV e.i.r.p. spectral density toward the horizon, maximum ESV e.i.r.p. towards the horizon and maximum off-axis e.i.r.p. density limits in the Table above and the protection requirements of the FSS intersystem coordination agreements.

[2] In any case, the e.i.r.p. off-axis limits shall be compliant with the FSS intersystem coordination agreements that may agree to more stringent off-axis e.i.r.p. levels.

Off-axis limits

For earth stations on board vessels operating in the 5 925-6 425 MHz band, at any angle φ specified below, off the main-lobe axis of an earth-station antenna, the maximum e.i.r.p. in any direction within 3° of the GSO shall not exceed the following values:

5 925-6 425 MHz

Angle off-axis	*Maximum e.i.r.p. per 4 kHz band*
$2.5° \leq \varphi \leq 7°$	$(32 - 25 \log \varphi)$ dB(W/4 kHz)
$7° < \varphi \leq 9.2°$	11 dB(W/4 kHz)
$9.2° < \varphi \leq 48°$	$(35 - 25 \log \varphi)$ dB(W/4 kHz)
$48° < \varphi \leq 180°$	–7 dB(W/4 kHz)

For ESV operating in the 14-14.5 GHz band, at any angle φ specified below, off the main-lobe axis of an earth station antenna, the maximum e.i.r.p. in any direction within 3° of the GSO shall not exceed the following values:

14.0-14.5 GHz

Angle off-axis	*Maximum e.i.r.p. in any 40 kHz band*
$2° \leq \varphi \leq 7°$	$(33 - 25 \log \varphi)$ dB(W/40 kHz)
$7° < \varphi \leq 9.2°$	12 dB(W/40 kHz)
$9.2° < \varphi \leq 48°$	$(36 - 25 \log \varphi)$ dB(W/40 kHz)
$48° < \varphi \leq 180°$	–6 dB(W/40 kHz)

RESOLUTION 903 (WRC-07)

Transitional measures for certain broadcasting-satellite/fixed-satellite service systems in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that this Conference revised the limits of power flux-density from space stations in Article **21**, Table **21-4** for the band 2 500-2 690 MHz;

b) that use of the bands 2 500-2 690 MHz in Region 2 and 2 500-2 535 MHz and 2 655-2 690 MHz in Region 3 by the fixed-satellite service (FSS) is limited to national and regional systems, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** (see No. **5.415** and No. **5.2.1**);

c) that in the band 2 520-2 670 MHz, the broadcasting-satellite service (BSS) is limited to national and regional systems, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** (see No. **5.416** and No. **5.2.1**);

d) that, in No. **5.384A**, the 2 500-2 690 MHz band is identified as one of the bands for use by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) in accordance with Resolution **223 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

e) that, due to the specific national and regional allocation status applied to the space services mentioned above, and the identification for use by administrations wishing to implement IMT, it is advantageous to apply the revised Article **21**, Table **21-4** limits in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz at an early date;

f) that certain space systems are at advanced stages of development and need to be taken into account;

g) that agenda item 1.9 of this Conference mentioned a requirement to not place undue constraints on the services to which the band is allocated,

resolves

1 that in the band 2 500-2 690 MHz space stations of satellite networks listed in Annex 1 to this Resolution shall not exceed the following pfd values:

-152 dB(W/m^2) for $\delta < 5°$

$-152 + 0.75 (\delta - 5)$ dB(W/m^2) for $5° \leq \delta \leq 25°$

-137 dB(W/m^2) for $\delta > 25°$

in any 4 kHz band, where δ is the angle of arrival above the horizontal plane. The limits in Table **21-4** do not apply;

2 that, for systems other than those addressed in *resolves* 1, Nos **5.418**, **5.417A** and Resolution **539 (Rev.WRC-03)**, the Bureau shall examine any coordination and notification information with respect to the provisions Nos **9.35** and **11.31** (respectively) for frequency assignments in the FSS or BSS received by the Bureau after 14 November 2007 using the pfd limits for the band 2 500-2 690 MHz in Table **21-4** of Article **21**, as revised by this Conference,

instructs the Bureau

to implement *resolves* 1 and *resolves* 2.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 903 (WRC-07)

Notifying administration	Name of space station	Orbital position	Coordination request Special Section	Date of receipt of Advance Publication Information
ARS/ARB	ARABSAT 5A-30.5E	30.50 E	CR/C/1626 M2	10.01.05
ARS/ARB	ARABSAT 5B-26E	26.00 E	CR/C/1627 M2	10.01.05
CHN	CHINASAT-MSB4	115.50 E	CR/C/1448 M1 and CR/C/1448 M2	03.11.03
CHN	CHNBSAT-113E	113.20 E	CR/C/1564 M1 and CR/C/1564 M2	18.06.04
CHN	CHNBSAT-119E	119.00 E	CR/C/1565 M1 and CR/C/1565 M2	18.06.04
IND	INSAT-2(74)	74.00 E	CR/C/1311 and CR/C/1311 M1	07.08.85
IND	INSAT-2(83)	83.00 E	CR/C/1312 and CR/C/1312 M1	07.08.85
IND	INSAT-2(93.5)	93.50 E	CR/C/1313 and CR/C/1313 M1	07.08.85
INS	INDOSTAR-107.7E	107.70 E	CR/C/1940	31.07.06
INS	INDOSTAR-118E	118.00 E	CR/C/1941	31.07.06

RESOLUTION 904 (WRC-07)

Transitional measures for coordination between the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and the space research (passive) service in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz for a specific case

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that WRC-03 made a global allocation to the mobile-satellite service (MSS) (Earth-to-space) in the band 1 668-1 675 MHz and a global allocation to the MSS (space-to-Earth) in the band 1 518-1 525 MHz;

b) that the band 1 660.5-1 668.4 MHz is allocated to the space research (passive) service;

c) that in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz, mobile earth stations and space research (passive) stations are subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**;

d) that the relevant coordination threshold condition is given in Appendix **5**;

e) that before WRC-07, Appendix **4** did not contain the relevant information for the request for coordination for passive services;

f) that before WRC-07, Appendix **4** contained all necessary data for request for coordination for MSS systems, and coordination information was submitted after WRC-03 for some MSS systems;

g) that there is one satellite system (SPECTR-R) in the space research (passive) service in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz for which relevant advance publication information has been communicated to the Bureau prior to WRC-07, and that it is necessary to provide some transitional measures for the treatment of this information by the Bureau,

noting

a) that Report ITU-R M.2124 contains an assessment of sharing between the mobile-satellite service and space research (passive) service in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz;

b) that the satellite system SPECTR-R is associated with the RADIOASTRON project, which is an international project for a space very long baseline interferometry system,

resolves

that, in the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz, mobile-satellite service systems that exceed the relevant coordination threshold condition shall be coordinated with the SPECTR-R system operating in the space research service (passive), for which advance publication information was received by the Bureau on 7 December 2005[1], provided that the complete coordination information is received by the Bureau within the time-limit mentioned in No. **9.5D**.

[1] API/A/3957 dated 24 January 2006.

RESOLUTION 905 (WRC-07)

Date of entry into force of certain provisions of the Radio Regulations relating to the non-payment of cost-recovery fees

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that Council 2005 modified Decision 482 to apply satellite network cost recovery to all satellite network filings concerning notification for recording of frequency assignments in the Master International Frequency Register (Article **11**, Article 5 of Appendices **30/30A** and Article 8 of Appendix **30B**) received by the Radiocommunication Bureau on or after 1 January 2006 if they refer to advance publication or modification of the space service Plans or Lists (Part A) or requests for the implementation of the fixed-satellite service Plan, as appropriate, received on or after 19 October 2002;

b) that Council 2005 also modified Decision 482 to apply satellite network cost recovery to all requests for the implementation of the fixed-satellite service Plan (Sections IA and III of Article 6 of Appendix **30B**) received by the Radiocommunication Bureau on or after 1 January 2006;

c) that this Conference adopted certain provisions in Article **11**, Appendices **30**, **30A** and **30B** relating to the consequences of the non-payment of cost-recovery fees for notification of satellite networks and the implementation of the fixed-satellite service Plan (Sections IA and III of Article 6 of Appendix **30B**) as adopted by the Council in Decision 482 (as modified),

recognizing

that Resolution 88 (Rev. Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference recognizes that the provisions adopted by WRC-2000 established a linkage between the rights acquired by Member States in applying the relevant procedures of the Radio Regulations after 7 November 1998 and the payment of the fees for cost recovery for satellite network filings,

noting

that invoices have been issued for cost-recovery fees for notifications since 1 January 2006, as indicated in *considering a)* and *b)*,

resolves

1 that the date of entry into force of footnote **A.11.6** to the title of Article **11**, footnote 17A to the title of Article 5 in Appendix **30**, footnote 21A to the title of Article 5 in Appendix **30A**, footnote 1 to the title of Article 6 in Appendix **30B** and footnote 3A to the title of Article 8 in Appendix **30B** shall be 17 November 2007;

2 that satellite network filings subject to satellite network cost recovery for notification in accordance with Decision 482 (modified 2005) as summarized in *considering a)* and *b)* and for which complete information was received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 17 November 2007 and the corresponding invoice was issued before that date but the payment was not yet made, shall be cancelled if payment has not been received by 17 May 2008;

3 that satellite network filings subject to satellite network cost recovery for notification in accordance with Decision 482 (modified 2005) as summarized in *considering a)* and *b)* and for which complete information was received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 17 November 2007 but the corresponding invoice was not issued before 17 November 2007, shall be cancelled if the payment has not been made by the due date specified in that invoice,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to send, to the notifying administrations responsible for satellite networks to which *resolves* 2 or 3 applies, a reminder concerning the deadline for the payment in Council Decision 482 (modified 2005) and of the consequences of non-payment according to *resolves* 2 or 3 not later than two months prior to 17 May 2008, in the case of *resolves* 2, or the invoice payment due date in the case of *resolves* 3, unless the payment has already been received;

2 to take necessary action, as appropriate, with respect to the consequential changes to Appendix **30B**.

RESOLUTION 906 (WRC-07)

Submission of notices for terrestrial services to the Radiocommunication Bureau

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the electronic format for submission of notifications concerning terrestrial services under Article **11** and Plans annexed to Regional Agreements has been used by the Radiocommunication Bureau since September 1994;

b) that the "BR High Frequency Broadcasting Schedule" (HFBC Schedule) and the "BR International Frequency Information Circular" (BR IFIC) are the only regulatory publications resulting from the application of Chapter **III** and the associated Regional Agreements, and that the HFBC Schedule has been published every month, except the month of June, in CD-ROM format since January 1999, while the BR IFIC has been published every two weeks in CD-ROM format since 11 January 2000 and, subsequently, for terrestrial services, in DVD-ROM format since September 2005;

c) that, since 8 December 1998, submission of HFBC requirements under Article **12** has been in electronic format only;

d) that, since 3 June 2001 for space services, all notice forms (AP4/II and AP4/III), radio astronomy notices (AP4/IV) and advanced publication information (AP4/V and AP4/VI) and due diligence information (Resolution **49 (Rev.WRC-07)**) for satellite networks and earth stations submitted to the Radiocommunication Bureau pursuant to Articles **9** and **11** have been submitted in electronic format only;

e) that, from 7 December 2004, the submission of digital broadcasting requirements to be used for the planning exercise and the development of a draft plan for the second session of the Regional Radiocommunication Conference for the planning of digital terrestrial broadcasting in parts of Regions 1 and 3, in the frequency bands 174-230 MHz and 470-862 MHz (RRC-06), were only provided in electronic format;

f) that RRC-06 decided that all submissions in the application of Articles 4 and 5 of the GE06 Regional Agreement shall be in electronic format only;

g) that preparation of notices for terrestrial services in electronic format would allow administrations to validate the data prior to submission using Radiocommunication Bureau software tools;

h) that submission of notices for terrestrial services in electronic format would remove the need for the Radiocommunication Bureau to transcribe the data, avoid the potential for the introduction of errors and reduce the data processing effort required by the Radiocommunication Bureau;

i) that the introduction of the submission of notices for terrestrial services only in electronic format may require appropriate training on the Radiocommunication Bureau's software tools, especially in developing countries;

j) that, for some administrations, the submission of notices for terrestrial services only in electronic format may require the adaptation of their national procedures and the development of appropriate electronic facilities;

k) that information in electronic format could be used to fulfil administrations' database requirements and facilitate the exchange of information between administrations and with the Radiocommunication Bureau,

further considering

a) that the use of an electronic format for the submission of notices for terrestrial services to the Radiocommunication Bureau would reduce its costs;

b) that the revision of Appendix **4**, at this Conference, would facilitate the administrations' and the Radiocommunication Bureau's transition to the use of an electronic format for the submission of notices for terrestrial services;

c) that the Radiocommunication Bureau has already developed an electronic format for submission of all notice types for terrestrial services;

d) that the large majority of notices for terrestrial services received by the Radiocommunication Bureau are already submitted only in electronic format,

resolves

1 that, from 1 January 2009, the submission of notices for terrestrial services to the Radiocommunication Bureau shall be in electronic format only;

2 that administrations are encouraged to discontinue usage of paper notices as soon as possible and to inform the Radiocommunication Bureau accordingly;

3 that administrations are encouraged to use, as soon as possible, an electronic format and electronic facilities for the exchange of coordination data between administrations,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to refine and complete the specification of the electronic format to be used for the submission of notices for terrestrial services, as may be required after the revision of Appendix **4** at this Conference;

2 to provide assistance, as required, to any administration, particularly in the transition to use of the electronic format for the submission of notices for terrestrial services;

3 to include in radiocommunication seminars appropriate training in the use of the electronic format for the submission of notices for terrestrial services,

invites the Secretary-General

to consider the provision free of charge of suitable software and/or hardware for any least developed countries that so request.

RESOLUTION 950 (Rev.WRC-07)

Consideration of the use of the frequencies between 275 and 3 000 GHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that, in the Table of Frequency Allocations, frequency bands above 275 GHz are not allocated;

b) that, notwithstanding *considering a)*, No. **5.565** makes provision for the use of the frequency band 275-1 000 GHz for experimentation with, and development of various passive services and all other services and recognizes the need to conduct further research;

c) that No. **5.565** also makes provision for the protection of passive services until, and if, such time as the Table of Frequency Allocations may be extended;

d) that, in addition to the spectral lines identified by No. **5.565**, research activities in the bands above 275 GHz may yield other spectral lines of interest, such as those listed in Recommendation ITU-R RA.314;

e) that within various Radiocommunication Study Groups, studies on systems between 275 and 3 000 GHz, including system characteristics of suitable applications, are being considered;

f) that the present use of the bands between 275 and 3 000 GHz is mainly related to the passive services, however, with anticipated technology development, the bands may become increasingly important for suitable active service applications;

g) that sharing studies in ITU-R among passive services and all other services operating in frequencies between 275 and 3 000 GHz have not been completed;

h) that the lack of use to date of the band 275-3 000 GHz by the various active services indicates a general consideration of frequency allocations above 275 GHz may be premature,

recognizing

a) that propagation characteristics at frequencies above 275 GHz, such as atmospheric absorption and scattering, have a significant impact on the performance of both active and passive systems and need to be studied;

b) that it is necessary to investigate further the potential uses of the bands between 275 and 3 000 GHz by suitable applications,

noting

a) that significant infrastructure investments are being made under international collaboration for the use of these bands between 275 and 3 000 GHz, for example, the Atacama Large Millimetre Array (ALMA), a facility under construction that will provide new insights on the structure of the universe;

b) that Radiocommunication Bureau Circular Letter CR/137 identified additional information for the Bureau to record characteristics of active and passive sensors for Earth exploration-satellite service and space research service satellites, in frequency bands below 275 GHz,

further noting

a) that a process and format similar to that provided in *noting b)* could be used to record systems operating in the 275 to 3 000 GHz band;

b) that recording active and passive systems operating in the 275 to 3 000 GHz band will provide information until the date when, and if, it is determined that changes to the Radio Regulations are needed,

resolves

1 to review No. **5.565**, excluding frequency allocations, in order to update the spectrum use between 275 GHz and 3 000 GHz by the passive services at WRC-11, taking into account the result of the ITU-R studies;

2 that administrations may submit for inclusion in the Master International Frequency Register details on systems which operate between 275 and 3 000 GHz and which may be recorded by the Radiocommunication Bureau under Nos. **8.4**, **11.8** and **11.12**,

invites ITU-R

to conduct the necessary studies in time for consideration by WRC-11 with a view to the modification of No. **5.565**, including advice on the applications suitable for the band 275-3 000 GHz,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

to accept submissions referred to in *resolves* 2, and to record them in the Master International Frequency Register.

RESOLUTION 951 (Rev.WRC-07)

Enhancing the international spectrum regulatory framework

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that radio spectrum is a finite resource and there is a continued increase and evolution in demand and multiplicity of existing and future applications for radiocommunications;

b) that the current technological environment for some applications is substantively different from the one which prevailed when the current allocation principles and definitions were established;

c) that past WRCs were able to respond to the developments mentioned under *considering a)* and *b)* in certain cases;

d) that there is a keen interest in the rational, efficient and economic use of spectrum;

e) that allocations to radiocommunication services should aim to reach the best outcome in terms of spectrum efficiency;

f) that applications are emerging in which elements of different radiocommunication services (as defined in the Radio Regulations) are combined;

g) that there is a convergence of radio technologies, inasmuch as the same radio technology can be used in systems that operate in different radiocommunication services or with different allocation status (primary or secondary), that might have an impact on the allocation scenario;

h) that similar data rates and quality of service attributes are available with different radiocommunication systems operating in different radiocommunication services;

i) that the use of modern underlying communication architectures and protocols, such as those used in packet radio systems, enables the concurrent provision of different applications from the same platform operating in the same frequency bands;

j) that evolving and emerging radiocommunication technologies may enable sharing possibilities and may lead to more frequency-agile and interference-tolerant equipment and consequently to more flexible use of spectrum;

k) that these evolving and emerging technologies may not require band segmentation within the traditional spectrum allocation framework;

l) that the regulatory procedures should be continually assessed in order to meet the demands of administrations,

recognizing

a) that the rights of administrations to deploy, operate and protect services should be the guiding principle;

b) that the studies in response to Resolution **951 (WRC-03)** have shown that any change intended to improve the flexibility of administrations in accommodating converging services has to rely on a combination of service definitions, allocations and procedures,

noting

a) that one of the purposes of the Radio Regulations is the effective management and use of spectrum;

b) that World Radiocommunication Conferences shall normally be convened every three to four years for possible amending of the Radio Regulations;

c) that the studies initiated under Resolution **951 (WRC-03)** have shown a need for additional studies,

resolves

1 that, as a matter of urgency, taking into account Annexes 1 and 2, studies are to be continued by ITU-R, in order to develop concepts and procedures for enhancing the Radio Regulations to meet the demands of current, emerging and future radio applications, while taking into account existing services and usage;

2 that the studies mentioned in *resolves* 1 shall be limited to general allocation or procedural issues relating to general spectrum management solutions, such as those already developed in Annex 1, in line with the process contained in Annex 2;

3 to invite WRC-11 to take into consideration the results of these studies, including sharing and their impact on allocations in the concerned frequency bands, and take appropriate action in accordance with Annex 2,

invites ITU-R

to conduct the necessary studies in time for consideration by WRC-11 and in accordance with this Resolution,

invites administrations

to participate actively in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

ANNEX 1 TO RESOLUTION 951 (Rev.WRC-07)

Options for enhancing the international spectrum regulatory framework*

The following four possible options have been so far identified in order to develop concepts and procedures for enhancing the Radio Regulations; a combination of these options as well as other options may also be used.

Option 1 is keeping the current practice as it is.

Option 2 is reviewing and possibly revising the current service definitions or adding a new service to the list of service definitions, which would encompass several of the existing ones.

Option 3 is the introduction of a new provision in the Radio Regulations enabling substitution[1] between assignments of specific services.

Option 4 is the introduction of composite services in the Table of Frequency Allocations.

NOTE – For Options 2, 3 and 4, improved forms of notices associated with existing Appendix **4**, and/or relevant adjustments to this Appendix, should be considered.

1 Option 1: Keeping current practice

Under this option, it is considered that there is sufficient flexibility within the present Radio Regulations and the WRC process to meet any current or likely future requirements within the time-frame typically set forth for WRCs.

Under this option, national regulation may be appropriate to provide relevant solutions to the changing environment.

Although new applications may be introduced in a shorter time-frame, this would be without protection against harmful interference, which may not be practical for the vast majority of emerging wireless applications, including IMT, scientific, public safety, radiolocation, radio-navigation, broadcast and fixed/mobile/broadcast satellite systems.

The current service definitions in Article **1** of the Radio Regulations appear to have generally enabled the Radio Regulations to be adapted dynamically to latest technology evolution such as IMT, HAPS, RLANs, digital TV, public protection and disaster relief (PPDR) and scientific community interests.

---

* Further information can be found in Document 24 to WRC-07.

1 This term needs to be clarified and defined properly.

It was noted that, in spite of different definitions for the fixed and mobile (except aeronautical and maritime) services, in most frequency bands where one of the two services is allocated, the other one is also allocated. This indicates that convergence is already achieved in the ITU Table of Frequency Allocations, except in some frequency bands, where allocations to both services may be considered on a band-by-band basis by future WRCs, as required.

2 Option 2: Review and possibly revise some of the service definitions

Under this approach, the current service definitions in Article **1** of the Radio Regulations would be reviewed in order to ensure that they adequately and clearly cover actual use while providing flexibility for emerging technologies. After an extensive consultation within the ITU-R Study Groups, this review may encompass the fixed and mobile (except aeronautical and maritime mobile) services and possibly other services, if considered appropriate[2]. It may lead to reviewing the current definitions for these services and modifying them as necessary.

Possible changes to the service definitions would need to be addressed from the point of view of their regulatory implications in the assignment and use of frequencies, in particular in the ITU coordination, notification and recording processes, impact on assignments made under the current definitions, and impact on other services.

3 Option 3: Introduction of a new provision in the Radio Regulations enabling substitution between assignments of specific services

Under this approach, a new provision would be introduced in the Radio Regulations in order to enable substitution between assignments of specific services. For example, in the context of fixed and mobile (except maritime and aeronautical mobile) services, substitution could be applied in the same way as it is applied by Nos. **5.485** or **5.492** in the context of the fixed-satellite and broadcasting-satellite services.

Using the example of fixed and mobile services, this could reflect the current convergence between the services, address the current ambiguities between the definitions of these services, facilitate the timely implementation of new applications, provide adequate regulatory protection for such applications, and protect the rights of other administrations against interference caused by them.

A new provision enabling substitution would need to be addressed from the point of view of its regulatory implications in the assignment and use of frequencies, in particular in the ITU coordination, notification and recording processes, impact on assignments made under the current definitions, and impact on other services.

---

[2] The ITU-R studies indicated that the current definition of the fixed-satellite service has been able to accommodate new technologies and applications in the fixed-satellite service.

4 Option 4: Introduction of composite services in the Table of Frequency Allocations

Under this approach, which could reflect the convergence between some radiocommunication services in a specific frequency band, the Table of Frequency Allocations (Article **5** of the RR) could be modified by replacing the current separate allocations to some radiocommunication services by a joint allocation to these services (e.g. a specific frequency band allocated to the "fixed service" and to the "land mobile service" could be modified to a composite allocation of "fixed and land mobile service"). The above approach would only be applicable if all concerned services referred to in the allocation to the composite services have equal regulatory status.

This approach would provide administrations with increased flexibility. In the example above, administrations could opt for either the fixed service alone, for the land mobile service alone, for separate applications in both services in an independent manner, or for a composite application which would include both services. This option would not require any revision to the current definitions of the concerned radiocommunication services (i.e. neither to the fixed nor to the land mobile service).

To enable the notification and recording of frequency assignments in such a composite service, a new class of station could be introduced named "Station in the fixed and land mobile service" (with a separate symbol than those used for the fixed and land mobile service), with appropriate forms of notice, or other adequate notification mechanisms.

ANNEX 2 TO RESOLUTION 951 (Rev.WRC-07)

Guidelines for implementing this Resolution

These guidelines contain three steps:

1 *Step 1*: Evaluate various options including those in Annex 1 as to their usefulness regarding the enhancement of spectrum management solutions to meet the objectives of this Resolution.

2 *Step 2*: Develop concepts and procedures based on the options evaluated in Step 1 including sharing studies on a band-by-band basis.

3 *Step 3*: Prepare, based on Step 2, technical and regulatory solutions for consideration and appropriate action at WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 953 (WRC-07)

Protection of radiocommunication services from emissions by short-range radio devices

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that short-range radio devices (SRDs) are radio transmitters or receivers, or both, and hence are not considered as industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications under No. **1.15**;

b) that SRDs, including devices using ultra-wideband (UWB) technologies, radio-frequency identification devices (RFIDs), and other similar devices, generate and use radio frequencies locally;

c) that SRDs cannot claim protection from interference from radio services and therefore have been developed in priority in ISM frequency bands;

d) that there is an increasing amount of SRDs proliferating across various frequencies throughout the spectrum, such as devices using UWB technologies or RFIDs, etc.;

e) that in some cases considerable energy may be radiated by RFIDs;

f) that some radio services, especially those using low field strengths, may suffer harmful interference from SRDs, in particular RFIDs, a risk which is unacceptable, particularly in the case of radionavigation or other safety services,

recognizing

a) the work carried out by ITU-R resulting in relevant ITU-R Recommendations (see ITU-R SM.1538, ITU-R SM.1754, ITU-R SM.1755, ITU-R SM.1756, ITU-R SM.1757);

b) the work carried out by ITU-T on RFID;

c) that SRDs, in particular RFIDs, hold promise for an array of new applications that may provide benefits for users;

d) that the characteristics of RFIDs, including the power of the transmitter, are standardized in the framework of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO),

recognizing further

Resolution ITU-R 54 of the Radiocommunication Assembly (Geneva, 2007), which resolves that ITU-R should study the capabilities of SRDs while ensuring protection of radiocommunication services,

resolves

that, to ensure that radiocommunication services are adequately protected, further studies are required on the emissions from SRDs, inside and outside the frequency bands designated in the Radio Regulations for ISM applications,

invites ITU-R

to study emissions from SRDs, in particular RFIDs, inside and outside the frequency bands designated in the Radio Regulations for ISM applications to ensure adequate protection of radiocommunication services,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau

1 to bring this Resolution to the attention of ITU-T, ISO and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC);

2 to provide the results of these studies to WRC-11 for its considerations and actions.

RESOLUTION 954 (WRC-07)

Harmonization of spectrum for use by terrestrial electronic news gathering[1] systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the use of terrestrial portable radio equipment by services ancillary to broadcasting, commonly described as electronic news gathering (ENG), operating in the bands allocated to the broadcasting, fixed and mobile services has become an important element in the comprehensive coverage of a wide range of internationally noteworthy events, including natural disasters;

b) that WRC-03 initiated studies concerned with spectrum usage and operational characteristics of portable and nomadic links for terrestrial ENG systems operation on a global basis, in accordance with Recommendation **723 (WRC-03)**[*];

c) that modularization and miniaturization of terrestrial ENG systems has increased the portability for these systems and has thus increased the trend towards cross-border operation of ENG equipment;

d) that the technical characteristics for television outside broadcast, ENG and electronic field production systems in the fixed and mobile services for use in sharing studies have been established in ITU-R Recommendations,

noting

a) that studies undertaken by ITU-R indicate that national spectrum management could benefit from globally harmonized band planning for ENG systems;

b) that ENG-related studies in ITU-R are based on data for current and anticipated ENG spectrum requirements collected from many administrations in all regions;

c) that some of the frequency bands currently used for ENG have a number of technical and operational attributes making them suitable for continued long-term use for ENG;

d) that lower frequency spectrum bands tend to provide better propagation characteristics over obstructed paths, thereby increasing the reliability of ENG links operating in these bands,

---

[1] For the purpose of this Resolution, ENG represents all applications ancillary to broadcasting, such as terrestrial electronic news gathering, electronic field production, TV outside broadcast, wireless radio microphones and radio outside production and broadcast.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Recommendation was abrogated by WRC-07.

recognizing

a) that broadcasters now embrace advanced digital technologies that open new opportunities for both fixed and mobile ENG operations, and that these developments have spectrum related implications;

b) that the dynamic nature of the use of ENG is driven by scheduled, unscheduled and unpredictable events such as breaking news, emergencies and disasters;

c) that news gathering and electronic production typically takes place in an environment where several television broadcasters/organizations/networks attempt to cover the same event, creating a demand for multiple ENG links and increased demand for access to spectrum in suitable frequency bands;

d) that access to a globally harmonized spectrum is highly desirable to facilitate the rapid and less restricted deployment and operation of ENG systems from one country to another,

resolves

1 that, based on studies undertaken by ITU-R, WRC-11 should address the feasibility of achieving a satisfactory degree of worldwide/regional harmonization of spectrum for ENG use in terms of the frequency bands and tuning ranges;

2 that methods should be identified for the possible harmonization of frequency bands and tuning ranges for ENG usage,

invites ITU-R

1 to carry out studies of ENG regarding possible solutions for global/regional harmonization in frequency bands and tuning ranges, taking into account:

– available technologies to maximize efficient and flexible use of frequency;

– system characteristics and operational practices which facilitate the implementation of these solutions;

2 to include in the studies referred to above sharing and compatibility issues with services already having allocations in frequency bands and tuning ranges which have potential for ENG use;

3 to propose operational measures to facilitate operation of ENG equipment consistent with global circulation of radiocommunication equipment, taking into account Recommendation ITU-R M.1637;

4 to report the results of those studies to the World Radiocommunication Conference 2011,

invites administrations

to participate in the studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RESOLUTION 955 (WRC-07)

Consideration of procedures for free-space optical links

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that frequencies above 3 000 GHz are already used for various optical applications from telecommunication links to satellite remote sensing;

b) that optical links are currently under consideration by several ITU-R Study Groups;

c) that Recommendations ITU-R P.1621, ITU-R P.1622, ITU-R S.1590, ITU-R RA.1630, ITU-R SA.1742, ITU-R SA.1805 and ITU-R RS.1744 contain information pertaining to free-space optical links and remote sensing;

d) that ITU-R is in the process of preparing reports regarding the possibility and relevance of including in the Radio Regulations frequency bands above 3 000 GHz as well as fixed service applications using such frequency bands,

recognizing

a) that Resolution 118 (Marrakesh, 2002) of the Plenipotentiary Conference *instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau* to report to world radiocommunication conferences on the progress of ITU-R studies concerning the use of frequencies above 3 000 GHz;

b) that ITU-R has identified technical aspects regarding the use of optical free-space telecommunications as an item requiring urgent study by the ITU-R Study Groups,

resolves

to consider possible procedures for free-space optical links, taking into account the results of ITU-R studies covering at least sharing aspects with other services, a clear definition of the band limits and measures to be considered if allocations to various services in the Radio Regulations above 3 000 GHz are considered feasible,

invites ITU-R

to conduct the necessary studies in time for consideration by WRC-11.

RESOLUTION 956 (WRC-07)

Regulatory measures and their relevance to enable the introduction of software-defined radio and cognitive radio systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that cognitive radio and self-configuring networks are expected to provide additional flexibility and improved efficiency to the overall spectrum use;

b) that ITU-R is already studying such advanced radio technologies, their functionalities, the key technical characteristics, requirements, performance and benefits (Question ITU-R 241/8);

c) that studies have shown that software defined radio using cognitive control mechanisms is an approach for achieving better spectrum utilization, dynamic spectrum management, and flexible spectrum use (Report ITU-R M.2064)*;

d) that considerable research and development is being carried out on cognitive radio systems and related network configurations such as self-configuring networks;

e) that cognitive radio systems may cover a number of radio access techniques (RATs);

f) that cognitive radio systems include self-configuring networks of different network topologies that will be able to set their spectrum usage based on the locally available spectrum;

g) that without any information about the location and characteristics of other RATs within the covered frequency range reachable from the mobile terminal, it will be necessary to scan the whole tuning range in order to discover the local spectrum usage, which will result in a huge power and time consumption;

h) that without additional means, it may not be possible to discover receive-only usage;

i) that some studies indicate usefulness to have means to assist in the determination of the local spectrum usage, such as wireless or wired access to a database or to other networks;

j) that some studies indicate a possible need for a worldwide harmonized cognitive supporting pilot channel with a bandwidth less than 50 kHz, whilst other studies indicate that the availability of a database could support access and connectivity, and therefore support the use of these systems,

---

* *Note by the Secretariat*: This Report was suppressed in June 2007. The subject matter is now covered by Report ITU-R M.2117.

resolves to invite ITU-R

1 to study whether there is a need for regulatory measures related to the application of cognitive radio system technologies;

2 to study whether there is a need for regulatory measures related to the application of software-defined radio,

resolves further

that WRC-11 consider the results of these studies and take the appropriate actions.

RECOMMENDATIONS

RECOMMENDATION 7 (Rev.WRC-97)

Adoption of standard forms for ship station and ship earth station licences and aircraft station and aircraft earth station licences[1]

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that the standardization of the licence forms issued to stations installed on board ships and aircraft making international voyages and flights would greatly facilitate the task of inspection of such stations;

b) that standard licence forms for ship stations and for aircraft stations would serve as a useful guide to those administrations desiring to improve their existing national licences;

c) that standard licence forms could be advantageously used by these administrations as the form of certification specified in No. **18.8**,

considering further

that the Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1959), formulated:

a) a set of principles for the draft of a standard licence form (see Annex 1);

b) specimens of a ship station licence and of an aircraft station licence (see Annexes 2 and 3),

considering also

changes in radio systems and shipborne radiocommunication equipment introduced in connection with the implementation of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS),

---

[1] Throughout this Recommendation, references to ship stations may include references to ship earth stations and references to aircraft stations may include references to aircraft earth stations.

recommends

1 that administrations which find these forms practicable and acceptable should adopt them for international use;

2 that administrations should, as far as possible, endeavour to bring their national licence forms into line with these standard forms.

ANNEX 1 TO RECOMMENDATION 7 (Rev.WRC-97)

Principles for the formulation of standard ship and aircraft station licences

The Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1959), considered that, in formulating standard ship and aircraft station licences, the following set of principles should be applied:

1 The licence should, as far as possible, be prepared in tabular form, and each line and column of the table clearly numbered or lettered.

2 The licence for ship stations and the licences for aircraft stations should be as similar as possible.

3 The size of the licence should be international standard A4.

4 The licence should be designed in a form which facilitates its display on board a ship or an aircraft.

5 The licence should be printed in Latin characters in the national language of the country which issues it. Those countries whose national language cannot be written in Latin characters should use their national language and, in addition, English, Spanish or French.

6 The title “Ship Station Licence” or “Aircraft Station Licence” should appear at the top of the licence in the national language as well as in English, Spanish and French.

These principles were used in formulating the two standard forms which are given in Annexes 2 and 3.

ANNEX 2 TO RECOMMENDATION 7 (Rev.WRC-97)

(Full name of the authority issuing the licence, in the national language)

.....*

SHIP STATION LICENCE
LICENCE DE STATION DE NAVIRE
LICENCIA DE ESTACIÓN DE BARCO

No. .....
Period of validity .....

In accordance with *(Title of the National Regulation)* and with the Radio Regulations which complement the Constitution and the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union now in force, this authorization is herewith issued for the installation and for the use of the radio equipment described below:

1	2			3	4
Name of ship	Identification of the ship station			Holder of licence	Accounting authority identification code, or additional information including accounting information if required
	Call sign	MMSI	Other identification *(optional)*		

	Equipment	Type or description of equipment	Frequencies
5	Transmitters		**
6	Other equipment *(optional)*		

For the Issuing Authority:

.....
Place Date Authentication

* The words “Ship Station Licence” written in the national language, if this is not English, Spanish or French.

** Specifically or by reference to List V, columns 8 and 9.

ANNEX 3 TO RECOMMENDATION 7 (Rev.WRC-97)

(Full name of the authority issuing the licence, in the national language)

.....*

AIRCRAFT STATION LICENCE
LICENCE DE STATION D'AÉRONEF
LICENCIA DE ESTACIÓN DE AERONAVE

No. .....
Period of validity .....

In accordance with *(Title of the National Regulation)* and with the Radio Regulations which complement the Constitution and the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union now in force, this authorization is herewith issued for the installation and for the use of the radio equipment described below:

1	2	3	4
Nationality and registration mark of the aircraft	Call sign or other identification	Type of aircraft	Owner of aircraft

		a	b	c	d
	Equipment	Type	Power (W)	Class of emission	Frequency bands or assigned frequencies
5	Transmitters				**
6	Survival craft transmitters *(when applicable)*				**
7	Other equipment	*(Optional)*			

For the Issuing Authority:

.....
Place Date Authentication

* The words "Aircraft Station Licence" written in the national language, if this is not English, Spanish or French.

** Specifically or by reference.

RECOMMENDATION 8

Relating to automatic identification of stations

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) Article **19** which allows, where practicable, automatic identification of stations in appropriate services, and under certain circumstances;

b) that it is not always feasible or convenient to give manual identification;

c) that sources of harmful interference often remain unidentified for long periods, with consequential delay in measures that might be taken to minimize the interference;

d) that automatic identification procedures, where appropriate, may help overcome some of the disadvantages of manual identification;

e) that automatic transmission of a call sign or other signals may provide a means of identifying some stations for which identification is not always possible, e.g. radio relay and space systems;

f) the desirability of fostering a common automatic identification method to facilitate effective implementation of the provisions of Article **19**, as an alternative to the proliferation of many different systems and modulation techniques that might be used for this purpose,

recommends

that the ITU-R study the matter of automatic identification of stations with a view to recommending technical characteristics and methods of implementing a common universal system, including standard modulation techniques, for application in accordance with Article **19**, with due consideration to the needs of the different services and types of stations.

RECOMMENDATION 9

Relating to the measures to be taken to prevent the operation of broadcasting stations on board ships or aircraft outside national territories[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that the operation of broadcasting stations on board ships or aircraft outside national territories is in conflict with the provisions of Nos. **23.2** and **42.4**;

b) that such operation is contrary to the orderly use of the radio frequency spectrum and may result in chaotic conditions;

c) that the operation of such broadcasting stations may take place outside the jurisdiction of Member States, thereby making the direct application of national laws difficult;

d) that a particularly difficult legal situation arises when such broadcasting stations are operated on board ships or aircraft not duly registered in any country,

recommends

1 that administrations ask their governments to study possible means, direct or indirect, to prevent or suspend such operations and, where appropriate, take the necessary action;

2 that administrations inform the Secretary-General of the results of these studies and submit any other information which may be of general interest, so that the Secretary-General can inform Member States accordingly.

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

RECOMMENDATION 34 (WRC-95)

Principles for the allocation of frequency bands

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1995),

considering

a) that ITU should maintain an international Table of Frequency Allocations covering the usable radio-frequency spectrum;

b) that it may be desirable, in certain cases, to allocate frequency bands to the most broadly defined services in order to improve flexibility of use but without detriment to other services;

c) that the development of common worldwide allocations is desirable in order to improve and harmonize utilization of the radio-frequency spectrum;

d) that adherence to these principles for the allocation of spectrum will allow the Table of Frequency Allocations to focus on matters of regulatory significance while enabling greater flexibility in national spectrum use,

recommends that future world radiocommunication conferences

1 should, wherever possible, allocate frequency bands to the most broadly defined services with a view to providing the maximum flexibility to administrations in spectrum use, taking into account safety, technical, operational, economic and other relevant factors;

2 should, wherever possible, allocate frequency bands on a worldwide basis (aligned services, categories of service and frequency band limits) taking into account safety, technical, operational, economic and other relevant factors;

3 should take into account relevant studies by the Radiocommunication Sector and the reports of the relevant Conference Preparatory Meetings (CPM),

recommends administrations

in making proposals to world radiocommunication conferences, to take account of *recommends* 1 to 3,

instructs the Director of the Radiocommunication Bureau and requests the ITU-R study groups

1 when carrying out technical studies relating to a frequency band, to examine the compatibility of a broad definition of services with the existing utilizations and the possibility of aligning allocations on a worldwide basis, having regard to *considerings a)*, *b)*, *c)* and *d)* and *recommends* 1, 2 and 3 above;

2 to conduct these studies, where appropriate in cooperation with the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) and the International Maritime Organization (IMO);

3 to submit a report to future world radiocommunication conferences containing the results of these studies,

invites

the relevant CPM and Radiocommunication Study Groups to identify areas for study and to undertake the studies necessary to determine the impact on existing services of those agenda items of future world radiocommunication conferences which involve broadening the scope of existing service allocations,

instructs the Secretary-General

to communicate this Recommendation to ICAO and IMO.

RECOMMENDATION 36 (WRC-97)

Role of international monitoring in reducing apparent congestion in the use of orbit and spectrum resources

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that the geostationary-satellite orbit and the radio-frequency spectrum are limited natural resources and are being increasingly utilized by space services;

b) the desirability of achieving a more effective use of the geostationary-satellite orbit and radio-frequency spectrum in order to assist administrations in satisfying their requirements and, to that end, the desirability of taking steps to make the International Frequency List reflect more accurately the actual use being made of these resources;

c) that monitoring information should assist ITU-R in discharging this function;

d) that facilities for monitoring of emissions originating from space stations are expensive,

recognizing

that an international monitoring system cannot be fully effective unless it covers all areas of the world,

invites ITU-R

to study and make recommendations concerning the facilities required to provide adequate coverage of the world with a view to ensuring efficient use of resources,

invites administrations

1 to make every effort to provide monitoring facilities as envisaged in Article **16**;

2 to inform ITU-R of the extent to which they are prepared to cooperate in such monitoring programmes as may be requested by ITU-R;

3 to consider the various aspects of monitoring emissions originating from space stations to enable the provisions of Articles **21** and **22** to be applied.

RECOMMENDATION 37 (WRC-03)

Operational procedures for earth stations on board vessels (ESVs) use

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that under the provisions of Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** transmissions from ESVs within the distances defined in item 4 of Annex 1 of Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** should be based upon prior agreement of concerned administrations;

b) that it is desirable to provide guidance on activities to achieve such prior agreement with concerned administrations;

c) that such guidance should include the operational procedures for ESV use,

recommends

that operation of ESVs follow the procedures set forth in the Annex.

ANNEX 1 TO RECOMMENDATION 37 (WRC-03)

Operational procedures for ESV use

A Initiation of contact

The ESV licensing administration or the licence-holder should contact, in advance of ESV operations within the minimum distances, the concerned administration(s) to obtain agreements that will establish the technical bases for avoiding unacceptable interference to the terrestrial facilities of the concerned administration or administrations.

The minimum distances and concerned administrations are defined in items 4 and 5 of Annex 1 of Resolution **902 (WRC-03)**, respectively.

B Recommended actions of licensing administrations, licence-holders and concerned administrations

– The licensing administration or the licence-holder should provide the technical and operational parameters required by the concerned administration, among them, if required, information on the movement of the ship(s) equipped with ESVs within the minimum distances.

– Concerned administrations that wish to permit the operation of ESVs should determine if they have terrestrial stations that could be affected by ESV operations with a view to identifying possible frequencies for ESV use that would avoid potential interference.

C Frequency use arrangements

National practices, as well as applicable Recommendations of ITU-R (such as ITU-R S.1587, ITU-R SF.1585, ITU-R SF.1648, ITU-R SF.1649, ITU-R SF.1650), may be used in reaching frequency usage arrangements.

D Avoidance of unacceptable interference

According to Annex 1 of Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** the ESV licensing administration shall ensure that such stations do not cause unacceptable interference to the services of other concerned administrations. In the event that unacceptable interference occurs, the licence-holder must eliminate the source of any interference from its station immediately upon being advised of such interference. Additionally, the licence-holder shall immediately terminate transmissions at the request of either the concerned administration or the ESV licensing administration if either administration determines that the ESV is causing unacceptable interference or is otherwise not being operated in compliance with the operating agreement.

RECOMMENDATION 63

Relating to the provision of formulae and examples for the calculation of necessary bandwidths[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that Appendix **1**, Section I requires that the necessary bandwidth be part of the full designation of emissions;

b) that Recommendation ITU-R SM.1138, gives a partial list of examples and formulae for the calculation of the necessary bandwidth of some typical emissions;

c) that sufficient information is not available for the determination of the *K*-factors used throughout the table of examples of the necessary bandwidth in Recommendation ITU-R SM.1138;

d) that, especially with regard to the efficient utilization of the radio frequency spectrum, monitoring and the notification of emissions, it is required that necessary bandwidths for the individual classes of emission be known;

e) that for reasons of simplification and international uniformity it is desirable that measurements for determining the necessary bandwidth be made as seldom as possible,

recommends that ITU-R

1 provide, from time to time, additional formulae for the determination of necessary bandwidth for common classes of emission, as well as examples to supplement those given in Recommendation ITU-R SM.1138;

2 study and provide values of supplementary *K*-factors required for the calculation of the necessary bandwidth for common classes of emission,

invites the Radiocommunication Bureau

to publish examples of such calculations in the Preface to the International Frequency List.

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

RECOMMENDATION 71

Relating to the standardization of the technical and operational characteristics of radio equipment[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that administrations are confronted with the necessity of allocating increasing resources to the regulation of radio equipment performance;

b) that administrations, and in particular those in developing countries, often have difficulty in providing such resources;

c) that it would be of advantage to apply, as far as practicable, any mutually agreed standards and associated type approvals;

d) that a number of international bodies including the ITU-R, International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), International Maritime Organization (IMO), International Special Committee on Radio Interference (CISPR) and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) already provide recommendations and standards for technical and operating characteristics applicable to equipment performance and its measurement;

e) that in this context the specific requirements of developing countries have not always been taken fully into account,

recommends

1 that administrations endeavour to cooperate with a view to establishing international performance specifications and associated measuring methods that could be used as models for domestic standards for radio equipment;

2 that such international performance specifications and associated measuring methods respond to widely representative conditions including specific requirements of developing countries;

3 that, when such international performance specifications for radio equipment exist, administrations, as far as practicable, adopt these specifications as a basis for their national standards;

4 that administrations consider as far as practicable mutual acceptance for the type approval of equipment which conforms to such performance specifications.

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

RECOMMENDATION 75 (WRC-03)

Study of the boundary between the out-of-band and spurious domains of primary radars using magnetrons

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) that the principal objective of Appendix **3** is to specify the maximum permitted level of unwanted emissions in the spurious domain;

b) that the out-of-band and spurious domains of an emission are defined in Article **1**;

c) that Recommendation ITU-R SM.1541 specifies the boundary between the out-of-band and spurious domains for primary radars, and that the boundary is related to the emission mask based on the –40 dB bandwidth;

d) that Appendix **3** refers to Recommendation ITU-R SM.1541;

e) that the measurement method for unwanted emissions of radars is described in Recommendation ITU-R M.1177,

recognizing

a) that § 3.3 of Annex 1 in Recommendation ITU-R SM.1539-1 mentions that the specification of the boundary between the out-of-band and spurious domains of primary radars is subject to ongoing studies in ITU-R and that there would be benefit in having these completed by the next Radiocommunication Assembly;

b) that there is a possibility that calculated values for the –40 dB bandwidth related to unwanted emissions of primary radars using magnetrons underestimate the actual bandwidth,

recommends

1 that ITU-R study calculation methods for the –40 dB bandwidth necessary for the determination of the boundary between the spurious and out-of-band domains of primary radars using magnetrons;

2 that ITU-R establish improved measurement methods for unwanted emissions of primary radars using magnetrons,

invites administrations

to participate actively in the above studies by submitting contributions to ITU-R.

RECOMMENDATION 100 (Rev.WRC-03)

Preferred frequency bands for systems using tropospheric scatter

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2003),

considering

a) the technical and operational difficulties pointed out by Recommendation ITU-R F.698 in the frequency bands shared by tropospheric scatter systems, space systems and other terrestrial systems;

b) the additional allocation of frequency bands made by WARC-79 and WARC-92 for the space services in view of their increasing development;

c) that the Radiocommunication Bureau requires administrations to supply specific information on systems using tropospheric scatter in order to verify compliance with certain provisions of the Radio Regulations (such as Nos. **5.410** and **21.16.3**),

recognizing nevertheless

that, to meet certain telecommunication requirements, administrations will wish to continue using tropospheric scatter systems,

noting

that the proliferation of such systems in all frequency bands and particularly in those shared with space systems is bound to aggravate an already difficult situation,

recommends that administrations

1 for the assignment of frequencies to new stations in systems using tropospheric scatter, take into account the latest information prepared by ITU-R to ensure that systems established in the future use a limited number of certain frequency bands;

2 in frequency assignment notifications to the Bureau, indicate expressly whether they relate to stations of tropospheric scatter systems.

RECOMMENDATION 104 (WRC-95)

Development of power flux-density and equivalent isotropically radiated power limits to be met by feeder links of non-geostationary satellite networks in the mobile-satellite service for the protection of geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service in bands where No. 22.2 of the Radio Regulations applies

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1995),

considering

a) that, for operators both of geostationary fixed-satellite service (GSO FSS) networks and of feeder links of non-geostationary mobile-satellite service (non-GSO MSS) networks, it would be beneficial to have a precise definition of the level of protection implied by No. **22.2** in order to reduce regulatory uncertainties;

b) that, in particular, for GSO FSS operators, knowledge of the level of protection to be expected from existing and future non-GSO MSS feeder links is essential for the design of future systems and for ensuring the protection of existing GSO FSS systems;

c) that, in particular, for non-GSO MSS feeder link operators, knowledge of the level of protection to be granted to existing and future GSO FSS networks is essential in order to guarantee that the capability of providing this protection be fully considered during the design of the feeder-link network;

d) that the benefits of precisely defining the level of protection to be granted, as referred to in *considering c)*, would be better achieved by specifying the maximum levels of interfering emissions rather than the maximum levels of their effect;

e) that the several aspects addressed in *considering b)*, *c)* and *d)* could be satisfied by limiting the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) that a feeder-link station in a non-GSO MSS system can radiate towards the geostationary-satellite orbit and by limiting the power flux-density that a non-GSO MSS space station transmitting to any of its feeder-link stations can produce at any given point on the Earth's surface,

recommends that ITU-R

1 continue to study, as a matter of urgency, the possibility of developing e.i.r.p. and power flux-density limits to be met by non-GSO MSS feeder links in order to protect GSO FSS networks in accordance with No. **22.2** in bands where Resolution **46 (Rev.WRC-97)**[*, **] does not apply;

2 develop an appropriate Recommendation (or Recommendations) reflecting the results of those studies within the next two years.

[*] *Note by the Secretariat:* As of 1 January 1999, the relevant procedures are those of No. **9.11A**.

[**] *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was abrogated by WRC-03.

RECOMMENDATION 206 (WRC-07)

Consideration on the possible use of integrated mobile-satellite service and ground component systems in some frequency bands identified for the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that mobile-satellite service (MSS) systems may provide service to a wide area;

b) that MSS systems have a limited capacity for providing reliable radiocommunication services in urban areas on account of natural or man-made obstacles and that the ground component of an integrated MSS system can mitigate blockage areas, as well as allow for indoor service coverage;

c) that MSS systems can improve coverage of rural areas, thus being one element that can bridge the digital divide in terms of geography;

d) that MSS systems are suitable for public protection and disaster relief communications, as stated in Resolution **646 (WRC-03)**;

e) that the bands 1 525-1 544 MHz, 1 545-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 626.5 MHz, 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz, 1 646.5-1 660.5 MHz and 2 483.5-2 500 MHz are among those identified in Resolution **225 (Rev.WRC-07)** for administrations wishing to implement the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT);

f) that the bands mentioned in *considering e)* are allocated on a primary basis to the mobile-satellite services and other services and that not all of them are allocated to the mobile service;

g) that the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz are identified for use by the satellite component of IMT-2000 in accordance with Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

h) that within their territories in some or parts of the bands identified in *considering e)* and *g)* and in parts of the band 2 010-2 025 MHz in some countries in Region 2, some administrations have authorized or plan to authorize MSS system operators to establish an integrated ground component to their MSS systems ("Integrated System") and under certain conditions determined at the national level such as:

i) the ground component is complementary to, and operates as an integral part, of the MSS system and, together with the satellite component, provides an integrated service offering;

ii) the ground component is controlled by the satellite resource and network management system;

iii) the ground component uses the same designated portions of the frequency band as the associated operational MSS system;

i) that ITU-R has performed frequency sharing studies and has determined that the coexistence between independent systems in the MSS and systems in the mobile services in the same spectrum without harmful interference is not feasible in the same or adjacent geographical area,

recognizing

a) that ITU-R has not performed studies on sharing, technical or regulatory issues with regard to integrated MSS and ground component systems, but that some administrations have performed such studies;

b) that the radionavigation-satellite service in the 1 559-1 610 MHz band and the radio astronomy service in the bands 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz and 1 660-1 670 MHz need to be protected from harmful interference;

c) that the MSS needs to be protected from harmful interference that may be caused by the introduction of the ground component of Integrated Systems;

d) that Nos. **5.353A** and **5.357A** are applicable to MSS systems in different portions of the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz with respect to the spectrum requirements and prioritization of communications for the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System and the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service,

noting

a) that the combined wide-area and urban coverage capabilities of Integrated Systems may contribute to meeting the particular needs of developing countries such as is noted in Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-07)**;

b) that some administrations that are planning to implement or are implementing Integrated Systems within their national territories have imposed limitations, in rules and authorization actions, on the e.i.r.p. density that the ground component of such systems may produce into bands allocated to the radionavigation-satellite service;

c) that there are a limited number of frequency bands allocated to the MSS, that these bands are already congested, and that the introduction of integrated ground components may in some instances make spectrum access for other MSS systems more difficult;

d) that administrations implementing Integrated Systems may provide, in bilateral consultations of administrations, information on system characteristics of the ground component,

recommends

to invite ITU-R to conduct studies, as appropriate, taking into account existing systems and those proposed to be used soon and the above *considering*, *recognizing* and *noting*,

invites administrations

to participate as necessary in the ITU-R studies taking into account *recognizing a)*.

RECOMMENDATION 207 (WRC-07)

Future IMT systems

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that the future development of IMT is being studied by ITU-R in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R M.1645 and further Recommendations are to be developed for IMT-Advanced;

b) that the future development of IMT is foreseen to address the need for higher data rates than those of currently deployed IMT systems;

c) the need to define the requirements associated with ongoing enhancement of future IMT systems,

noting

a) the ongoing relevant studies by ITU-R on IMT-Advanced, in particular the outputs from Question ITU-R 229-1/8;

b) the need to take into consideration requirements of applications of other services,

recommends

to invite ITU-R to study as necessary technical, operational and spectrum related issues to meet the objectives of future IMT systems.

RECOMMENDATION 316 (Rev.Mob-87)

Use of ship earth stations within harbours and other waters under national jurisdiction[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference for the Mobile Services (Geneva, 1987),

recognizing

that permitting the use of ship earth stations within harbours and other waters under national jurisdiction belongs to the sovereign right of countries concerned,

recalling

that WARC-79, allocated the bands 1 530-1 535 MHz (with effect from 1 January 1990), 1 535-1 544 MHz and 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz to the maritime mobile-satellite service and the bands 1 544-1 545 MHz and 1 645.5-1 646.5 MHz to the mobile-satellite service,

noting

that the international agreement on the use of INMARSAT ship earth stations within the territorial sea and ports has been adopted and this Agreement is open to accession, ratification, approval or acceptance, as appropriate,

considering

a) that the maritime mobile-satellite service, which is at present in operation worldwide, has improved maritime communications greatly and has contributed much to the safety and efficiency of ship navigation, and that fostering and developing the use of that service in future will contribute further to their improvement;

b) that the maritime mobile-satellite service will play an important role in the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS);

c) that the use of the maritime mobile-satellite service will be beneficial not only to the countries having ship earth stations at present but also to those considering the introduction of that service,

is of the opinion

that all administrations should be invited to consider permitting, to the extent possible, ship earth stations to operate within harbours and other waters under national jurisdiction in the bands 1 530-1 535 MHz (with effect from 1 January 1990), 1 535-1 545 MHz and 1 626.5-1 646.5 MHz,

---

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

recommends

1 that all administrations should consider permitting, to the extent possible, ship earth stations to operate within harbours and other waters under national jurisdiction, in the above-mentioned frequency bands;

2 that administrations should consider the adoption, where required, of international agreements on this matter.

RECOMMENDATION 401

Relating to the efficient use of aeronautical mobile (R) worldwide frequencies

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

that WARC-Aer2 allotted a limited number of worldwide frequencies for exercising control over regularity of flight and for safety of aircraft,

recommends to administrations

1 that the number of HF aeronautical stations on the worldwide channels should be kept to a minimum consistent with the economic and efficient use of frequencies;

2 that, if possible and practicable, one such station should serve aircraft operating agencies in adjacent countries and there should not normally be more than one station per country.

RECOMMENDATION 503 (Rev.WRC-2000)

High-frequency broadcasting

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Istanbul, 2000),

considering

a) the congestion in the HF broadcasting bands;

b) the extent of co-channel and adjacent-channel interference;

c) that AM reception quality is relatively poor compared with FM broadcast or CD quality;

d) that new digital techniques have enabled significant improvements in reception quality to be obtained in other broadcasting bands;

e) that the introduction of digital modulation systems in the broadcasting bands below 30 MHz has been shown to be feasible using low bit-rate coding;

f) that Resolution **517 (Rev.WRC-97)*** invites ITU-R to continue its studies on digital techniques in HF broadcasting, as a matter of urgency;

g) that urgent studies on this subject are currently being carried out by ITU-R under former Question ITU-R 217/10, with a view to issuing a relevant Recommendation in a very short time period,

recognizing

a) that the implementation of an ITU-recommended worldwide system for digital sound in the HF bands would be extremely beneficial, particularly for developing countries, since it allows for:

– mass-scale production resulting in receivers as economical as possible;

– more economical analogue-to-digital conversion of existing transmitting infrastructures;

---

* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

b) that the above system would result in digital receivers having a number of advanced features such as assisted tuning, improved audio quality and robustness to co-channel and adjacent-channel interference, which would greatly contribute to a better spectrum utilization,

recommends administrations

1 to draw the attention of manufacturers to this matter, in order to ensure that future digital receivers take full advantage of the advanced technology while maintaining low cost;

2 to encourage manufacturers to monitor closely the development of the studies carried out by ITU-R, with a view to starting mass production of new low-cost digital receivers as soon as possible after the approval of relevant ITU-R Recommendation(s).

RECOMMENDATION 506

Relating to the harmonics of the fundamental frequency of broadcasting-satellite stations[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that the frequency band 23.6-24 GHz is allocated to the radio astronomy service on a primary basis;

b) that the second harmonic of the fundamental frequency of broadcasting-satellite stations operating within the band 11.8-12 GHz may seriously disturb radio astronomy observations in the band 23.6-24 GHz if effective steps are not taken to reduce the level of this harmonic,

in view of

the provisions of No. **3.8**,

recommends

that, when defining the characteristics of their space stations operating in the broadcasting-satellite service, particularly within the band 11.8-12 GHz, administrations take all necessary steps to reduce the level of the second harmonic below the values indicated in the relevant ITU-R Recommendations.

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

RECOMMENDATION 520 (WARC-92)

Elimination of HF broadcasting on frequencies outside the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service

The World Administrative Radio Conference for Dealing with Frequency Allocations in Certain Parts of the Spectrum (Malaga-Torremolinos, 1992),

considering

a) that there is an increasing number of HF broadcasting stations operating on frequencies outside the bands allocated to the broadcasting service;

b) that the common use of the HF bands by the broadcasting and other services, without the relevant allocations or detailed regulations, results in inefficient use of the frequency spectrum;

c) that such use has led to harmful interference;

d) that this Conference has allocated additional spectrum to the broadcasting service in the HF bands,

recommends

that administrations shall take practicable steps to eliminate HF broadcasting outside the HF bands allocated to the broadcasting service.

RECOMMENDATION 522 (WRC-97)

Coordination of high-frequency broadcasting schedules in the bands allocated to the broadcasting service between 5 900 kHz and 26 100 kHz

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that Article **12** establishes the principles and the procedure for use of the frequency bands allocated to the HF broadcasting service between 5 900 kHz and 26 100 kHz;

b) that the aforementioned principles stipulate, *inter alia*, that the procedure should promote the development of a voluntary coordination process among administrations to resolve incompatibilities;

c) that the procedure itself encourages administrations to coordinate their schedules with other administrations as far as possible prior to submission;

d) that the development of coordination among administrations with the assistance of the Radiocommunication Bureau, when requested, would result in better use of the spectrum allocated to the HF broadcasting service between 5 900 kHz and 26 100 kHz,

recognizing

a) that the participation of broadcasting organizations in this coordination process would make the task of resolving incompatibilities easier;

b) that multilateral coordination of the use of the HF broadcasting bands is already practised on an informal basis in various regional coordination groups[1],

recommends administrations

to promote, as far as possible, regular coordination of their broadcasting schedules within appropriate regional coordination groups of administrations or broadcasting organizations in order to resolve or reduce incompatibilities, through bilateral or multilateral meetings or by correspondence (telephone, facsimile, e-mail, etc.).

---

[1] Not related to the ITU Regions.

RECOMMENDATION 608 (Rev.WRC-07)

Guidelines for consultation meetings established in Resolution 609 (Rev.WRC-07)

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that in accordance with the Radio Regulations (RR), the band 960-1 215 MHz is allocated on a primary basis to the aeronautical radionavigation service (ARNS) in all the ITU Regions;

b) that WRC-2000 introduced a co-primary allocation for the radionavigation-satellite service (RNSS) in the frequency band 1 164-1 215 MHz (subject to the conditions specified under No. **5.328A**), with a provisional limit on the aggregate power flux-density (pfd) produced by all the space stations within all radionavigation-satellite systems at the Earth's surface of −115 dB(W/m^2) in any 1 MHz band for all angles of arrival;

c) that WRC-03 revised this provisional limit and decided that the level of −121.5 dB(W/m^2) in any 1 MHz for the aggregate equivalent pfd (epfd) applying for all the space stations within all RNSS systems, taking into account the reference worst-case ARNS system antenna characteristics described in Annex 2 of Recommendation ITU-R M.1642-2, is adequate to ensure the protection of the ARNS in the band 1 164-1 215 MHz;

d) that WRC-03 decided that to achieve the objectives in *resolves* 1 and 2 of Resolution **609 (Rev.WRC-07)**, administrations operating or planning to operate RNSS systems will need to agree cooperatively through consultation meetings to achieve the level of protection for ARNS systems, and shall establish mechanisms to ensure that all potential RNSS system operators are given full visibility of the process but that only real systems are taken into account in the calculation of the aggregate epfd,

recommends

1 that in the implementation of *resolves* 5 of Resolution **609 (Rev.WRC-07)**, in the frequency band 1 164-1 215 MHz, the maximum pfd produced at the surface of the Earth by emissions from a space station in the RNSS, for all angles of arrival, should not exceed −129 dB(W/m^2) in any 1 MHz band under free space propagation conditions;

2 that the RNSS characteristics listed in the Annex 1, used when applying the methodology contained in Recommendation ITU-R M.1642-2, as well as the calculated aggregate epfd in dB(W/m^2) in each 1 MHz in the range 1 164-1 215 MHz, should be made available in electronic format by the consultation meetings.

ANNEX 1 TO RECOMMENDATION 608 (WRC-03)

List of RNSS system characteristics and format of the result of the aggregate epfd calculation to be provided to the Radiocommunication Bureau for publication for information

I RNSS systems characteristics

I-1 RNSS ITU publication reference

RNSS network name	Network ID	ITU Publication reference	IFIC
		AR11/A/....	
		API/A/....	
		AR11/C/....	
		CR/C/....	

I-2 Non-GSO satellite system constellation parameters

For each non-GSO satellite system, the following constellation parameters should be provided to the Bureau for publication for information:

N: number of space stations of the non-GSO system

K: number of orbital planes

h: satellite altitude above the Earth (km)

I: inclination angle of the orbital plane above the Equator (degrees).

Satellite index I	RAAN $\Omega_{i,0}$ (degrees)	Argument of latitude $E_{i,0}$ (degrees)
1	...	...
2	...	...
...	...	...
N	...	...

I-3 GSO satellite system longitude

For each GSO satellite network, the satellite longitude should be provided to the Bureau for publication for information, as follows:

LonGSO_i: longitude of each of the GSO satellites (degrees).

I-4 Maximum non-GSO space station pfd versus the elevation angle at the Earth's surface (worst 1 MHz)

For the non-GSO satellite system space stations, the maximum pfd in the worst 1 MHz versus elevation angle should be provided to the Bureau for publication for information in a table format as follows:

Elevation angle (each 1°)	**pfd (dB(W/(m^2 · MHz)))**
–4	pfd (–4°)
–3	pfd (–3°)
…	…
…	…
90	pfd (–90°)

I-5 Maximum GSO space station pfd versus latitude and longitude at the Earth's surface (worst 1 MHz)

For each GSO satellite network space station, the maximum pfd in the worst 1 MHz, defined as the 1 MHz in which the pfd of the signal is maximum versus latitude and longitude should be provided to the Bureau for publication for information in a table format as follows:

sLongitude (each 1°)	0	1	…	360
Latitude (each 1°)	Maximum pfd dB(W/m^2) in worst 1 MHz			
–90	pfd (0, –90)	…	…	…
–89	…	…	…	…
…	…	…	…	…
…	…	…	…	…
90	…	…	…	pfd (360, 90)

I-6 Spectrum for GSO satellite networks or non-GSO satellite systems

For each GSO satellite network or non-GSO satellite system, the level of spectrum emission in each 1 MHz relative to the spectrum value at the worst 1 MHz of the whole band (1 164-1 215 MHz) should also be provided to the Bureau for publication for information.

II Results of the aggregate epfd calculation in the worst 1 MHz of the 1 164-1 215 MHz band

Maximum aggregate epfd in dB(W/m^2) in the worst-case megahertz in the range 1 164-1 215 MHz.

RECOMMENDATION 622 (WRC-97)

Use of the frequency bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz by the space research, space operation, Earth exploration-satellite, fixed and mobile services

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 1997),

considering

a) that the bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz are allocated on a primary basis to the space research, space operation, Earth exploration-satellite, fixed and mobile services;

b) that, in response to Resolutions from the 1992 Conference (WARC-92), studies have resulted in a number of ITU-R Recommendations, which, when adhered to by the services, will result in a stable, long-term sharing environment (Recommendations ITU-R SA.364, ITU-R SA.1019, ITU-R F.1098, ITU-R SA.1154, ITU-R F.1247, ITU-R F.1248, ITU-R SA.1273, ITU-R SA.1274 and ITU-R SA.1275);

c) that this Conference adopted No. **5.391** which states that high-density mobile systems shall not be introduced in these frequency bands,

considering further

that enhancements in technology may enable the services mentioned in *considering a)* to minimize the total bandwidth requirement in these frequency bands,

noting

that WARC-92 considered that it is desirable to review the present and planned use of the frequency bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz, with the intent, where practicable, of satisfying some space mission requirements in bands above 20 GHz,

recognizing

that there are increasing requirements for emerging communication systems which need to be satisfied in the frequency range below 3 GHz,

recommends

that administrations planning to introduce new systems in the space research, space operation, earth exploration-satellite, fixed or mobile services in the bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz take into account the ITU-R Recommendations referred to in *considering b)* above when making assignments to these services, and implement enhancements in technology as early as practicable with a view to minimizing the total bandwidth required by systems of each service.

RECOMMENDATION 707

Relating to the use of the frequency band 32-33 GHz shared between the inter-satellite service and the radionavigation service[1]

The World Administrative Radio Conference (Geneva, 1979),

considering

a) that the band 32-33 GHz is allocated to the inter-satellite service and the radionavigation service;

b) that there are safety aspects associated with the radionavigation service;

c) that No. **5.548** has been incorporated into Article **5**,

recommends

that, as a matter of urgency, studies should be made of the sharing criteria for these two services in the frequency band listed above,

requests the ITU-R

to carry out these studies,

recommends further

that a future competent world radiocommunication conference review the ITU-R Recommendations with a view to the inclusion of such sharing criteria in Article **21**.

[1] WRC-97 made editorial amendments to this Recommendation.

RECOMMENDATION 724 (WRC-07)

Use by civil aviation of frequency allocations on a primary basis to the fixed-satellite service

The World Radiocommunication Conference (Geneva, 2007),

considering

a) that remote and rural areas often still lack a terrestrial communication infrastructure that meets the evolving requirements of modern civil aviation;

b) that the cost of providing and maintaining such an infrastructure could be expensive, particularly in remote regions;

c) that satellite communication systems operating in the fixed-satellite service (FSS) may be the only medium to satisfy the requirements of the International Civil Aviation Organization's (ICAO) communication, navigation, surveillance and air traffic management (CNS/ATM) systems, where an adequate terrestrial communication infrastructure is not available;

d) that the use of VSAT systems, operating in the FSS and being deployed on a large scale in aeronautical communications, has the potential to significantly enhance communications between air traffic control centres as well as with remote aeronautical stations;

e) that establishing and utilizing satellite communication systems for civil aviation would also bring benefits for developing countries and countries with remote and rural areas by enabling the use of VSAT systems for non-aeronautical communications;

f) that in the cases identified in *considering e)* it is necessary to draw attention to the importance of aeronautical communications as opposed to non-aeronautical communications,

noting

a) that the FSS is not a safety service;

b) that Resolution **20 (Rev.WRC-03)** *resolves to instruct the Secretary-General* "to encourage ICAO to continue its assistance to developing countries which are endeavouring to improve their aeronautical telecommunications ...",

recommends

1 that administrations, in particular in developing countries and in countries with remote and rural areas, recognize the importance of VSAT operations to the modernization of civil aviation telecommunications systems and encourage the implementation of VSAT systems that could support both aeronautical and other communication requirements;

2 that administrations in developing countries be encouraged, to the maximum extent possible and as necessary, to expedite the authorization process to enable aeronautical communications using VSAT technology;

3 that arrangements should be made to provide for urgent service restoration or alternative routing in case of a disruption of a VSAT link associated with the aeronautical communications;

4 that administrations implementing VSAT systems in accordance with *recommends* 1 to 3 should do so in satellite networks operating in frequency bands with a primary allocation to the satellite services;

5 to invite ICAO, noting Resolution **20 (Rev.WRC-03)**, to continue its assistance to developing countries to improve their aeronautical telecommunications, including interoperability of VSAT networks, and provide guidance to developing countries on how they could best use VSAT technology for this purpose,

requests the Secretary-General

to bring this Recommendation to the attention of ICAO.

Printed in Switzerland
Geneva, 2008
ISBN 92-61-12451-8